

THE COMPLETE MIDDLE SCHOOL STUDY GUIDE



EVERYTHING YOU NEED TO ACE AMERICAN HISTORY IN ONE BIG FAT NOTEBOOK



Notes borrowed from the **SMARTEST KID in CLASS**
(double-checked by an **AWARD-WINNING** teacher)

From the
BRAINS
behind
BRAIN QUEST!



AMERICAN HISTORY



Copyright © 2016 by Workman Publishing Co., Inc.

By purchasing this workbook, the buyer is permitted to reproduce pages for classroom use only, but not for commercial resale. Please contact the publisher for permission to reproduce pages for an entire school or school district.

With the exception of the above, no portion of this book may be reproduced—mechanically, electronically, or by any other means, including photocopying—without written permission of the publisher.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data is available.

eISBN 9780761196983

Writer Lily Rothman Illustrator Tim Hall

Series Designer Tim Hall Designer Tim Hall

Art Director Colleen AF Venable

Editors Nathalie Le Du, Justin Krasner Production Editor Jessica Rozler

Production Manager Julie Primavera

Concept by Raquel Jaramillo

Workman Publishing Co., Inc.

225 Varick Street

New York, NY 10014-4381

workman.com

WORKMAN, BRAIN QUEST, and BIG FAT NOTE-BOOK are registered trademarks of Workman Publishing Co., Inc.

THE COMPLETE MIDDLE SCHOOL STUDY GUIDE



EVERYTHING YOU NEED TO ACE AMERICAN HISTORY IN ONE BIG FAT NOTEBOOK

Borrowed from the smartest kid in class

Double-checked by Philip Bigler

WORKMAN PUBLISHING

NEW YORK

EVERYTHING YOU NEED TO KNOW TO ACE

AMERICAN HISTORY

HT!



These are the notes from my American history class.
Oh, who am I? Well, some people said I was the
smartest kid in class.



I wrote everything you need to ace
AMERICAN HISTORY, from the
← **ICE AGE** to the **INTERNET AGE**, →
and only the really important
stuff in between—you know, the stuff
that's usually on the test!



I tried to keep everything organized, so I almost always:

- Highlight vocabulary words in **YELLOW**.
- Color in definitions in **green highlighter**.
- Use **BLUE PEN** for important people, places, dates, and terms.
- Doodle a pretty sweet Eleanor Roosevelt and whatnot to visually show the big ideas.

AGREED!



If you're not loving your textbook and you're not so great at taking notes in class, this notebook will help. It hits all the major points. (But if your teacher spends a whole class talking about something that's not covered, go ahead and write that down for yourself.)

ZZZ...WHAT?



Now that I've aced American history, this notebook is **YOURS**. I'm done with it, so this notebook's purpose in life is to help **YOU** learn and remember just what you need to ace **YOUR** American history class.



CONTENTS



1 UNIT 1: PREHISTORY-EARLY 1600s 1

- 1. The First People in America EVER! 2
- 2. Native Americans in North America 9
- 3. They Came, They Saw, They Conquered 17

UNIT 2: COLONIAL AMERICA, 1607-1780s 37

- 4. Slavery in the Americas 38
- 5. Jamestown: Virginia Do-over 45
- 6. The Thirteen Colonies 53
- 7. Regional Differences 67
- 8. Pre-Revolutionary War 79
- 9. Parliament and Protests 87
- 10. The British Are Coming! 95



UNIT 3: AMERICAN REVOLUTION and the EARLY REPUBLIC, 1776–1791 107

11. The American Revolution **108**
12. A New Government **123**
13. President Precedents **142**



UNIT 4: AMERICAN EXPANSION, 1801–1861 155

14. President Thomas Jefferson **156**
15. The War of 1812 and Other Failures to Communicate **167**
16. New American Borders **179**
17. Westward Ho! **193**
18. The Lone Star Non-State **203**
19. The Mexican-American War **209**
20. The More Things Change: Reform **219**

UNIT 5: CIVIL WAR and RECONSTRUCTION, 1850s–1870s 229

21. North versus South **230**
22. The Civil War **243**
23. Reconstruction **259**



UNIT 6: RESHAPING the NATION, 1850-1917 269

- 24. Trains, Bonanzas, and Buckaroos **270**
- 25. Native American Reservations **279**
- 26. The Second Industrial Revolution **285**
- 27. New Immigrants, New Cities **295**
- 28. Progressivism **303**
- 29. Expansionism and Imperialism **313**
- 30. Spanish-American War **319**
- 31. A Man and His Plan: More Progressivism **327**



UNIT 7: WORLD WARS and MODERN AMERICA, 1900s-1930s 337

- 32. The Great War **338**
- 33. The Roaring Twenties **355**
- 34. The Great Depression **365**

UNIT 8: WORLD WAR II, 1930s-1945 379

- 35. World War II Begins **380**
- 36. America Enters the War in Europe **393**
- 37. War in the Pacific **401**

UNIT 9: POST-WORLD WAR II ERA, 1945–1980 409

38. America After the War **410**
39. The Korean War **421**
40. American Affluence and the Baby Boom **429**
41. The Civil Rights Movement **435**
42. Civil Rights Grows **447**
43. The Vietnam War **455**
44. Nixon's Politics **467**
45. Carter in the 1970s **475**



UNIT 10: AMERICAN HISTORY . . . and CURRENT-ISHE EVENTS! 481

46. Ronald Reagan **482**
47. To the Present Day **489**

Index **503**



Unit

1

Prehistory— Early 1600s

So much happened in America before it was called America. The first people crossing into North America; the first major civilizations in Central and South America; the first European exploration; the first interactions between the Europeans and the native people; and the establishment of European colonies.

The very beginning is a very good place to start.



Chapter 1



The FIRST PEOPLE IN AMERICA EVER!

Migration

People have been living in the Americas much longer than scientists used to think. The first people started arriving around 38,000 BCE (BEFORE the COMMON ERA—which starts with the year 1!), 40,000 years ago.

They were **NOMADIC HUNTER-GATHERERS**. They followed herds of the animals they hunted and ate the plants they found. Like the rest of early humankind, they started out in Africa, but after thousands of years they made their way east and north across Asia. When a group moves from one place to another, it's called a **MIGRATION**.

NOMADIC HUNTER-GATHERERS

communities of people who move from place to place, relying on plants and animals found in the wild for food

MIGRATION

the movement of a number of people (or animals), often to establish a new homeland

The ICE AGE and the BERING LAND BRIDGE

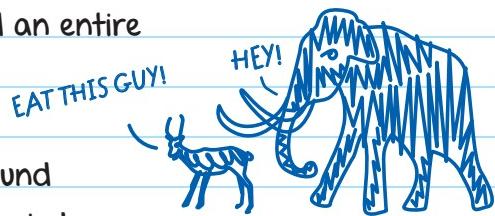
The nomadic hunter-gatherers lived during the **ICE AGE**,

when much of the earth was covered in ice and snow and entire oceans were frozen over. When seawater is frozen

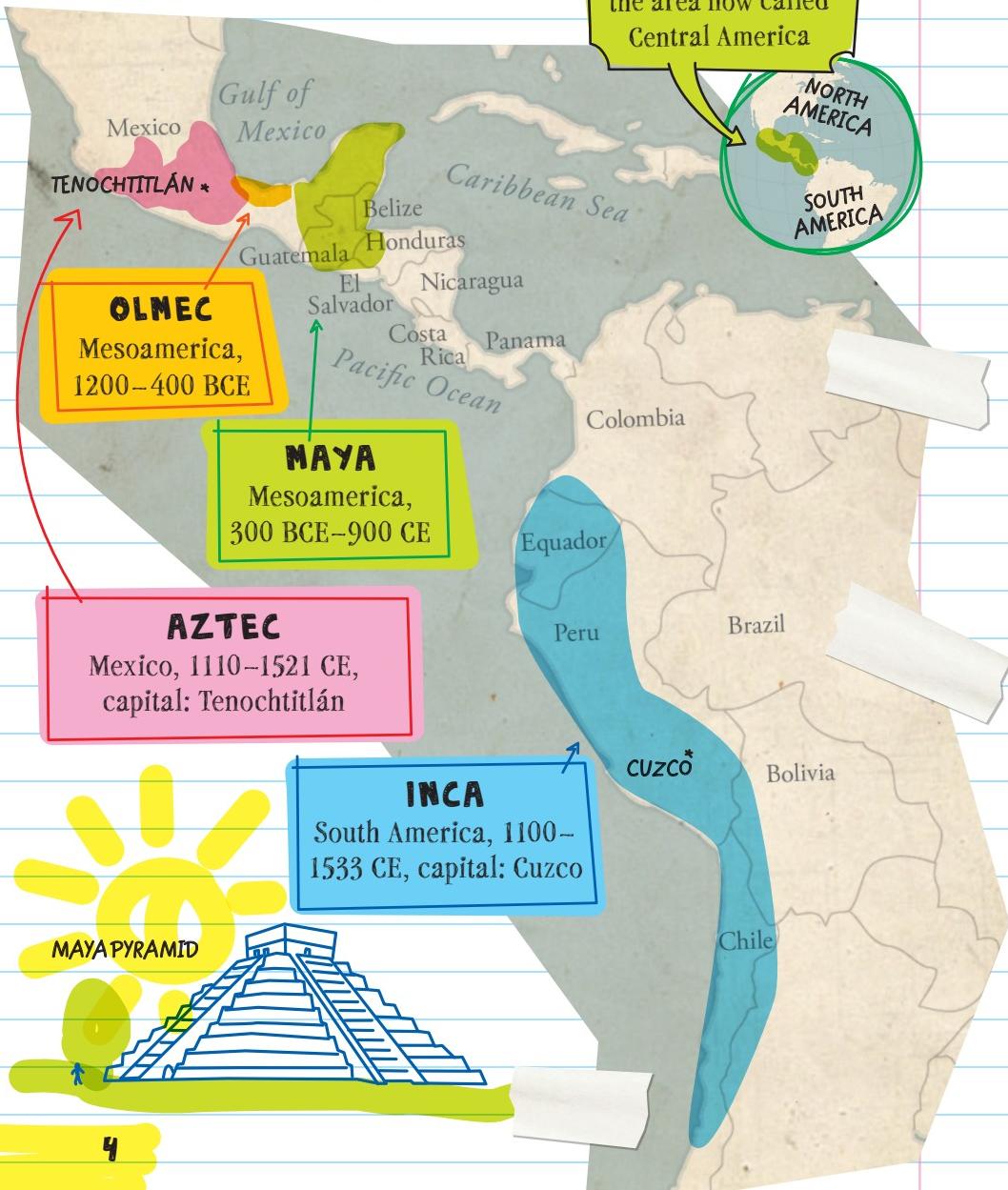
solid, the ocean level gets lower, exposing whole stretches of land that are underwater during warmer climates. The land connecting the northeast tip of Asia and present-day Alaska, called the **BERING LAND BRIDGE** (or **BERINGIA**), emerged. According to the **LAND BRIDGE THEORY**, nomadic hunter-gatherers crossed on this land bridge from Asia into North America, most likely in search of food. The Americas were filled with woolly mammoths, mastodons, and other huge creatures. Just one could feed an entire nomad group for months.

People kept crossing until around 10,500 BCE, when the glacial period,

which had lasted about 100,000 years, finally ended. The oceans rose and covered the Bering Land Bridge, cutting off further migrations from Asia. Ice Age animals died off or were hunted into extinction. These animals were replaced by smaller animals that could thrive in warmer weather, changing people's diets and lifestyles.



ANCIENT AMERICAN CULTURES



Some nomad tribes stayed in Alaska, while others continued south through Central and South America. As they spread they became very different from one another. They developed individual **CULTURES**, traditions, and sometimes different physical traits.

CULTURE

the way a society behaves and its system of beliefs, laws, and customs

SETTLING DOWN

Some tribes eventually stopped hunting and gathering. They realized they could plant seeds in the soil and farm foods like **MAIZE** (an early form of corn), beans, and squash. Tribes settled down, built permanent homes, formed villages, invented technologies to help them in their daily lives, and formed **SOCIETIES** that would, in some cases, lead to the creation of empires.

SOCIETY

a group of people living together as a group

CIVILIZATION

an advanced and complicated society

One of the first great **CIVILIZATIONS** was the **OLMEC** society, which flourished around **1200 BCE** on the coast of



MESOAMERICA when small groups began to band together.

The Olmecs grew enough food to feed thousands of people and are known for the giant stone sculptures and pyramids they built with that large population. Around **400 BCE**, the Olmecs disappeared. No one knows why—famine, war, and natural disaster are all possibilities.

Around this same time, the **MAYA** civilization developed in the Mesoamerican rain forest. As the Olmecs disappeared, Maya

cities grew. The Maya also raised crops and built pyramids and temples. They had a **THEOCRACY**; worshipped the sun, stars, and moon; and developed a 365-day calendar. They built a large trade network and canals. By around 900 CE, their power and influence had greatly diminished.

The **AZTECS**, who began as warriors and hunters, conquered what is now Central

Mexico around 1100 CE. In 1325, they founded their capital, **TENOCHTITLÁN**, on an island in the middle of Lake Texcoco.

They built bridges to connect their capital to the mainland, and Tenochtitlán became one of the largest cities in the world. The Aztecs continued to conquer, using some of their prisoners as human sacrifices. By 1500, they were a powerful empire.

The **INCAS** started as small groups in the Andes Mountains. Around 1100 CE, they founded their capital, **CUZCO**, in what is now Peru. A powerful government united them into a population of about 12 million people, all speaking the common language of **QUECHUA** (which is still spoken today in the Andes).

The Incas' innovations included terraced farming, a network of roads, and the use of knotted strings (**QUIPU**) instead of written words for record-keeping. They built cities such as **MACHU PICCHU** for their religious ceremonies.

THEOCRACY

rule by god(s);
government where the
priests are in charge

Remember the order in which these first empires rose and fell with this mnemonic device:

OH OLMEC
MY! MAYA
AMERICA'S AZTEC
INTERESTING! INCA



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What was Beringia? Where was it located?
2. Why did people first come to the Americas?
Why did they stop?
3. How do cultures become different from one another?
4. What is a nomadic hunter-gatherer society?
5. How did innovations in farming affect societies?
6. What is one invention of the Maya people?
7. What is a theocracy?
8. What was the capital of the Aztec Empire?
When was it founded?
9. What was the language of the Inca Empire?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Beringia was the land bridge between Asia and North America.
2. People were following animal migrations, but they stopped when Beringia was covered by water when the glacial period ended.
3. It happens over time, as they are separated from their roots and develop new traditions.
4. People who move regularly, and hunt and gather for food
5. With food produced in one place, sedentary living increased.
6. A calendar, canals
7. A government controlled by priests
8. Tenochtitlán, founded 1325 CE
9. Quechua

★ Chapter 2 ★

NATIVE AMERICANS IN NORTH AMERICA

The millions of people who settled in what is now the U.S. and Canada are called **NATIVE AMERICANS**.

EARLY NATIVE AMERICANS

ANASAZI
means "ancient ones"

Around 1200 BCE, the **ANASAZI** people settled in the **FOUR CORNERS** area. Their first homes were "pit houses," dwellings dug partly into the ground. By about 750 CE they were building **PUEBLOS**: multistoried, apartment-like buildings made from **ADOBÉ** and other local materials. The Anasazi were also known for **CLIFF DWELLINGS** built along cliff walls and mountainsides. For religious rites, they created cavelike underground ceremonial chambers called **KIVAS**.
THE MAP IS ON THE NEXT PAGE.

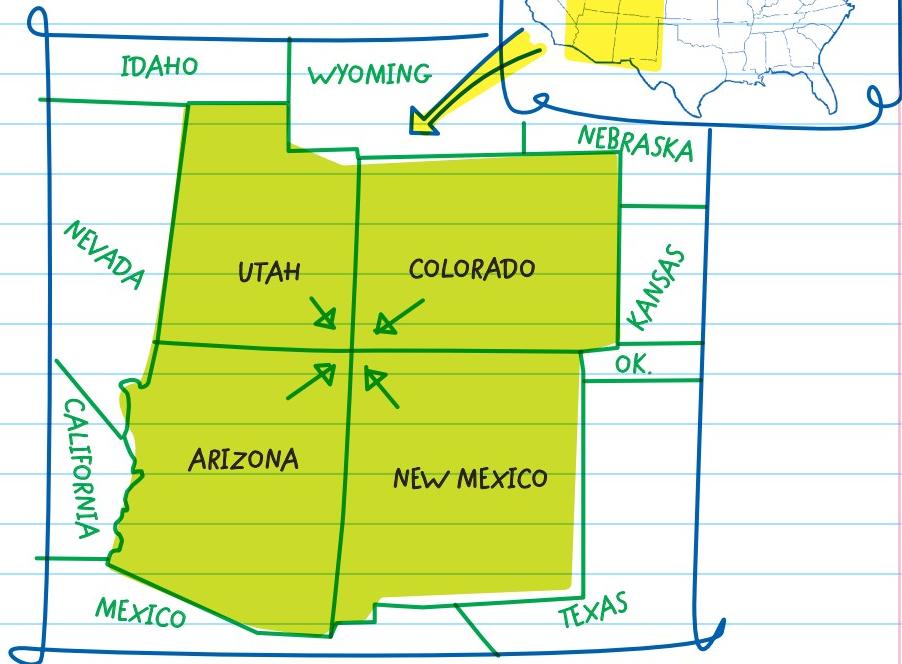
The Anasazi were astute farmers.

Since the Four Corners area was relatively dry, they devised irrigation techniques to grow crops, especially

ADOBÉ
a kind of clay still used for building in the Southwest

FOUR CORNERS

THE PLACE WHERE UTAH, COLORADO, ARIZONA, AND NEW MEXICO MEET.



maize. The Anasazi inhabited the area until around 1300 CE, when they split into smaller groups. There are many theories as to why they split up, including drought, war, and used-up resources. It's another case of nobody-knows-why.

The HOHOKAM lived in present-day Arizona. They arrived from Mexico around the year 300 CE and stayed for about a millennium. The Hohokam are known for their irrigation channels and pottery.

The **MOUND BUILDER** societies created huge earthen mounds as temples and burial markers that can still be seen in the central United States. The first were built around 1000 BCE and echo the look of Mesoamerican pyramids. It's a clue that Mound Builders may have come from Mesoamerica.

The Mound Builders were the **ADENA**, **HOPEWELL**, and **MISSISSIPPIAN** peoples. The Adena hunter-gatherers thrived around 800 BCE. The **HOPEWELL** were farmers and traders at their height around 200–500 BCE. When the Hopewell population declined around the year 700 CE, the **MISSISSIPPIAN** people became more widespread. Around 900 CE, they formed their largest settlement, **CAHOKIA**. Located in present-day Illinois, Cahokia was home to tens of thousands of people and was the site of the Mississippian people's largest mound, **MONKS MOUND**.



MONKS MOUND, which is 100 feet high, still stands in Collinsville, Illinois.

The Mound Builders created more than 10,000 mounds in the Ohio River Valley area alone. By the time Europeans arrived around 1700 CE, their people had disappeared.

DIFFERENT SOCIETIES FROM

THE NORTH, in present-day Alaska, was so cold that the INUITS and ALEUTS who settled there built IGLOOS to protect themselves from the harsh weather. They relied on hunting and fishing. They were likely originally from Siberia and may have been the last migrants to cross the Bering Land Bridge.

THE NORTHWEST had so many forests and such easy access to the ocean that the TLINGIT, HAIDA, and CHINOOK who settled there used wood to build their houses and make TOTEM POLES with religious significance. Fish, especially salmon, was their major food source.

THE WEST had such fertile land that the UTE and SHOSHONE tribes could live off abundant crops. These tribes formed small clans rather than large villages.

THE SOUTHWEST was home to descendants of the Anasazi (the HOPI, the ACOMA, and the ZUNI), who continued to work with adobe and grow maize. Around the 1500s, nomadic groups of hunter-gatherers (the APACHE and the NAVAJO) arrived, but within a century they had built villages, too.

THE GREAT PLAINS were filled with herds of buffalo, or BISON, so the peoples there became nomads and hunters. The BLACKFEET and the APACHE lived in TEPEES (conical tents) that were easy to pack up to follow the bison. Starting in the 1500s, some tribes, like the COMANCHE and DAKOTA, used horses that had escaped from Spanish explorers, and became famous for their equestrian skills.

THE SOUTHEAST had rich soil from its rivers and mountains, and the CREEK, CHICKASAW, SEMINOLE, and CHEROKEE farmed and built permanent villages around their fields.

Some early **INDIGENOUS** cultures continue today.

INDIGENOUS
native to an area

DIFFERENT ENVIRONMENTS



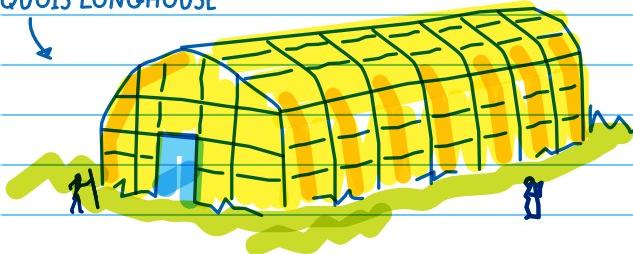
TOTEM POLES



poles created by Native Americans by carving and painting representations of ancestor or animal spirits on long pieces of wood

THE NORTHEAST was teeming with forests, so tribes such as the ALGONQUIN and IROQUOIS tended to be hunters and traders and farmers, and they lived in **LONGHOUSES** made of wood.

IROQUOIS LONGHOUSE



The IROQUOIS LEAGUE

The **IROQUOIS LEAGUE** refers to five separate nations in what's now upstate New York: the **CAYUGA**, the **ONONDAGA**, the **SENECA**, the **MOHAWK**, and the **ONEIDA**. After spending most of their history fighting, in the 1500s the **FIVE NATIONS** banded together to form a powerful alliance called the **GREAT LAW OF PEACE**. This formed the Iroquois League, which had a **GRAND COUNCIL** to settle disputes. In 1722, the **TUSCARORA** people also joined the league, and the Five Nations became **SIX NATIONS**.

Use this mnemonic device to remember the five original tribes of the Iroquois League:

CAYUGA
ONONDAGA
SENECA
MOHAWK
ONEIDA



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Name three types of homes that the Anasazi created.
2. How did the Mound Builders use mounds?
3. What was Cahokia?
4. What was a major factor in the differences between the cultures of Native American tribes?
5. What is an example of a nomadic Native American tribe?
6. What was the Iroquois League?
7. Which tribes were members of the League and when did it form?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Pit houses, pueblos, and cliff dwellings
2. To be used as temples and tombs
3. The largest settlement of the Mississippian people
4. Where they lived: climate, geography, and resources
5. Blackfoot/Apache/Comanche/Dakota
6. An alliance of northeastern tribes
7. The Cayuga, Onondaga, Seneca, Mohawk, and Oneida created the League in the 1500s; the Tuscarora joined in 1722.

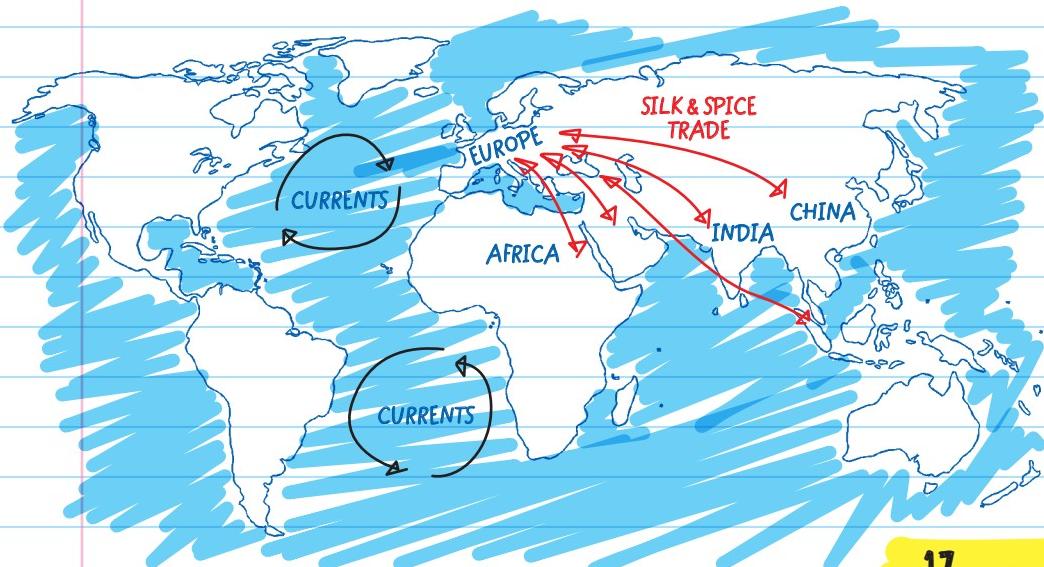
★ Chapter 3 ★

THEY CAME, THEY SAW, THEY CONQUERED

The AGE of EXPLORATION

Europeans paid high prices for goods like silk and spices.

The only way to get them was from Arabs and Berbers, who trekked through Africa, or from other traders who could travel overland to India and China. Traders used caravan routes and the **SILK ROAD**, which linked China and the West.



EXPLORATION TECHNOLOGY

Luckily for the Europeans, better maps and new technology changed navigation. These inventions came out of the **RENAISSANCE**—a period characterized by growing knowledge and innovations in technology.

MAGNETIC COMPASSES improved the safety and efficiency of ocean travel. Invented in China, compasses made determining direction simpler.

ASTROLABES allowed sailors to figure out their location in the ocean by measuring the distance of the sun and stars, like an ancient GPS.



Sailors figured out that the **NORTH ATLANTIC CURRENT** moves clockwise between Europe and the Caribbean and that the **SOUTH ATLANTIC CURRENT** travels counterclockwise between Africa and South America. This saved them from being randomly swept out to sea (sometimes that's how they discovered new places; sometimes that's how they disappeared forever).



By the 1400s, the Portuguese began using small sailing ships called **CARAVELS**. Based on Arab boats, caravels were speedy and maneuverable, and could sail into the wind, so it was easier to explore coastlines.



TRADE in EUROPE

THE CRUSADES in the eleventh through thirteenth centuries and **MARCO POLO**'s travels to China in the thirteenth century introduced Europeans to the four S's (**S**pices, **S**ilk, **S**cents, and precious **S**tones) from Asia and the Middle East. As prosperity grew in Europe, so did appetites for **Stuff**.

THE CRUSADES

nine expeditions by Europeans to win back control of their holy sites from the Muslims

HENRY the NAVIGATOR

The Portuguese became the leaders in world exploration.

PRINCE HENRY THE NAVIGATOR built a school of navigation in the 1400s (but he didn't do any exploring himself). The school developed the caravel and enabled Portuguese sailors to explore the coast of West Africa and trade for gold, ivory, and slaves. What they wanted most was a way around Africa so they could sail to India and trade directly with its merchants.



The WEST AFRICAN SLAVE TRADE

West Africa in the 1400s was no longer ruled by the major kingdoms of its past. It was broken up into many small kingdoms warring over land and trade.

Enslaving captured enemies was already an established practice—Arab Muslim traders added slaves to their shipments of salt and gold as early as the 600s CE. In the last half of the 1400s, two kingdoms, the **KONGO** (on the Zaire River) and the **NDONGO** (to its south), dominated their neighbors. By the time the Europeans arrived in the 1480s, the African slave trade was big (terrible) business.

PORtUGUESE EXPEDITIONS

1453: CONSTANTINOPLE fell to the Muslims, who cut off overland routes to the east. The Portuguese were determined to find an all-water route.

1487: Explorer **BARTOLOMEU DIAS** set out. A storm and winds accidentally took his ship to his exact goal: the southern tip of Africa. Dias named the land the **CAPE OF GOOD HOPE**, in the hope it would lead to a route to India.

1497: **VASCO DA GAMA** sailed around the Cape of Good Hope and, after nearly one hundred days out of sight of land, reached India in May of 1498. The Portuguese began making more trips and traded for spices, porcelain, silk, etc.

As a result, **LISBON** (capital of Portugal) became a major trade city, and Portugal became **VERY RICH**.



BONUS DISCOVERY:

A Portuguese fleet led by Pedro Álvares Cabral ended up over in present-day Brazil while on the way to Africa, so he claimed it for Portugal.

NOT A BONUS:

More European trade in Africa meant more slave trade, which destroyed many African communities.



WHAT ABOUT THE VIKINGS?

The Vikings, seafaring people from Scandinavia, were the first Europeans to explore North America. ERIK THE RED discovered Greenland, and his son, LEIF ERIKSSON, reached present-day Canada in the year 1000 CE. Eriksson named the land “Vinland,” but since the Vikings didn’t stay, future explorers were credited with being the first ones there.

Christopher Columbus

IN 1492...

Born in Italy and trained in Portugal, CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS thought he could reach India faster if he sailed west. Educated people knew that the world was round, but they didn't know how big it was. If the world was bigger than Columbus thought, he would certainly fail, so it was difficult to find someone to give him money to even try his plan. By appealing to their desire to spread Christianity and by promising incredible riches, Columbus convinced KING FERDINAND and QUEEN ISABELLA OF SPAIN to sponsor him.



(SPOILER ALERT: COLUMBUS GROSSLY UNDERESTIMATED

THE SIZE OF THE NEW WORLD.)

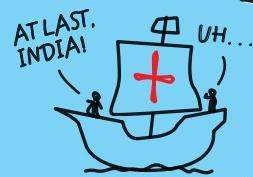
... COLUMBUS SAILED THE OCEAN BLUE

(IT RHYMES.)

On August 3, 1492, Columbus set out with three ships (the **NIÑA** and the **PINTA**—both caravels—and the flagship **SANTA MARIA**) and supplies for six months. His crew urged him to turn around after a few months. He kept two sets of logs, a secret one with the real distances traveled, and another with shorter distances (to convince the crew they were just... moving... very... slowly). Finally, in October, they saw land.

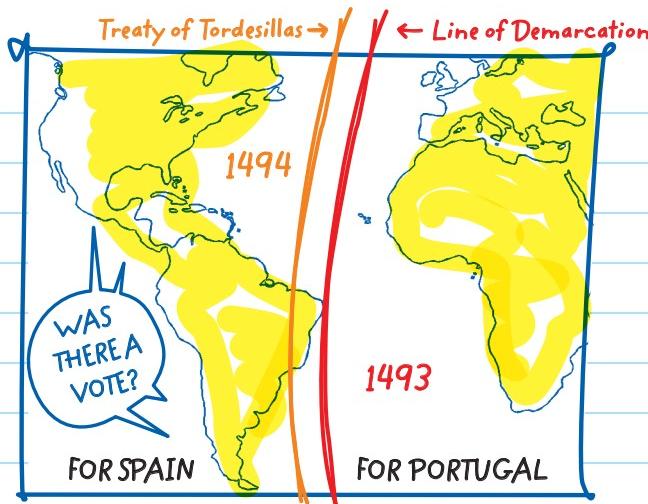
They went ashore in the Bahamas, on an island they named San Salvador, or "Holy Savior." Columbus made three more voyages in search of gold and tobacco, and explored Hispaniola (the island of present-day Haiti and the Dominican Republic), Cuba, Jamaica, and the coasts of Central and South America. Though many of the people who already lived in those areas were friendly to Columbus and his men when they arrived, the European settlers were more interested in gold and tobacco than in friendship. In general, they enslaved and cruelly treated the native people.

Columbus and his crew thought they were in the Indies in Asia, and this is why the Caribbean islands are called the WEST Indies, and why Native Americans were called Indians.



DRAWING the LINE

Spain and Portugal disagreed over who owned some of the newly found lands. In 1493, they asked Pope Alexander VI



to decide. On a map of the world, the Pope drew a **LINE OF DEMARCA**TION from the top to the bottom, giving everything to the west of it to Spain, and everything to the east to Portugal. Portugal argued that most lands to the east had already been claimed. The next year the two countries agreed to move the line about 1,175 miles west in the **TREATY OF TORDESILLAS**. Everything left to be discovered was now pre-divided. Spain got almost all of it except Brazil (which is why Portuguese, not Spanish, is spoken in Brazil now) and some islands in the Atlantic.

MORE EXPLORATION

1502: AMERIGO VESPUCCI sailed along the coast of South America. He was one of the first folks to realize he wasn't in Asia, and he recounted exotic and grand descriptions. A German mapmaker labeled the new land "America" in his honor.

1513: VASCO NÚÑEZ DE BALBOA hiked across Panama and was the first European to see the Pacific Ocean by heading west.

→ COINED THE NAME PACIFIC OCEAN FROM "PEACEFUL SEA"

1519: FERDINAND MAGELLAN, a Portuguese man sailing on behalf of Spain, reached the tip of South America.

He was killed in battle in the Philippines, but his ships returned in 1522 as the first crew to **CIRCUMNAVIGATE** the earth.

CIRCUMNAVIGATE
sail around ("circum"—think, "circle")

THE COLUMBIAN EXCHANGE

There had been no mixing of plants and animals between the Americas and the rest of the world for over ten thousand years. Things like corn, tobacco, cocoa, and potatoes didn't exist elsewhere until they were brought back from the Americas. In return, Europeans brought wheat, barley, grapes, and onions, as well as cattle, pigs, and horses, to the Americas. The plants changed the diets of people all over the world, and the animals changed the way land was used in the Americas.

The humans hadn't been exposed to any of each other's germs either. Diseases such as smallpox, measles, and the flu were common in Europe, but Native Americans didn't have **IMMUNITY**. About 20 million people died from disease in a 100-year span in Central America alone. This mixing of plants, animals, viruses, and bacteria is known as the **COLUMBIAN EXCHANGE** or the **GREAT BIOLOGICAL EXCHANGE**.

IMMUNITY
resistance to a disease or sickness, particularly due to previous exposure to the germs

The CONQUISTADORES

The CONQUISTADORES, a new kind of Spanish explorer and conqueror, were given the thumbs-up from the king and queen to settle in the Americas in return for twenty percent of any treasure found. The conquistadores wanted to:

convert people to Christianity

trade for goods

FIND LOTS OF GOLD

In 1519, HERNÁN CORTÉS went to Mexico with about 500 soldiers, along with horses and cannons. With the help of a native woman called MALINTZIN, Cortés convinced the people whom the Aztecs had conquered to ally with him—they resented paying tribute to the emperor, MONTEZUMA, with human sacrifices. Seeing the shiny metal weapons and horses, Montezuma was worried that maybe Cortés was the god Quetzalcoatl or that the gods had sent Cortés and his men. After welcoming them to Tenochtitlán, he offered them treasures and hoped they'd leave.

That backfired, since Cortés now realized that the Aztecs had a whole lot of gold. With the help of the Aztecs' angry subjects, Cortés and his crew captured Montezuma.

On June 30, 1520, LA NOCHE TRISTE ("the sad night"), the people of Tenochtitlán drove the Spanish and their allies from

the city; Montezuma was killed in the fighting, along with numerous Spanish soldiers. But, in May of 1521, Cortés returned with more Spanish troops, and this time, the Aztec Empire fell. Tenochtitlán was destroyed and the Spanish built Mexico City on top of the rubble.

In 1532, **FRANCISCO PIZARRO** sailed down the western coast of South America. He had fewer than 200 men with him and was welcomed by **ATAHUALPA**, the Inca ruler. Pizarro took Atahualpa prisoner. Although Atahualpa offered the Spaniards gold in exchange for his freedom, they executed him. Pizarro and his troops marched into the capital, Cuzco. By 1534, they had conquered the entire 2,000-mile-long territory in what is now Peru.

How did Cortés and Pizarro conquer powerful empires?

Their weapons, armor, and horses made them seem godlike and gave them the advantage.

They took their enemies by surprise.

They got the support of oppressed locals.

BIG REASON: European diseases like smallpox wiped out a large percentage of the Aztec and Inca populations.

OTHER FAMOUS EXPLORERS/CONQUISTADORES

JUAN PONCE DE LÉON landed in the place he named Florida in 1513. Although he was looking for the Fountain of Youth (he didn't find it), he explored Florida, which, in 1565, became the first Spanish settlement in what would be the U.S.

ÁLVAR NÚÑEZ CABEZA DE VACA led an expedition to Florida in 1528 and was stranded on an island off what is now Texas. He lived as a prisoner among the locals for six years and then escaped to Mexico. His experience led him to call for better treatment of Native Americans.

In 1540, FRANCISCO VÁSQUEZ DE CORONADO arrived in what is now New Mexico. He was in search of seven mythical cities of gold (he didn't find them).

HERNANDO DE SOTO crossed the Mississippi River in 1541.

In 1598, Juan de Oñate established the Province of New Mexico. He brought cows and horses.

SPANISH SOCIETY in the AMERICAS

Through the COUNCIL OF THE INDIES

(formed in 1524), the Spanish monarchs appointed two

VICEROYS. Each was in charge of a VICEROYALTY, one in

VICEROY

person appointed by a king or queen to rule an area on his or her behalf

"New Spain" (Central America and its surroundings) and one in Peru.

ENCOMIENDAS gave settlers the

go-ahead to tax local natives or force them to work.

ENCOMIENDA

a royal grant of land, including all the people on it

The social hierarchy depended on race and birthplace:

Land and positions of influence belonged to the **PENINSULARES** from the **peninsula** of Spain. Although they were the smallest population, they held almost all the power.

CREOLES (the first generation born to Spanish parents) ranked below the peninsulares.

MESTIZOS (of mixed European and American race) were next.

Native Americans.

African slaves, at the bottom.

There were three main kinds of settlements:

→ **PUEBLOS**, WHICH WERE TOWNS AND TRADING CENTERS

→ **MISSIONS**, WHICH FOCUSED ON CONVERTING PEOPLE TO CHRISTIANITY

→ **PRESIDIOS**, WHICH WERE FORTS

El Camino Real, the royal road from Mexico City to Santa Fe, connected many of these settlements. In and around the towns, **HACIENDAS** (large estates) and **PLANTATIONS** (large farms raising **CASH CROPS**) grew coffee, cotton, tobacco, and sugar. These huge operations needed a lot of workers. The labor was so intense that many died.

CASH CROP

a plant that farmers grow to make money

BARTOLOMÉ DE LAS CASAS AND THE NEW LAWS

BARTOLOMÉ DE LAS CASAS was a priest who spoke and wrote about the mistreatment of the Native American population. He came to the Caribbean in 1502. His work contributed to the government of Spain passing the **NEW LAWS** of 1542, making it illegal to enslave Native Americans. But that didn't end slavery: Because the Spanish could no longer enslave Native Americans, they instead enslaved more Africans.

The **NORTHWEST PASSAGE** and **EXPLORATION** of NORTH AMERICA

Explorers searched for the **NORTHWEST PASSAGE**, a water route through North America, so ships could sail from the Atlantic to the Pacific for trade.

In 1497 and 1498, **JOHN CABOT** (an Italian sailing on behalf of England) landed in Newfoundland, Canada. Cabot thought he was in Asia, so he set sail for Japan and was never heard from again.



THE NORTHWEST PASSAGE

WASN'T
NAVIGATED
UNTIL 1903!



In 1524, **GIOVANNI DA VERRAZZANO** (an Italian sent by the French) explored Nova Scotia, Canada.

In 1535, **JACQUES CARTIER** (a Frenchman) explored the St. Lawrence River and claimed what is now Canada for France.

In 1609, **HENRY HUDSON** (an Englishman sent by the Dutch) explored a river (now the Hudson River) in present-day New York. The next year, he returned on behalf of the British and discovered a bay (Hudson Bay). He planned to go on, but his crew **MUTINIED**, and he was either lost at sea or, more likely, killed.

MUTINY
to revolt or rebel against authority, especially by sailors against their officers

The SPANISH ARMADA

There were lots of reasons for European countries to be competitive around that time:

The **TREATY OF TORDESILLAS** between Spain and Portugal split the world so Spain owned the western half and Portugal owned the eastern half. Other European countries didn't recognize the treaty because they saw how much profit they could make from exploration.

The economic theory of **MERCANTILISM** said that a nation's power was in its wealth. European countries competed more than ever to establish colonies to get raw materials and gain new markets for exports.

The **PROTESTANT REFORMATION** also created rivalry. When **ELIZABETH I**, a Protestant, became Queen of England in 1558, she ordered sailors to attack Spanish ships (Spain was a Catholic nation) as they transported gold and silver back from America. She wanted to gain the wealth from the New World without incurring the expense of having colonies. One of the most successful and daring of these English sailors was **SIR FRANCIS DRAKE**.

TO THE ENGLISH, HE WAS AN ADVENTURER. TO THE SPANISH, HE WAS A PIRATE.

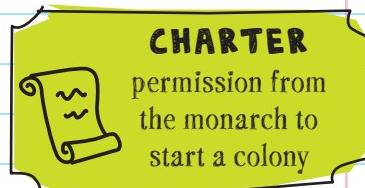
In response, in 1588, King Philip sent the mighty **SPANISH ARMADA**, a fleet of 130 ships, to conquer the English. The two navies met in the English Channel, and England was the winner. Spain never regained its previous power, and other nations saw they could challenge Spanish claims in the New World.

MORE

EUROPEAN COLONIES

The FIRST BRITISH COLONIES

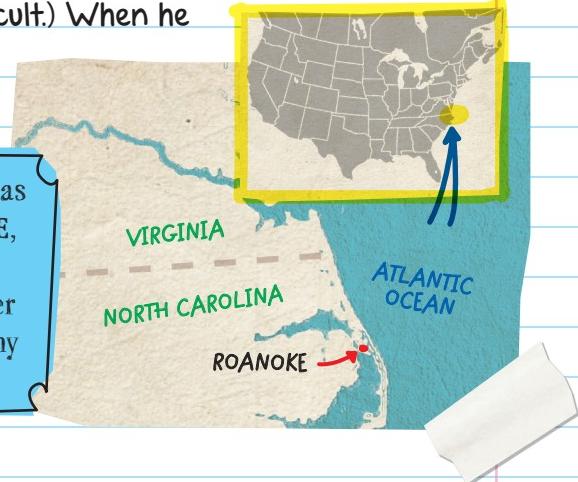
In the late 1500s, explorer **SIR WALTER RALEIGH** received a **CHARTER**. He sent an expedition in 1584 to settle a land they'd call "Virginia." The next year, the expedition founded a colony on **ROANOKE ISLAND** in present-day North Carolina. Lack of food forced the settlers to sail back to England after a year.



after Queen
Elizabeth I,
"The Virgin
Queen"

In 1587, a group of about 150 English settlers tried again in the same place. One of the leaders, **JOHN WHITE**, returned to England for supplies but couldn't come back for three years. (War between England and Spain made travel difficult.) When he returned to Roanoke, the people had vanished.

The first person born in the Americas to British parents, **VIRGINIA DARE**, was John White's granddaughter. What happened to her and the other settlers is still a mystery. Her colony is now called the **LOST COLONY**.



IN THE AMERICAS



FRENCH COLONIES

In 1608, French explorer **SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN** founded a trading post in Quebec, where an active fur and metal trade developed. (The local Native Americans did much of the work trapping beavers and other animals.) A number of Catholic priests also lived in **NEW FRANCE**, as the colony was named, on a mission to convert the locals.



In 1682, **RENÉ-ROBERT CAVELIER, SIEUR DE LA SALLE** sailed the length of the Mississippi River and claimed the area including what is now Louisiana for the French when he reached the southern end. The French later founded a trading post there in what is now New Orleans. In the 1700s, the French established trading posts in present-day Detroit, Michigan, and St. Louis, Missouri.



Because of these French explorers, French culture in North America is still concentrated in the province of Quebec and the state of Louisiana.

DUTCH COLONIES

The Dutch staked their claim in the Hudson River Valley. In 1614, they set up Fort Nassau (near modern-day Albany).

THE DUTCH WEST INDIA COMPANY

established the colony of New Netherland in 1621 along the river. In 1626, Peter Minuit purchased the island of Manhattan from the local people (the **MANHATES**) for what has been described as \$24 worth of goods but is a bit more than that in modern dollars—though still not very much. The city of New Amsterdam (today's New York City) became a prosperous center of the fur trade.



The Manhates probably considered the “sale” to be more of a lease for hunting and use rights.

The Dutch West India Company was a **CHARTERED COMPANY**. In that kind of business, investors joined to explore and trade together, with the support of the government of their home country. The government also gave permission to negotiate with foreign leaders and own colonial land. **THE DUTCH EAST INDIA COMPANY** (which did business in India and Asia) was another chartered company.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why did the Portuguese want to sail directly to India?
2. Why did Christopher Columbus have trouble getting funding?
3. Why is Portuguese spoken in Brazil?
4. What does it mean to "circumnavigate" something?
5. What was the Columbian Exchange?
6. How did the conquistadores conquer entire empires with only a few hundred soldiers?
7. Although the Northwest Passage wasn't found by early explorers, what were two resulting explorations?
8. How did the defeat of the Spanish Armada affect colonization of the Americas?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. They wanted to cut out the middleman in their trade.
2. Nobody knew how far it was if you sailed west from Europe.
3. Spain and Portugal agreed in the Treaty of Tordesillas that that land would belong to Portugal.
4. To sail around it
5. The exchange of plants, animals, and germs between the two hemispheres
6. They had surprise, the support of oppressed locals, technology, and immunities.
7. John Cabot landed in Newfoundland, Canada, and Henry Hudson explored the Hudson River.
8. Spain could no longer enforce the Treaty of Tordesillas and its monopoly on colonization.

#7 has more than one correct answer.



Unit 2

Colonial America 1607-1780s

The 1600s and 1700s were a time of transition: Colonies and the institution of slavery were established, along with trade networks, regional identities, and, in the end, states. The goals of the first English settlers in Virginia were very different from the goals of those who followed. Thomas Jefferson, Patrick Henry, and George Washington, who were all born in Virginia, viewed themselves as British living in the New World. They wouldn't stand being denied their rights as Englishmen....

★ Chapter 4 ★

SLAVERY IN THE AMERICAS

PLANTATIONS



WANTED
CHEAP LABOR



SLAVES

Sugar became a major export to Europe, but harvesting sugarcane involved tough conditions.

Initially, Native Americans were forced to work on Spanish and Portuguese plantations. Diseases from the Columbian Exchange and constant labor killed much of this population. The Spanish and Portuguese decided they needed another source of labor: **SLAVES**.



BECAME KNOWN AS
"WHITE GOLD"

MOST SUGAR PLANTATIONS
WERE IN THE

WEST
INDIES.



SLAVERY

the practice of one person legally owning another; involuntary servitude for life passed down to future generations

When the British began to set up **TOBACCO PLANTATIONS** in North America, they needed more laborers. By the 1700s, sadly, every colony in the Americas imported slaves from Africa.

Plantation owners thought that Africans were ideal workers for plantations because:

They were far from home, so they didn't have a free place to run away to.

UNLIKE MANY NATIVE AMERICANS, WHO RAN FROM THE TERRIBLE WORK CONDITIONS.

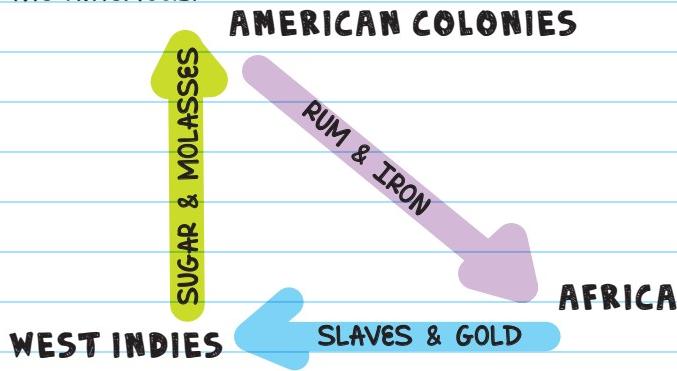
Plantation owners could enslave the slaves' children.

Many of the slaves had been farmers, so they had experience.

They already had immunity to the diseases that killed Native Americans.

The TRIANGULAR TRADE

The slave trade was part of **THE TRIANGULAR TRADE**, a trade route with three stops: Africa, the West Indies, and the Americas.



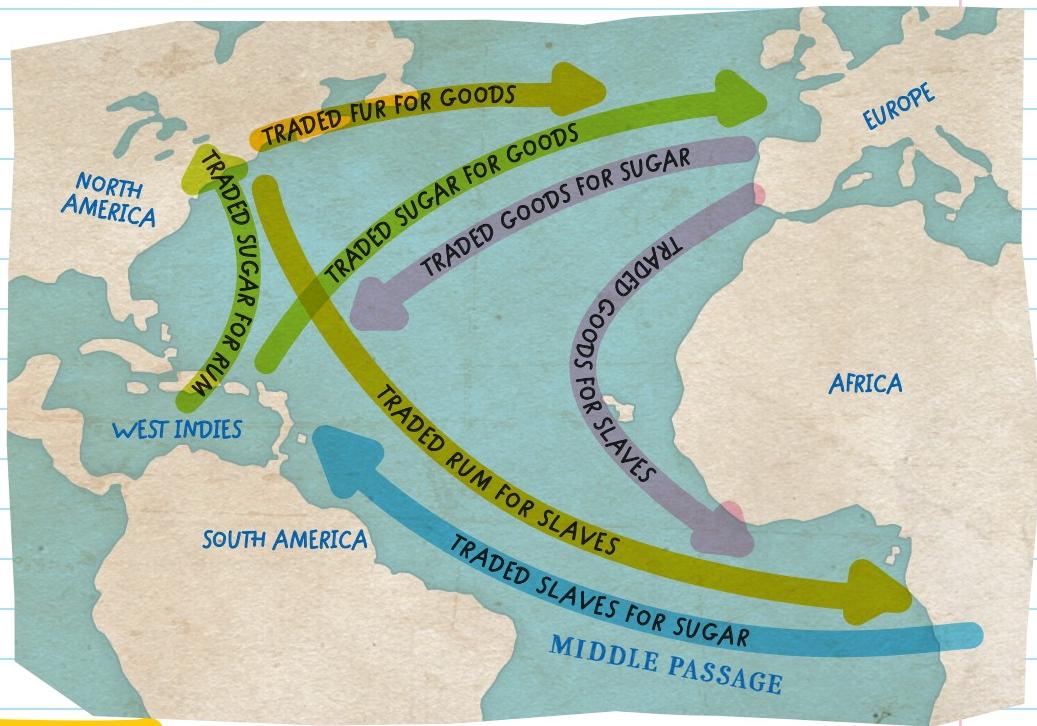
The Triangular Trade was just one part of a larger exchange of goods and slaves that included Europe.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Europe had manufactured goods (like textiles) but needed raw materials (like furs or tobacco).

Africa had slaves but needed manufactured goods.

The West Indies had raw materials (like sugar and molasses) but wanted slaves, and New England had rum (made from molasses) and iron but needed more goods.



The MIDDLE PASSAGE

The middle leg of the Triangular Trade, when ships left Africa with a cargo of slaves, was the **MIDDLE PASSAGE**. Because slaves were considered mere property, they were crammed together, given little food, exposed to disease, and otherwise abused and mistreated. About fifteen percent died during the middle passage en route to the colonies.

OLAUDAH EQUIANO was a slave brought to Virginia from Africa in the 1700s as a child. After buying his freedom, he wrote an autobiography depicting the horrors of slavery, which helped influence British lawmakers to abolish the slave trade.

LAWS ABOUT SLAVERY

Many colonies enacted **SLAVE CODES**. Slave codes varied from colony to colony, but they all considered slaves property and granted them almost no rights. Slave codes were meant to define the status of slaves, as well as the owner's responsibilities to them, to discourage slaves from running away. Those who did try to escape were severely punished.



Runaway slaves in Latin America were known as **MAROONS**. Maroons formed communities in forests or swamps, sometimes joining with Native Americans. Slaves also rebelled. The Stono Rebellion of 1739, the New York City Conspiracy of 1741, and Gabriel's Conspiracy of 1800 are just a few examples.

The BEGINNINGS of AFRICAN AMERICAN CULTURE

Slaves came from all over western Africa and were spread out once they arrived. Because of this **DIASPORA**,

African slaves in the Americas formed new cultures built from their differing backgrounds and their common experiences.

Some characteristics of the new slave cultures:

RELIGION: Most slaves were converted to Christianity but still retained their African traditions. Religion was important in daily life, and **SPIRITUALS** became a major element of it.

SONG, DANCE, AND STORYTELLING: Influenced by African traditions, song, dance, and storytelling were also used to teach.

FAMILY: Families were the central unit of society, even though the slave trade often split families apart.

CHICKEN OR EGG? RACISM, CAUSE AND EFFECT
As Africans became associated with slavery (it had previously been a social distinction rather than a racial one), racism took hold in the Americas. Racism, the belief that some races are inferior, also justified using anyone of African descent as a slave, which was convenient for the slave owners who relied on the system of slavery. Racism and slavery were not part of a cause and effect chain—they were the parts of a vicious cycle.

DIASPORA

a MIGRATION (moving from one place to another) that involves a spreading out of people from the same homeland or culture

SPIRITUAL

a religious folk song created by enslaved African people in the Americas



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Name a crop cultivated by slave labor in the Americas.
2. Why didn't plantation owners continue to use Native American labor?
3. Why were African slaves seen by plantation owners as the best source of labor?
4. What were the three "points" of the triangular trade?
5. To what does the term "middle passage" refer?
6. What is a maroon?
7. Did slavery or racism come first in the Americas?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Sugar, tobacco
2. Native Americans were killed off by European disease and the constant and terrible labor conditions. They were also more likely to run away.
3. They had immunity to European diseases, they had farm experience, and they had no homes to run to.
4. The American colonies, West Indies, and Africa
5. The part of the Triangular Trade between Africa and the Americas
6. An escaped slave in Latin America
7. Trick question—they encouraged each other to grow.

★ Chapter 5 ★

JAMESTOWN: VIRGINIA DO-OVER

If at FIRST YOU DON'T SUCCEED...

Although the Roanoke Colony failed, the English were determined. A group of merchants formed the **VIRGINIA COMPANY OF LONDON** to make money from the colonies.

On April 26, 1607, approximately 125 settlers reached the Chesapeake Bay and founded the first permanent English settlement in North America, **JAMESTOWN**, on the banks of the **JAMES RIVER**.

WHAT'S WITH ALL THE JAMESSES?

After Queen Elizabeth I died in 1603, James I became king of England.

The settlers named Jamestown and the James River in his honor.



The JAMESTOWN SETTLERS



Although Jamestown eventually survived, most of its first settlers were, let's say, misguided:

They settled on an island near the river because it could be a defensive position against the Spanish, Native Americans, and others (should they approach by water), but the **WATER WAS DIRTY AND UNDRINKABLE** for most of the year.

It was bitterly cold in winter, humid in summer, and full of **DISEASE-CARRYING MOSQUITOES** because of the marshy conditions.

Most of the settlers were rich adventurers or explorers, not craftsmen or laborers, so they **FOCUSED ON SEARCHING FOR GOLD** (of which there was little) instead of building houses or planting food.

It is no surprise that fewer than half of the settlers survived past their first winter.

JOHN SMITH

Jamestown was in trouble, so in 1608, **CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH** took charge. Smith forced people to plant and build ("Work or starve"), and Jamestown prospered. Smith developed relations with **CHIEF POWHATAN**, leader of the powerful local Native American group called the **POWHATAN CONFEDERACY**, who taught the English settlers how to grow maize and have something to eat. But...

CONFEDERACY
an alliance between
sovereign states

The STARVING TIME

In 1609, about 400 more settlers arrived, including women and children. When John Smith returned to England because of an injury, disease and famine began to take over. Only about 60 people survived the winter of 1609-1610 (**THE STARVING TIME**). People were so hungry they ate anything in reach (maybe even each other). Relations with the Native Americans fell apart. Concerned about the fate of Jamestown, in 1610 the Virginia Company of London sent them a new governor, **LORD DE LA WARR** ("Delaware" was named for him later), to set things right again.

Jamestown was the first permanent **ENGLISH** settlement in North America. The Spanish town of St. Augustine, Florida (remember: explorer Ponce de Léon), was the first permanent **SPANISH** settlement in North America.

JOHN ROLFE

JOHN ROLFE, one of the successful settlers at Jamestown, was the first colonist to cultivate tobacco for export. A cash crop initially grown

mainly in the West Indies, tobacco was hugely profitable for the Virginia Company, and therefore made the settlement profitable for the first time. In 1614, John Rolfe married

POCAHONTAS, the daughter of Chief Powhatan, improving the relationship between the English and the Native Americans.

GET YOUR JOHNS STRAIGHT (DON'T LISTEN TO THE LEGENDS)

John ROLFE married Pocahontas. Although briefly captured by her tribe, John SMITH may or may not have been rescued by Pocahontas. Most historians believe John Smith exaggerated or completely made up the story about the princess.

TOBACCO EXPANDS

Tobacco became a popular cash crop. People in England knew how valuable it was and demanded that the Virginia Company give them a cut of the profit. Instead, the company gave them land: Under the **HEADRIGHT SYSTEM** (your **RIGHT** per **HEAD**), any man who paid his way across the ocean was granted 50 acres of land in Virginia and 50 more acres for each person (head) he brought with him, including women and servants. It was a major incentive to grow tobacco.

The English needed more labor for their tobacco plantations. A primary source was **INDENTURED SERVITUDE**.

Indentured servants, often from

↗ BUT ONLY TEMPORARILY

INDENTURED SERVITUDE

the condition of being a contracted laborer

Britain or Germany, signed a contract for four to seven years of service in exchange for passage across the Atlantic. After the time was up, they were free to make a new life.

Indentured servitude was outpaced by the growth of the slave trade, which was legalized in Virginia in the 1660s. With more and more tobacco being grown, lifelong slaves began to replace temporary servants.

The **HOUSE** of BURGESSES

In 1619, the **HOUSE OF BURGESSES**, a **LEGISLATIVE** body, held its first annual assembly. Under the overall governance of the Virginia Company, the people had their own

REPRESENTATIVE GOVERNMENT

BURGESS

a citizen representative in local government

LEGISLATIVE

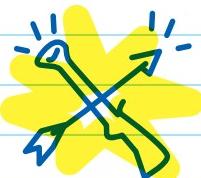
having the function of making laws and, in reference to the House of Burgesses, imposing taxes

REPRESENTATIVE GOVERNMENT

government with elected representatives of the citizens

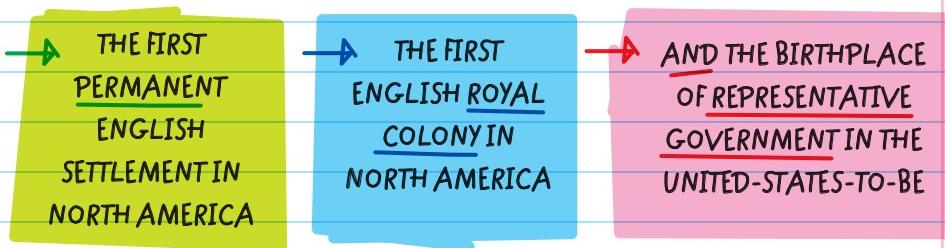
A ROYAL MESS

In 1622, the Powhatan people became increasingly concerned about the tobacco farms taking up all the land along the James River. When an Englishman murdered a member of the tribe, the Powhatan launched a military campaign. On March 22, they attacked and killed a quarter of the English population. Vicious fighting continued for 20 years.

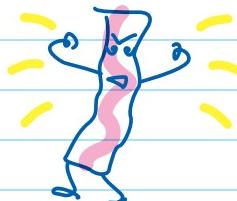


Since the Virginia Company could neither protect the settlers nor make enough money to justify all the fighting, in 1624 King James revoked their charter. Jamestown became a **ROYAL COLONY**, meaning the king was in charge. He chose a governor to rule the colony in his place and abolished the House of Burgesses.

After King James I's death, however, **KING CHARLES I** reinstated the House of Burgesses in 1629. Jamestown had become:



But Jamestown had its share of conflict too. In 1676, a group of frontiersmen led by Nathaniel Bacon led attacks on the Pamunkey people and the governor of Jamestown. Although **BACON'S REBELLION** quickly ended after Bacon's untimely death from dysentery, it was one of the first acts of rebellion by colonists over land, high taxes, and failure to deal with the colonists' demands.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What was the first permanent English settlement in the Americas? The first Spanish one?
2. What happened in Jamestown in the winter of 1609-1610?
3. What crop was introduced to settler farmers by John Rolfe? Why was it important?
4. Why did people sign contracts to become indentured servants?
5. What were the powers of the Virginia House of Burgesses?
6. What happened when the Virginia Company lost its charter? Why did that happen?
7. What was Nathaniel Bacon angry about?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Jamestown was the first permanent English settlement in North America. St. Augustine, Florida, was the first permanent Spanish settlement.
2. The winter of 1609-1610 was considered the Starving Time, when only about 60 people survived. Some may have resorted to cannibalism.
3. Tobacco. It made the American settlement profitable for the first time.
4. To get free passage to America
5. Taxation and creating local law
6. Virginia became a royal colony. The charter couldn't protect the settlers and wasn't making much money.
7. He was mad about land, high taxes, and the governor not listening to the colonists.



Chapter 6

The THIRTEEN COLONIES

New settlements joined Jamestown on the eastern coast:

1) CHARTERED COLONIES

under the control of a joint-stock company with a charter



Examples: Connecticut, Rhode Island

2) PROPRIETARY COLONIES

under the control of the person whose property the land was



Examples: Delaware, Maryland, Pennsylvania

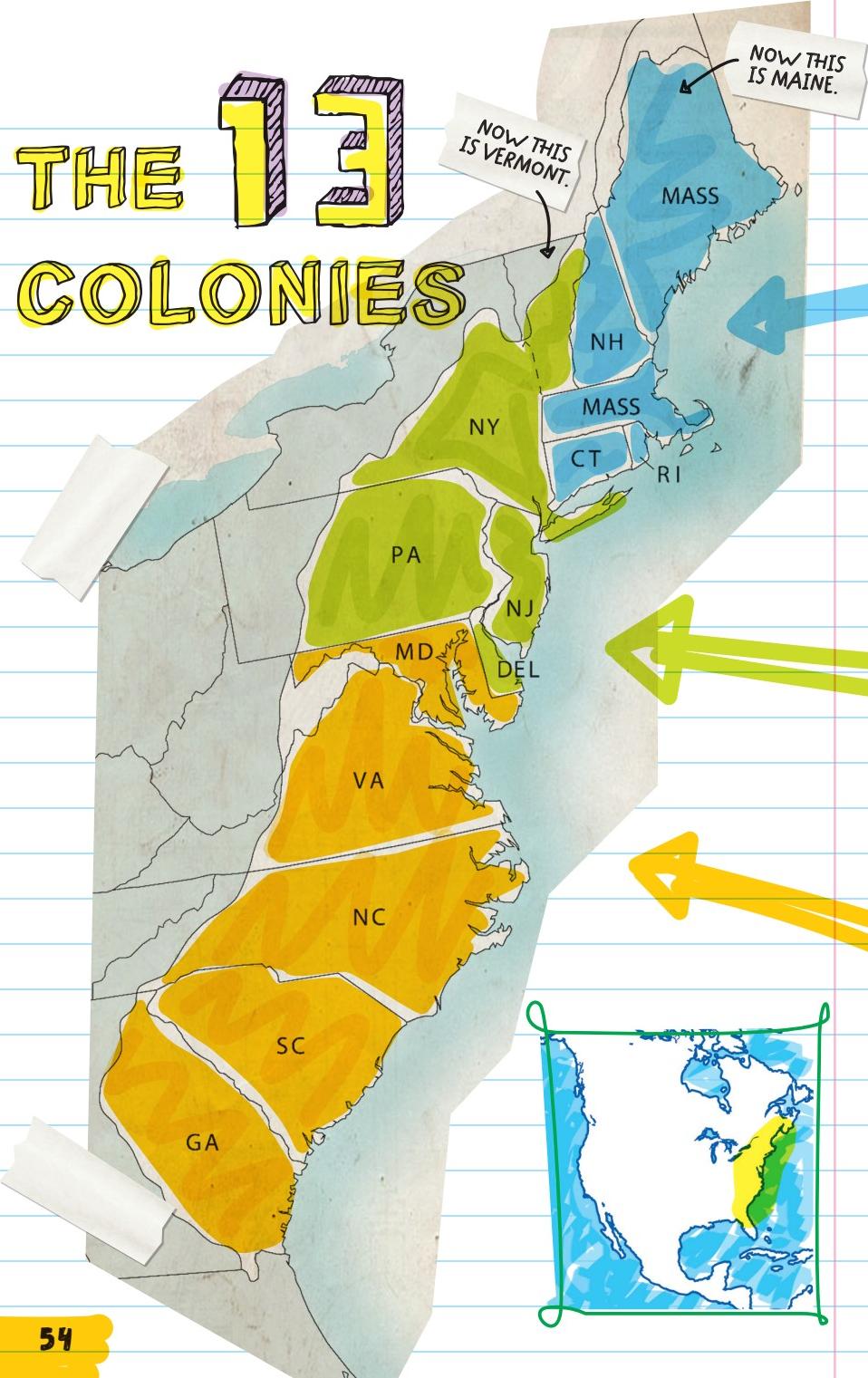
3) ROYAL COLONIES

under the control, via an appointed governor, of English royalty

Examples: North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia, which started as proprietary colonies and later became royal colonies



THE 13 COLONIES



NEW ENGLAND COLONIES

Plymouth/Massachusetts Bay (1620)

New Hampshire (1629)

Rhode Island (1636)

Connecticut (1662)

MIDDLE COLONIES

New York (1624)

New Jersey (1664)

Pennsylvania (1681)

Delaware (1634)

SOUTHERN COLONIES

Maryland (1633)

Virginia (1607)

North Carolina (1663)

South Carolina (1663)

Georgia (1733)

THE SOUTHERN COLONIES ESTABLISHED AFTER VIRGINIA:

MARYLAND

George Calvert, Lord Baltimore, wanted to set up a place for fellow Catholics. He requested a charter from King Charles I in 1632. His son, Cecilius, inherited the **PROPRIETARY COLONY** and named it **MARYLAND**. Although it was meant to be a safe place for Catholics, Protestants moved in too, causing conflicts. In 1649, Lord Baltimore issued the **ACT OF TOLERATION**, which made it illegal to **PERSECUTE** any Christian for his religion. However, in 1654, the Protestants gained control of the local government and revoked the act.



PERSECUTION

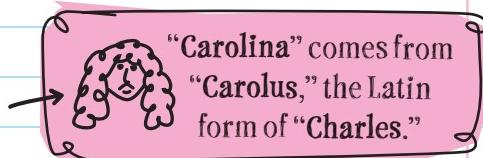
punish/harass, usually because of one's identity

The CAROLINAS

After a civil war in England,

CHARLES II became king in

1660. To reward the aristocrats who had supported him, he gave them a proprietary colony south of Virginia, which they named **CAROLINA**. Most people in the northern half were originally Virginians. Most in the southern half came directly



from England, with slaves, attracted by farmland, religious tolerance, and self-government. It became difficult to rule both sides as one unit. The people of the more prosperous South Carolina split from the colony's rule. In 1729, North and South Carolina became royal colonies.

DEBTOR

someone in debt

GEORGIA

Georgia was the last British colony founded in North America. In 1732, **JAMES OGLETHORPE** received a charter from King George II to establish a colony for **DEBTORS** (people unable to pay back money could be sent to jail at the time) and poor people to make a new start. The king saw Georgia as a buffer between the colonies and **SPANISH FLORIDA**. Because it was an alternative to jail, Oglethorpe had strict rules: no large plantations, no rum, few slaves, and no Catholics. Few settlers were actually debtors, however. Oglethorpe gave up on his plan, and in 1752, Georgia also became a royal colony.

PURITANS and PILGRIMS

Some people settled in North America for religious freedom. Catholics in England had been persecuted since the establishment of the **CHURCH OF ENGLAND** (Anglicans) and there was constant fighting between Catholic and Protestant nations.

Catholics weren't the only persecuted Christians.

PURITANS:

wanted to reform the Church of England so that it would be more pure (or closer, they believed, to the text of the Bible)



SEPARATISTS:

wanted to start their own church from scratch



In 1608, many Separatists fled England for Holland.

Later, they formed a joint-stock company and were given permission from the Virginia Company to settle in North America. They thought of themselves as **PILGRIMS**.

The **MAYFLOWER** and the **MAYFLOWER COMPACT**

On **SEPTEMBER 16, 1620**, a ship called the **MAYFLOWER** left England. Not everyone on board was a Pilgrim. They were bound for Virginia, but after two months of sailing, they spotted land farther north, in **NEW ENGLAND**. They decided to settle there instead, where they could make their own rules.

PILGRIM

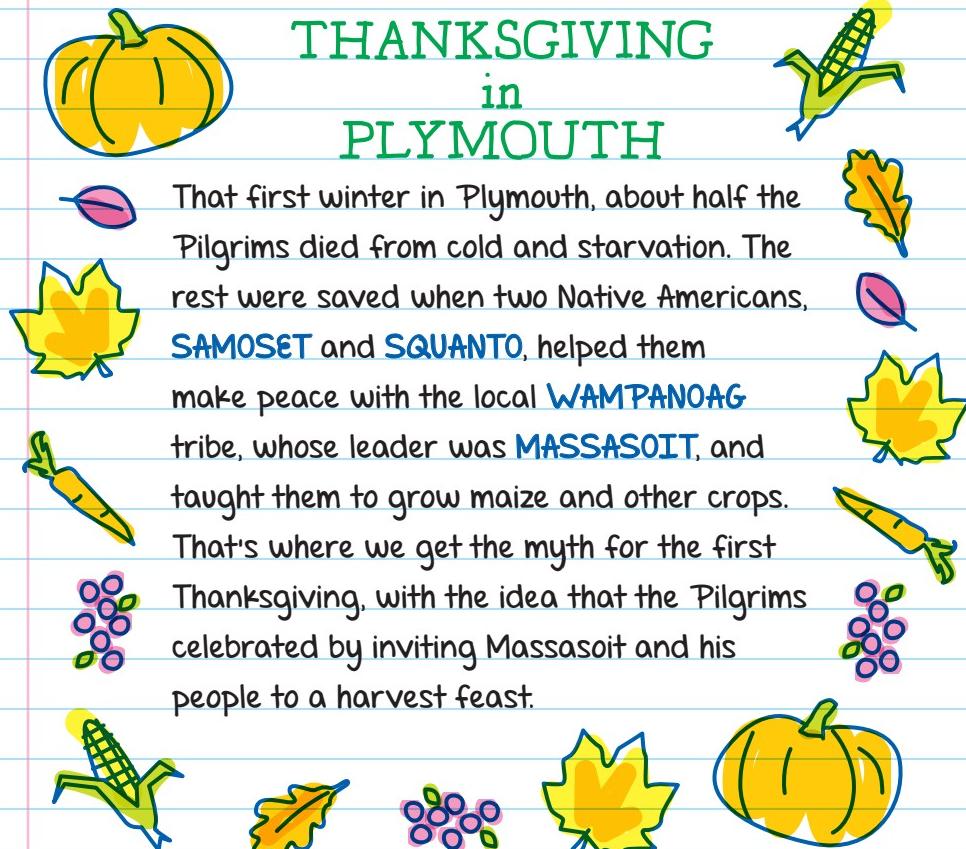
one who travels to a sacred place as an act of religious devotion



On NOVEMBER 21, 1620, before they went ashore, the men, led by WILLIAM BRADFORD, signed the MAYFLOWER COMPACT, a **COVENANT** agreeing to obey "just and equal laws" created for the "general good of the colony" in order to benefit "the glory of God" and the "honor of our King" (of England). The Pilgrims landed at Cape Cod and later chose to settle at PLYMOUTH ROCK in Massachusetts.

COVENANT
an agreement
or promise,
with religious
overtones

THANKSGIVING in PLYMOUTH



That first winter in Plymouth, about half the Pilgrims died from cold and starvation. The rest were saved when two Native Americans, SAMOSET and SQUANTO, helped them make peace with the local WAMPANOAG tribe, whose leader was MASSASOIT, and taught them to grow maize and other crops. That's where we get the myth for the first Thanksgiving, with the idea that the Pilgrims celebrated by inviting Massasoit and his people to a harvest feast.

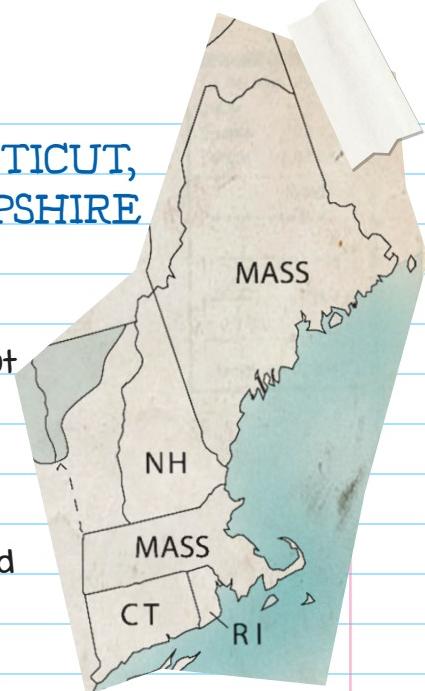
NEW ENGLAND COLONIES:

MASSACHUSETTS, CONNECTICUT,
RHODE ISLAND, NEW HAMPSHIRE

MASSACHUSETTS

In 1630, led by **JOHN WINTHROP**, about 900 people settled in **BOSTON**. Their goal was to start a perfect Christian society, a concept known as a "city on a hill." A **GENERAL COURT** was established to create local laws. It was made up of representatives—but only male members of the church (those who were **ELECT**, or thought to be chosen by God) could vote. Meanwhile, the Puritans in England were feeling more and more threatened by religious persecution. Tens of thousands left between 1629 and 1640 in what is known as the **GREAT MIGRATION**.

King Charles I granted the **MASSACHUSETTS BAY COMPANY**, a Puritan joint-stock company, a charter to establish a colony near Plymouth.



ELECT

not “elected,” but thought to be chosen by God

THE SALEM WITCH TRIALS

In 1692, in Salem, Massachusetts, some young girls accused people of casting spells on them. A special court was formed to judge witchcraft cases. The court often forced confessions from the accused. Although people eventually admitted that they had made false accusations, by the time the witch scare ended, nineteen people had been executed for witchcraft.

CONNECTICUT

THOMAS HOOKER, a minister, disagreed with John Winthrop's leadership. He led his **CONGREGATION** to found Hartford, Connecticut, in 1636. Hartford and two other towns joined together to become their own colony, and Hooker drafted the

CONGREGATION

a group of people brought together for religious worship

FUNDAMENTAL ORDERS OF CONNECTICUT, the first written constitution in North America. Under the orders, male citizens who were not thought to be **ELECT** could still vote.

RHODE ISLAND

ROGER WILLIAMS, another Massachusetts minister, believed that people shouldn't be forced to go to church, that settlers should pay Native Americans for land, and that church and state should be separate. This was so controversial that he was **BANISHED** from Massachusetts in 1636. His congregation followed him and founded **PROVIDENCE**.

BANISHED

forced to leave or no longer welcome

In 1638, **ANNE HUTCHINSON** was **BANISHED** from Massachusetts because she believed in personal revelation and that ministers didn't need to be members of the elect. (Another reason for her banishment was probably that she was a woman who spoke out.) Hutchinson and her sympathizers founded Portsmouth, near Providence. In 1644, the area became the colony of **RHODE ISLAND AND PROVIDENCE PLANTATIONS**.

NEW HAMPSHIRE

In 1638, Anne Hutchinson's brother-in-law, **JOHN WHEELWRIGHT**, fled Massachusetts for similar reasons. He led people who agreed with him north and founded the town of Exeter. The area became the independent colony of **NEW HAMPSHIRE** in 1679.

KING PHILIP'S WAR

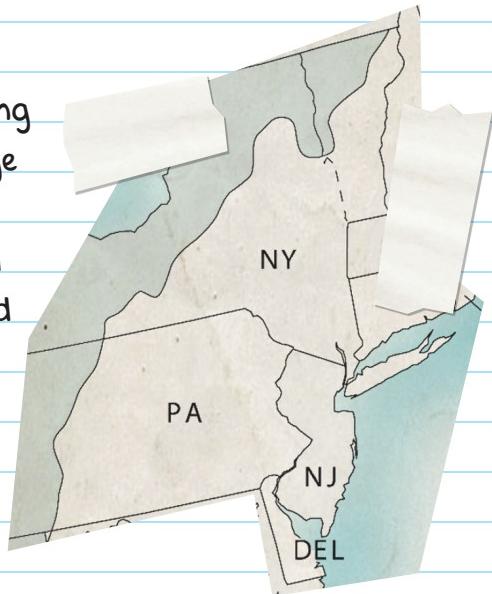
In 1675, three members of the Wampanoag tribe were tried and executed by the English for a murder. The Wampanoag chief, METACOMET (known as King Philip to the settlers), son of Massasoit, felt that the British had no right to execute his people. Also, the Wampanoag were losing land in spite of efforts to compromise with the British.

War broke out, and hundreds of settlers and many Wampanoag were killed, including Metacomet. The English claimed victory, with help from their trading partners, the Pequot and Mohegan tribes. Afterward, the English expanded into Native American lands faster than ever.

THE MIDDLE COLONIES: NEW YORK, NEW JERSEY, PENNSYLVANIA, DELAWARE

NEW YORK

New Netherland was a thriving Dutch colony. Seeing the large number of prosperous Dutch people between New England and Virginia, England wanted this land for itself. In 1664, England sent a fleet and, unprepared for a battle, the Dutch surrendered. The colony was renamed **NEW YORK**, after the Duke of York, who got it as a proprietary colony.



NEW JERSEY

The Duke of York gave some of his land to **LORD JOHN BERKELEY** and **SIR GEORGE CARTERET**, who named it **NEW JERSEY**. They attracted settlers by starting a representative assembly and offering large amounts of land. But because New Jersey had no harbor, it was hard to make a profit. They sold their shares of ownership in the colony, and the colony reverted to the King's control in 1702.

PENNSYLVANIA

New Jersey had a large population of **QUAKERS**, a religious group later called the **RELIGIOUS SOCIETY OF FRIENDS** who were said to tremble (or quake) before God and who had been banished from New England. The Quaker beliefs of equality of the sexes, nonviolence, and tolerance felt like a threat to Puritans.

King Charles II handed over land to Quaker **WILLIAM PENN** in 1681 to pay off a debt Charles owed Penn's family. Penn established **PENNSYLVANIA**, where Quakers would have religious freedom, and founded Philadelphia. It attracted thousands of people and became one of the largest cities in North America.

The **MASON-DIXON LINE** was originally a line of rocks laid down by two people named Mason and Dixon to mark the border between Pennsylvania and Maryland.

UGH.
CAN'T
WE JUST
DRAW
THIS ON
A MAP?

DELAWARE

Penn also got land from the Duke of York. **DELAWARE** was south of his other holdings and was occupied by a large Swedish population. It was still officially part of Pennsylvania, but Penn let them govern themselves.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What were the three types of British colonies in North America?
2. Why did Carolina split into North and South?
3. What is the difference between a Puritan and a Separatist?
4. What did the Mayflower Compact promise?
5. Why did Roger Williams leave Massachusetts to found Rhode Island?
6. What did their loss in King Philip's War mean for Native Americans?
7. How did the Quakers get their name?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Royal, proprietary, and chartered
2. The southern part of Carolina was wealthier, and the sides were too different to rule at the same time. Eventually, South Carolina split from colonial rule.
3. Puritans wanted to purify the existing English Church; Separatists wanted to start their own church.
4. The Mayflower Compact was a promise to obey "just and equal laws" created for the "general good of the colony" in order to benefit "the glory of God" and the "honor of our King" (of England).
5. He disagreed with the church in Massachusetts (for example, he believed in the separation of church and state, that settlers should pay Native Americans for land, and people shouldn't be obligated to go to church).
6. Expansion of English settlers into their lands accelerated.
7. They were said to tremble before God.

★ Chapter 7 ★

REGIONAL DIFFERENCES

As the populations of the thirteen colonies increased from immigration and high birth rates, the differences between them became more prominent. Vast distances and poor communication also led to differences. They developed individual cultures as well as a shared American culture.

The main differences between the colonies hung on **PEGS:**

POPULATION
ECONOMY
GOVERNMENT
SLAVERY

NORTHERN

BACKCOUNTRY

MASS

NH

MASS

CT

RI

NY

PA

NJ

MD

DE

VA

NC

SC

GA

MIDDLE

SOUTHERN

SOUTHERN IDENTITY

Plantations: The south had a lot of plantations that grew cash crops, including tobacco, indigo, and rice. Each plantation was like its own town, and people lived far apart. There was almost no manufacturing or other business.

Tidewater Aristocracy: Because plantations were large and few, a small number of wealthy people lived in the south. A tiny percentage of the population controlled almost all the money and power. The wealthiest planters lived along the Tidewater section of Virginia, which had good soil and navigable rivers and shipped tobacco and other crops to England.

Dependence on Slavery: Even though only a small percentage of the citizens owned slaves, the agricultural economy depended on slavery.

Population Imbalance: There were many more slaves than slave owners. Slaveholders lived in fear of rebellion. This fear caused local governments to make slave codes even stricter.

Elected Representative Assemblies: Starting with the House of Burgesses, most local government was in the form of assemblies. Often these assemblies were **BICAMERAL**, with one house elected by the people and the other appointed by the royal governor.

BICAMERAL
a legislature having two houses

NORTHERN IDENTITY

Town Life: Life for New Englanders revolved around the **MEETINGHOUSE** and **church**, which were usually the same building. The meetinghouse (where churchgoing men worked together to make laws) usually faced a town **GREEN**, which was shared land that belonged to the town. New Englanders owned small farms (for **SUBSISTENCE FARMING**) and lived close to their neighbors.

SUBSISTENCE FARMING

producing just enough crops to survive

Trade and Industry: Unable to raise cash crops (due to long winters and poor soil), New England depended on trade, mills, lumber, shipbuilding, fishing, fur trading, whaling, and craftsmanship. New Englanders were, on average, better off than Southerners.

Limited Use of Slavery: With no large plantations, there were few slaves. However, Northern merchants did engage in the slave trade and profited from it.

Puritan Values: New Englanders adopted the Puritan values of hard work, modesty, and education. Massachusetts

MANDATE

to require,
usually by law

MANDATED schools in any town of more than 50 households. Puritan values did not include tolerance of religious differences.

MIDDLE-COLONY IDENTITY

The Middle Colonies linked the **NORTHERN** and **SOUTHERN** cultures:

Mixed Agriculture and Industry:

Colonies grew some cash crops, especially grain, as well as fruits and vegetables. They developed industries such as ironworking and forestry. Trade was made easier by access to Philadelphia and New York City, the largest ports in the colonies and the centers of shipping.

Mixed Use of Slavery:

Slaves were forced to work both in cities and on farms. Some were able to make money when their slaveholders allowed them to work as longshoremen or shipbuilders in exchange for a portion of the slaves' wages. A rare few slaves were able to save enough to buy their freedom.

Mixed Populations:

With large immigrant populations and a tradition of tolerance, the Middle Colonies were home to the most diverse populations.

Mixed Government:

The Middle Colonies used a combination of assemblies, town meetings, and royal government.

England expected to profit from its colonies. So England passed the **NAVIGATION ACT OF 1651**, making it illegal for the colonies to sell to countries other than England, use ships other than English ships, or go through ports other than English ports. The colonists soon saw that the Acts limited their wealth by cutting back free trade. Many resorted to **SMUGGLING** (conducting illegal/secret trade).



BACKCOUNTRY IDENTITY

The **BACKCOUNTRY**, or the western frontier, stretched along the **APPALACHIAN MOUNTAINS**, from the far north to the far south, and was populated by recent immigrants and former indentured servants. Although it wasn't very far west, it had a Wild West atmosphere. Few people had large farms or owned slaves.

NEW and UNIQUE AMERICAN IDENTITY

Even though regional identities became stronger, a culture was evolving, with:

COMMON HISTORY, from a shared English background

Perception of **CHEAP** and **AVAILABLE LAND**

NOT THE CASE
IN EUROPE!

AN EMERGING MIDDLE CLASS, from wealth and social mobility because of the lack of aristocrats and use of slaves instead of lower-class white workers

POWER FOR LAND OWNERS, because of the connection between land ownership and the right to vote

SOCIAL MOBILITY (among white males) from lack of hereditary titles or classes

TOLERANCE (mostly) **OF RELIGIOUS DIFFERENCES**, due to diversity

SHARED ENEMIES, from conflicts with Native Americans and French and Spanish settlers

Women mostly worked in the home (cooking, cleaning, raising children, gardening, making soap and candles, etc.) or running stores or inns in cities. Farming was mainly the job of men. Boys were often sent to **APPRENTICE** with a master craftsman, while girls learned their crafts at home.

APPRENTICE
to work for another in
order to learn a trade

The ENGLISH BILL of RIGHTS

Changes in England meant changes in the colonies. In 1685, **JAMES II** became King. He wanted more control. He made the northern colonies the **DOMINION OF NEW ENGLAND**, a royal colony with very limited self-government. People on both sides of the Atlantic were unhappy with him. After three years, **PARLIAMENT** ousted him. His daughter and son-in-law, **MARY AND WILLIAM OF ORANGE**, invaded and took over in the **GLORIOUS REVOLUTION** (called that because it took place without bloodshed).

PARLIAMENT

the legislative body of Great Britain

In 1689, William and Mary approved an **ENGLISH BILL OF RIGHTS**, which limited the powers of the monarchy and asserted parliamentary power. The British government continued to make laws governing trade with the colonies, but there was little enforcement in the colonies—a hands-off approach called **SALUTARY NEGLECT**. Still, colonists believed they were full citizens of England and entitled to all of the same rights as someone living in England.

SALUTARY

good; healthy



Considered one of the most important legal documents in history, the **MAGNA CARTA** of 1215 forced the king (at the time, King John) to obey the laws of the land. Ever since, British citizens have been determined to limit royal power and protect their rights.

The GREAT AWAKENING and the ENLIGHTENMENT

The **GREAT AWAKENING** was a religious movement led by traveling ministers in the 1730s and 1740s. Through fiery sermons at outdoor **REVIVAL** meetings, Americans were encouraged to seek a personal relationship with God.

MOST FAMOUS MINISTERS:

Jonathan Edwards of Massachusetts

George Whitefield of England

The **ENLIGHTENMENT** was a philosophical movement that emphasized human reason, scientific analysis, and individualism, and applied the laws of nature to politics and society. Led in England by such philosophers as **JOHN LOCKE**, it held that a **SOCIAL CONTRACT** ensured citizens' rights, in exchange for obedience to the government. The Enlightenment influenced **BENJAMIN FRANKLIN**, **THOMAS JEFFERSON**, and most of the Founding Fathers.

The Great Awakening and the Enlightenment prompted Americans to debate political, societal, and religious questions. Both put forth the idea that there was equality—whether in the eyes of God or the eyes of justice—among all individuals.

THE
New-York Weekly JOURNAL

Containing the freshest Advices, Foreign, and Domestic.

FREEDOM of the PRESS

JOHN PETER ZENGER, publisher of the NEW-YORK WEEKLY JOURNAL, was charged with **LIBEL** in 1735 after printing negative statements about the governor. Since the governor was an appointee of the king and it was illegal to speak negatively about the king, Zenger was put on trial. His lawyers, Andrew Hamilton and William Smith, urged the jury to determine whether or not Zenger spoke the truth and convinced them that people had the right to do so. It was the beginning of **FREEDOM OF THE PRESS**.

LIBEL
a printed statement that defames or misrepresents



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Did most people in the South own slaves?
2. Where was the center of town life in New England?
3. What values are emblematic of the Puritans?
4. Why was there a successful middle class in North America?
5. Why were the colonists guaranteed the rights promised by the English Bill of Rights?
6. What is salutary neglect?
7. What did the Great Awakening and the Enlightenment have in common?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. No
2. The meetinghouse and church, near the green
3. Hard work, modesty, and education
4. There were no aristocrats, wealth was easier to acquire, and slaves did the work of lower-class white workers.
5. They considered themselves citizens of England.
6. A hands-off approach to government that benefits the people
7. They both advocated equality and encouraged debate.

★ Chapter 8 ★

PRE-REVOLUTIONARY WAR

TESTING the BOUNDARIES

As British colonists expanded westward, frontiersmen infringed on Native American territory and challenged French claims to the land.



FUR, PORTS, and FIGHTING

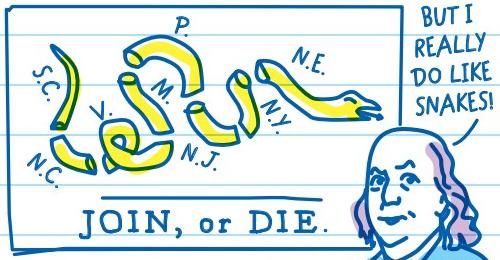
French colonists depended on the rivers that provided access to the sea and French markets. They built forts along the rivers to guard against the English. Although some were **JESUIT** (priests) who aimed to convert native people to Catholicism, many were in the fur trade.

British traders had the same idea, and they built the settlement of **PICKAWILLANY** in present-day Ohio in 1748. The French responded by attacking Pickawillany. The British captured the French settlement of Louisbourg in Canada. France built more forts, such as **FORT DUQUESNE** in Pennsylvania.

ALLIANCES

Seeing that full-on fighting was coming, the British and French searched for Native American allies. Perhaps because the French were fewer in number, traded European goods, and didn't encroach on the native peoples' land, the French had a better relationship with the local Native Americans. They had allies in the Algonquin and Huron tribes, as well as others. The British got help from the Iroquois League. The Native Americans' main objective was to protect trade and their own land, so they joined whichever side seemed least harmful.

A POLITICAL CARTOON
BY BENJAMIN FRANKLIN



ALBANY PLAN

The British colonies sent representatives to Albany, New York, to discuss defense.

MILITIA

an army of amateur soldiers, put together in a time of need

In June 1754, Benjamin Franklin presented the **ALBANY PLAN OF UNION** (the **ALBANY PLAN**), the first formal attempt to unite the colonies. The plan was to join to raise money, train **MILITIA**, and organize the government—but not a single local legislature was willing to give up its own power. So the colonies continued fighting on their own, often losing.

GEORGE WASHINGTON

In 1753, a young surveyor was sent by the Virginia governor to find French settlers in the Ohio River Valley and convince them to leave. His name was **GEORGE WASHINGTON**, and he was twenty-one years old. The French refused, so in 1754 the governor made Washington an officer in the colonial militia and sent him back with troops. Washington attacked a French scouting party, which the French claimed were on a diplomatic mission. The French also said that among the ten people killed was a French diplomat. Afterward, Washington built a smaller fort, **FORT NECESSITY**, near Fort Duquesne. Even though he had little experience and few men, Washington attacked Fort Duquesne. He was defeated, but the attack was the beginning of a war, and Washington's bravery made him a hero in Virginia.



The FRENCH and INDIAN WAR: 1754–1763 (Part of the SEVEN YEARS' WAR: 1756–1763)

The **FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR** between Britain and France also became known as the **SEVEN YEARS' WAR** when it turned into a larger European conflict.

The **FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR** was the first war that started in the colonies and spread to Europe.

Europe split into two factions—countries that sided with England and countries that sided with France—and war broke out across Europe. Meanwhile, the British didn't have a strong army in America. In 1755, King George II sent **GENERAL EDWARD BRADDOCK** to command the colonial forces. George Washington advised Braddock to fight "Indian style," and that the European style of combat—his army's bright red coats and method of lining up in columns—was a disadvantage. But Braddock ignored the advice. He was soon killed in a surprise attack.

The **REDCOATS** took huge losses.

British secretary of state (later the prime minister) **WILLIAM Pitt** was determined to drive the French out of British territory. The fighting was costly. There would have to be payback. He sent more troops.



REDCOATS

British soldiers, so called because of their official uniform of a bright red jacket

The TIDE TURNS

With additional troops, the British army and colonial militia began to capture French forts. Fort Duquesne became

FORT PITT. Quebec, the capital of New France, seemed impossible to attack, but the British successfully ambushed the city by cover of night. The **BATTLE OF QUEBEC** was a turning point in the war. When Montreal fell the next year, all of Canada was in British hands.



The TREATY of PARIS

The Seven Years' War formally ended in 1763 when Britain and France signed the **TREATY OF PARIS**. The treaty gave England all the French territory east of the Mississippi as well as the Spanish territory of Florida (Spain had sided with France).

PONTIAC'S REBELLION

British expansion made life a whole lot worse for Native Americans.

Trade with the British was less profitable, and more settlers were seizing land and establishing farms.

An Ottawa chief named **PONTIAC** tried to unite Native Americans against the British. In early 1763, his forces took the fort at Detroit and attacked forts and settlements along the frontier.

PONTIAC'S REBELLION, or **PONTIAC'S WAR**, continued until he was killed in 1769 and the British defeated his allies.

BIOLOGICAL WARFARE

Several accounts report the English invited Native American leaders to discuss peace, presenting them with a gift of blankets that had been intentionally contaminated with smallpox, causing a deadly outbreak of the disease.

The PROCLAMATION of 1763

To prevent more clashes between settlers and Native Americans, **KING GEORGE III** issued the **PROCLAMATION OF 1763**, making it illegal for settlers to live west of the **APPALACHIAN MOUNTAINS**. This angered settlers, some of whom had already purchased land that was now out of bounds. They didn't understand why they couldn't just live wherever they wanted, and the proclamation was routinely disobeyed. The stage was set for more conflict between the colonies and Britain.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What did many French colonists do for a living?
2. Why did the French get along better with the Native Americans than the English did?
3. How did George Washington become a hero in Virginia?
4. What is the difference between the French and Indian War and the Seven Years' War?
5. What were the elements of the traditional European style of combat?
6. What were the terms of the Treaty of Paris?
7. How did Chief Pontiac respond to France's loss in the French and Indian War?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. They were fur traders.
2. They traded with the Native Americans and did not settle on their land.
3. His bravery at the start of the French and Indian War, at Fort Duquesne, made him famous.
4. The French and Indian War became known as the Seven Years' War when it grew into a larger European conflict.
5. Organized ranks, usually wearing bright uniforms
6. The treaty gave England all the French territory east of the Mississippi as well as the Spanish territory of Florida because Spain had sided with France.
7. He attempted to unite Native Americans against the British.



Chapter 9



PARLIAMENT and PROTESTS

The END of SALUTARY NEGLECT

The French and Indian War had been very expensive, so Great Britain had a large debt. In addition, the expanding British territory meant that there were constant land conflicts with Native Americans. England sent a **STANDING ARMY** to America to protect the colonists, and those troops had to be paid, too. In order to pay off the war debt and maintain the standing army England had sent to America to protect the colonists, Parliament raised taxes.

MY FEET HURT!



STANDING ARMY

a professional army maintained even in peacetime

The SUGAR ACT

← SWEET! (NOT)

The **SUGAR ACT** of 1764 actually LOWERED taxes on molasses that was brought into the colonies, hoping to minimize **SMUGGLING**. Because they were trying to stop smugglers, customs officers searched ships, and any suspected

contraband could be taken away, even before the smuggler was convicted. Colonists believed that the Sugar Act violated their legal rights as British citizens by denying the right to trial—and some went even further: **JAMES OTIS**, a lawyer in Boston, argued that Parliament didn't have a right to tax the colonists at all, since the colonists didn't have representatives there to debate the tax.

The STAMP ACT

In 1765, the **STAMP ACT** was passed. Any printed paper goods, including legal documents, had to be taxed and have a stamp proving the tax was paid. The Stamp Act was the first direct tax on individual colonists.

Protests broke out, including **BOYCOTTS** in which colonists refused to purchase British goods at all.

STAMP AGENTS WERE TARRED AND FEATHERED, AND MOBS PREVENTED STAMP DISTRIBUTIONS.



That October, the **STAMP ACT CONGRESS**—with representatives from nine colonies—met in New York.

They wrote a petition explaining how the Stamp Act was a violation of their natural and political rights. In March of 1766, at the urging of British merchants who had been hurt by the boycotts, Parliament **REPEALED** the Stamp Act. But on the same day, they issued the **DECLARATORY ACT**, which basically reasserted Parliament's power to tax as it pleased.

BOYCOTT
a protest in which people don't purchase controversial items



REPEAL
to undo a law



NO TAXATION WITHOUT REPRESENTATION!



SAMUEL ADAMS and PATRICK HENRY

Boston businessman **SAMUEL ADAMS** agreed with Otis. He summed up Otis's position at a Boston town meeting in 1764 as "**NO TAXATION WITHOUT REPRESENTATION**." It became a rallying cry. Adams was a cofounder of a secret society called the **SONS OF LIBERTY**, which organized boycotts and protests, some of them violent. Women formed the **DAUGHTERS OF LIBERTY**, urging Americans to use homemade (rather than imported) clothes and household goods. This was some of the first political involvement by women in America.

PATRICK HENRY was a lawyer and member of the House of Burgesses. In 1765, he raised the cry of "No Taxation Without Representation" in Virginia and inspired the burgesses to protest the Stamp Act. Some people believed that these protests were headed toward

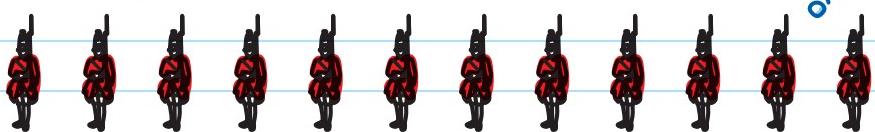
TREASON. Henry said, "If this be treason, make the most of it," and implied overthrowing the king.

TREASON
a crime against a government to which one should be loyal

The TOWNSHEND ACTS

Parliament still wanted to raise more money to pay for British troops in America and the expenses of the French and Indian War. In 1767, it passed the **TOWNSHEND ACTS**,

which taxed imports, including tea. Colonists were infuriated by another tax being passed without their permission. They were also angry about the **WRITS OF ASSISTANCE**, which gave customs officials permission to search for taxable goods without a search warrant. Soon tax collectors were among the most unpopular people in North America, and many went home to England to escape threats on their lives. The royal governor of Massachusetts asked England to send soldiers to maintain peace and enforce the law.



The BOSTON MASSACRE

In 1768, 1,000 Redcoats came to Boston. To the colonists, the Redcoats were not there to help, but were occupying troops. On March 5, 1770, a minor dispute broke out between a soldier and some Bostonians, who threw snowballs at him. More citizens and more soldiers came on the scene and a mob formed. In front of the customhouse, where the taxes were collected, stones were thrown and some citizens dared the soldiers to fire. A few soldiers panicked and did, killing five Boston citizens. The event came to be known as the **BOSTON MASSACRE**. The five victims became heroes of the colonial cause—notably **CRISPUS ATTUCKS**, son of African American and Wampanoag parents. **JOHN ADAMS**, a cousin of Samuel Adams, argued that everyone, including the soldiers, was entitled to a fair trial. He and **JOSIAH QUINCY** defended the

soldiers, who were freed on the grounds of self-defense. The trial demonstrated to the world that the colonists were committed to justice.

MONOPOLY

a situation in which one company has complete control of an entire market

BOSTON TEA PARTY

Parliament repealed all of the Townshend Acts in 1770 except one: the tax on tea. People in Massachusetts were able to purchase smuggled tea. However, in 1773, when the British East India Company faced financial ruin, Parliament passed the new **TEA ACT**, giving the company a **MONOPOLY** on selling tea directly to the colonists and making taxed tea cheaper than smuggled tea. That reinforced taxes on the colonies and hurt local merchants who had made their living from tea.

Many colonists began to drink coffee to replace tea.



At midnight on the night of December 16, 1773, while three East India Company ships were docked in Boston, the Sons of Liberty, disguised as Native Americans, boarded the ships and dumped 342 chests of tea into Boston Harbor. This was dubbed the **BOSTON TEA PARTY**. Because they considered themselves loyal British citizens, the colonists attempted to pay England back for the tea in exchange for a repeal of the Tea Act. However, the King and Parliament had finally had enough and were determined to punish the colony of Massachusetts.

The INTOLERABLE ACTS

King George III acknowledged that England would either need to "master" the colonists or "leave them to themselves." He picked "master." In 1774, Parliament passed the **COERCIVE ACTS**, known in the colonies as the **INTOLERABLE ACTS** because . . .

Boston Harbor was closed until colonists compensated the East India Company for its lost tea.



Most town meetings were banned.

The charter of Massachusetts was revoked.

The Massachusetts legislature was put under the control of the new governor, General Thomas Gage.

In effect, Boston was put under martial law.



Royal officials who committed crimes in the colonies couldn't be tried in colonial courts.

The Quartering Act forced colonists to let British soldiers stay in their homes.



Land the colonists thought belonged to them was given to Quebec (the Quebec Act).



The goal was to exert control in the colonies, but the Intolerable Acts had the **OPPOSITE** effect.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why did England send a standing army to the colonies?
2. Which key American idea was developed by Bostonian James Otis and coined by Samuel Adams?
3. How does a boycott work?
4. How were women involved in political protests in the 1760s?
5. What was the verdict in the case of the Boston Massacre deaths?
6. Who was responsible for the Boston Tea Party?
7. What was the reasoning behind the Coercive Acts?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. To protect the colonists from Native Americans
2. "No taxation without representation."
3. Consumers stop buying or using a product in order to encourage those who sell it to make a change.
4. They encouraged Americans to use homemade (not imported) goods.
5. The soldiers were found not guilty.
6. The Sons of Liberty
7. They were intended to help England maintain control over the colonies.

COERCIVE ACTS?
MORE LIKE...
INTOLERABLE!





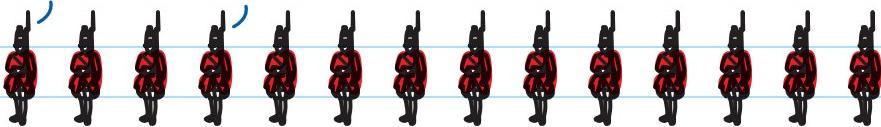
Chapter 10



The BRITISH ARE COMING!

OOH, IS IT THE BEATLES?

I BELIEVE THEY MEAN US, SIR.



The FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS

Seeing the Coercive Acts as truly intolerable, the colonies sent representatives to meet in

Philadelphia in September of 1774

to figure out how to respond. This was the **FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS**.

Debate was about how to best oppose British policy or negotiate with Parliament.

"CONGRESS" today is the legislative branch of the U.S. government. But back then, "congress" was just a fancy word for a meeting. It was the first time delegates from all over the colonies got together.

Georgia was the only colony that didn't send representatives to the First Continental Congress. Later, Georgia agreed with its decisions.

Patrick Henry—who told the Second Virginia Convention in 1775,



—argued on the side of war.

Congress decided to put on a different kind of pressure. They escalated the boycotts. They sent a petition, the **VIRGINIA DECLARATION OF RIGHTS**, to King George, informing him of the rights to "life, liberty, and property" they deserved as Englishmen. And they endorsed the **SUFFOLK RESOLVES** by the leaders of Suffolk County, Massachusetts, calling on colonists to form militias and declaring the Intolerable Acts null and void. The delegates were hoping for the best and preparing for the worst.

The SONS of LIBERTY STRIKE AGAIN

Instead of repealing the Intolerable Acts, King George III sent more troops to Boston. So many people were spying for both sides that it wasn't long before General Gage, governor of Massachusetts, learned that the colonial militia was storing an arsenal of weapons in Concord, just outside Boston. In April of 1775, he ordered his men to head there to destroy it and to arrest Samuel Adams and John Hancock (who also helped found the Sons of Liberty) in nearby Lexington.

On April 18, 1775, a Sons of Liberty spy came across a British regiment preparing to march. He ran to tell **PAUL REVERE** and

William Dawes, also members of the Sons of Liberty. Revere asked a man named Robert Newman to keep watch from the steeple in the Old North Church in Boston. Newman was told to light one lantern if the British troops were coming by land, and two if by sea.

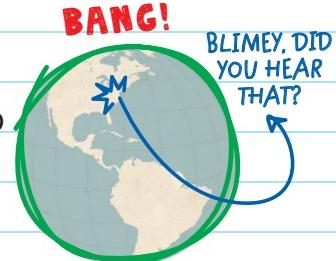


When they saw two lanterns, Dawes took an overland route and Revere rowed across the harbor and took a **MIDNIGHT RIDE** through Charleston and on to Lexington and Concord. As he rode, he shouted, "The regulars are coming out," secret code words to warn the colonists that the British were coming.

LEXINGTON and CONCORD

The local militia, called **MINUTEMEN** (they could be READY IN A MINUTE), heard Revere and grabbed their weapons. When the 700 Redcoats reached Lexington around dawn, about 70 minutemen were waiting. Both sides were ordered not to fire unless fired upon, and to this day no one knows who shot first, but it was "**THE SHOT HEARD ROUND THE WORLD**" starting the **BATTLE OF LEXINGTON AND CONCORD**.

The British quickly defeated the outnumbered minutemen, killing eight of them, and marched on to Concord.



As the British were leaving Concord, they were surprised by more minutemen at the North Bridge. The colonists killed almost 200 Redcoats, using the bright red jackets as targets. The British retreated to Boston, and both sides pondered their next move.

The SECOND CONTINENTAL CONGRESS

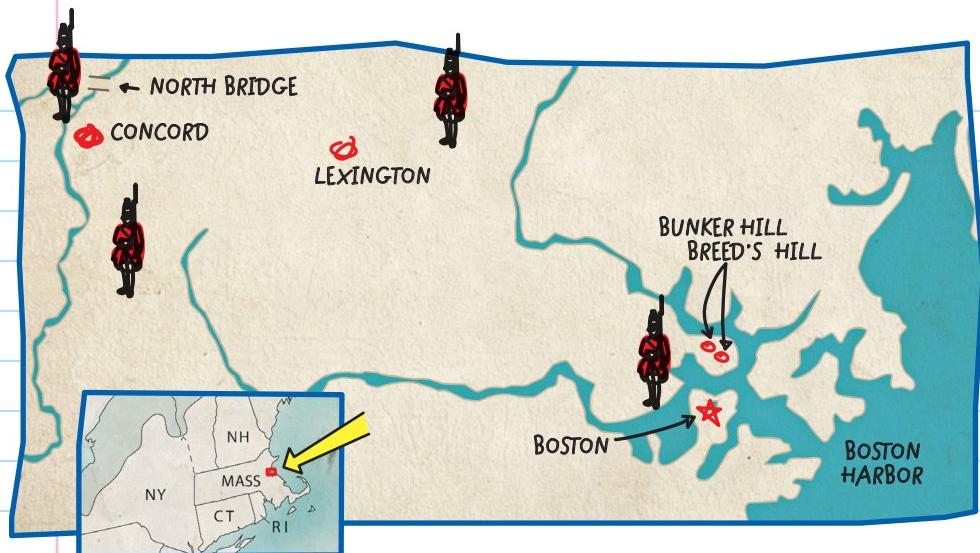
Since King George III continued to ignore the Declaration of Rights, the colonial leaders from all 13 colonies met on May 10, 1775, in a **SECOND CONTINENTAL CONGRESS**. They began to set up their own post office, make treaties with Native Americans, and serve as an impromptu governing body. They formed the **CONTINENTAL ARMY** with the Virginian George Washington as its commander. The colonial leaders, who were mostly from Massachusetts, chose a Virginian as commander to make the resistance appealing to Southerners.

The BATTLE of BUNKER HILL

COLONEL WILLIAM PRESCOTT set up the Massachusetts militias on **BUNKER HILL** and **BREED'S HILL**, across the harbor from Boston. On June 17, 1775, over two thousand Redcoats

Colonists who supported independence were called **PATRIOTS**, while those who remained loyal to Britain were called **LOYALISTS**. Many Loyalists fled the colonies, often heading to Canada.

Initially most Native Americans didn't take sides in the Revolutionary War, but the majority of those who fought supported the British. The British convinced many tribes to fight against colonials settling in frontier regions.



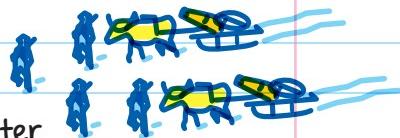
marched up the hill. According to legend, the militias were short on ammunition, so Prescott ordered them not to fire at the Redcoats until they could see "the whites of their eyes." Twice, the militias drove back the powerful British army. Although the British eventually forced them off Bunker Hill, the inexperienced colonial armies proved that they wouldn't be easily defeated.

The OLIVE BRANCH PETITION

On July 5, the Second Continental Congress sent King George III one last shot at peace, the **OLIVE BRANCH PETITION**. They still wanted to be part of England if the king would protect their rights. They urged the king to negotiate on disputed issues with recognition that the colonies should rule themselves on most matters. King George III rejected the petition and instead hired 30,000 German "Hessian" (or mercenary) troops to fight with the British.

TAKING BACK BOSTON

Washington took control of militias and began creating the Continental army to take back Boston. He came up with a plan to retrieve the weapons from **FORT TICONDEROGA**, which the Vermont militia (the **GREEN MOUNTAIN BOYS**, led by **ETHAN ALLEN**) and the Connecticut militia (led by **BENEDICT ARNOLD**, most famous for turning traitor and selling information to the British army) had captured from the British earlier. Colonel **HENRY KNOX** and his troops hauled heavy cannons from the fort over 300 miles by foot in the middle of winter.

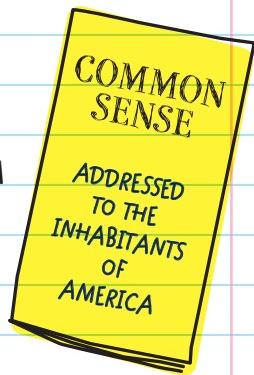


The Redcoats, under the command of **SIR WILLIAM HOWE**, saw that defeat in Boston was inevitable. On March 17, 1776, the British retreated, fleeing north to Canada.

COMMON SENSE

In January 1776, a recent immigrant from England named **THOMAS PAINE** wrote an anonymous pamphlet arguing for democracy and independence titled **COMMON SENSE**. Paine blamed King George III personally—not just Parliament.

Pretty radical for a time when most countries were ruled by kings (who claimed to have God on their side), **COMMON SENSE** sold hundreds of thousands of copies throughout the colonies and convinced many to support independence.



The DECLARATION of INDEPENDENCE

JUNE 7, 1776:

Richard Henry Lee of Virginia introduced a **RESOLUTION** in the Second Continental Congress calling the colonies free and independent states. Congress created a committee that included Benjamin Franklin, John Adams, and Thomas Jefferson, to draft a Declaration of Independence. Jefferson wrote it within two weeks, drawing on the ideas of **JOHN LOCKE**. It was meant to explain the **LEE RESOLUTION**.

The Second Continental Congress came up with the national motto E PLURIBUS UNUM, meaning “out of many, one” in Latin.

RESOLUTION
a formal expression of an opinion

JULY 2, 1776:

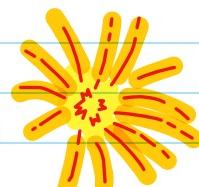
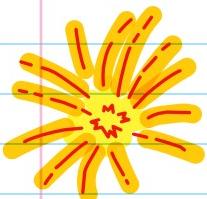
Congress unanimously passed Lee's resolution. John Adams figured this date would become a national holiday.

JOHN LOCKE wrote that all individuals have the right to “life, liberty, and property.” “Property” became “the pursuit of happiness” in one of the most famous lines of the Declaration of Independence.

JULY 4, 1776:

The delegates adopted the Declaration of Independence. The United States of America was born . . . provided the colonists won the war.

... and now we celebrate July 4th every year as Independence Day!

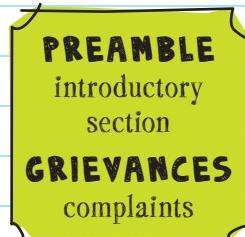


The DECLARATION

ACTUAL WORDS

The Declaration of Independence has four parts:

1. **PREAMBLE** (introduction)
2. Declaration of Natural Rights
3. List of **GRIEVANCES** Against the King
4. Resolution of Independence by the United States



From the Preamble

“When in the Course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands . . . they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.”

People must state their reasons for a revolution.

From the Declaration of Natural Rights

“We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty, and the pursuit of Happiness....”

Some rights come from the fact of just being human and can't be taken away by a king. When they said “equal,” the Founding Fathers didn't initially include Native Americans, slaves, or women.

of INDEPENDENCE

From the List of Grievances

THE COLONIES'
JUSTIFICATION FOR
SEPARATION

"The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute **TYRANNY** over these States."

TYRANNY
rule by an often harsh
absolute power

The grievances, or complaints, the colonists had against King George III, followed by a lot of examples

RESTATES THE
LEE RESOLUTION

From the Resolution of Independence

"We, therefore, the Representatives of the United States of America, in General Congress... do, in the Name, and by Authority of the good People of these Colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of Right ought to be Free and Independent States..."

"We're independent!"

The DECLARATION of INDEPENDENCE in 40 WORDS



Government is a social contract. If the ruler doesn't protect the people and their natural rights, the contract is broken and the people can overthrow him. King George III broke the contract, so now the U.S. is its own nation.

PUT YOUR JOHN HANCOCK RIGHT HERE

John Hancock, president of the Congress, was the first to sign the Declaration of Independence. His signature was so large and stylish that people sometimes still call a signature a "John Hancock."



TOO MUCH?



actual size



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What did the First Continental Congress debate about?
2. What was declared in the Declaration of Rights?
3. How did Paul Revere know which way the British were coming from?
4. What were the colonial militiamen nicknamed?
5. Who fired first at the Battle of Lexington?
6. What was the Olive Branch Petition?
7. What was the importance of the pamphlet COMMON SENSE?



CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. They debated about how to best oppose British policy or negotiate with Parliament.
2. That the colonies didn't want independence—they just wanted their rights
3. Robert Newman lit two lanterns in the steeple of the Old North Church in Boston to indicate that the British were coming by sea.
4. The Minutemen
5. Nobody knows!
6. It was the last attempt by the Continental Congress to make peace with King George III and remain part of England.
7. Many people were convinced by Thomas Paine's pamphlet that independence was a good idea.



Unite

American Revolution and the Early Republic

1776-1791

Once the Declaration of Independence was signed, the United States was born, but Americans still had work ahead. First, they needed to win a war against one of the best armies and the most powerful navy in the world. Next, they had to invent a whole new form of government.



Chapter 11



The AMERICAN REVOLUTION

TIMELINE to (REAL) INDEPENDENCE

Americans declared independence, but they weren't independent yet.

Washington was put in charge of the Continental army in 1775, but it was less an army than a collection of part-time volunteer militias only contracted to fight for one year. The Continental Congress suggested a **DRAFT**, but not everyone participated. The wealthy paid slaves, apprentices, or others to serve in their place.

DRAFT
a mandatory call of duty
to serve in an army

The British—masters of a well-trained, professional army and rulers of a great empire—were confident of victory.

The BATTLE of LONG ISLAND

Summer of 1776: Over 30,000 British soldiers under

GENERAL WILLIAM HOWE arrived in New York City.

Washington's troops were outnumbered.

August 1776: In the **BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND**, the Patriots were driven out of New York and then New Jersey, and forced to take refuge in Pennsylvania across the Delaware River.

The British were so sure the war would be over soon that they left the defense of New Jersey up to the **HESSIANS**, a group of German mercenaries, while the British army spent the winter in comfort in New York.



Thomas Paine, the author of *Common Sense*, also wrote a series of pamphlets called **AMERICAN CRISIS**. The first one, published in 1776, begins with the line, "These are the times that try men's souls."

WASHINGTON CROSSES the DELAWARE

Christmas Day 1776: During a terrible storm,

Washington and thousands of his troops secretly rowed across the Delaware River while the Hessians were celebrating Christmas. The next morning, while the

Hessians were camped out at Trenton and still sleeping, the Continental army attacked and won an important victory.



January 2, 1777: British general **CHARLES CORNWALLIS**, in charge of the British troops, tried to stop the Continental army, but Washington was a step ahead. His troops lit campfires near Princeton to make it look like they were resting. Instead, they followed the British troops and made another surprise attack.

The BATTLE of SARATOGA

Spring of 1777: The British plan was to capture the city of Albany and take control of the Hudson River to cut off New England from the other colonies. General William Howe would move north up the Hudson. **GENERAL JOHN BURGOYNE** would head south from Canada and recapture Fort Ticonderoga on the way. **LIEUTENANT COLONEL BARRY ST. LEGER** would travel down the Mohawk Valley. All three would meet in Albany. That was the theory, anyway.

DON'T HATE HIM BECAUSE HE'S BEAUTIFUL

GENERAL BURGOYNE was affectionately called "Gentleman Johnny Burgoyne" by his troops for his kindness. And maybe also for his good looks and fashion sense.



Howe decided it'd be better to capture Philadelphia. He forced the Continental Congress to flee the city. Burgoyne recaptured Ticonderoga, but Gentleman Johnny didn't know Howe wasn't on his way up the Hudson and was trapped in the woods by American militias. St. Leger was forced back en route to the Mohawk Valley by American General Benedict Arnold.

TRAITOR! SPY! NOT-GOOD GUY!

Burgoyne eventually made it to Saratoga, New York, where he was met by the American forces of **GENERAL HORATIO GATES**. The British had no reinforcements and no escape route. On October 17, they surrendered, and the **BATTLE OF SARATOGA** became the first major American victory of the Revolutionary War.

WINTER at VALLEY FORGE

Winter of 1777: The Continental army suffered through one of the worst winters on record. While the British were comfy in Philadelphia, the Continental army was camped 20 miles west at **VALLEY FORGE**. The 12,000 troops had almost no food, clothing, or supplies. About a quarter of them died before spring. Those who survived had spent the winter training under Prussian Officer Baron von Steuben.

They became a small but very skilled new Continental army.

The victory also led the French to get involved in the revolution. The French and British were bitter enemies, so the French began supporting the Patriots when they saw that the Americans could win and wouldn't be satisfied with anything less than independence.

HIRED BY CONGRESS
FOR HIS MILITARY
EXPERTISE

JOHN PAUL JONES

Most PRIVATEERS attacked British naval bases in the Caribbean.

JOHN PAUL JONES, an immigrant who had been a fugitive in Scotland, had become a war hero in 1779 after his ship, the *BONHOMME RICHARD*, and a British warship, *SERAPIS*, fought near the British coast. When asked to surrender, Jones reportedly replied, "I have not yet begun to fight!" *Serapis* surrendered first.

HELP from OVERSEAS

1778: The French had been secretly providing supplies and their navy to the Patriots. The victory at Saratoga, plus the charm of Benjamin Franklin as American diplomat in France, convinced the French to support the U.S. publicly. In 1778, King Louis XVI decided that France would officially become an ally and declare war on Great Britain.

PRIVATEER

a privately owned ship commissioned by the government to fight the enemy; in exchange, the ship could keep whatever they found on enemy ships.

1779: Spain joined the war against England. Louisiana Governor **BERNARDO DE GÁLVEZ** helped Spain take Natchez, Baton Rouge, and other cities from the British. Holland also helped the Patriots with loans and funding.

The **MARQUIS DE LAFAYETTE**, a young French nobleman, became a trusted aide to George Washington. Lafayette was such a strong believer in the Revolutionary War that he paid the troops under his command out of his own pocket!



WAR on the WESTERN FRONT

The British army had to spread out to cover a lot of land.

West of the Appalachian Mountains, the British gained

Native American allies like Mohawk chief JOSEPH BRANT.

This area had been made more accessible thanks in part to

DANIEL BOONE, who had **BLAZED** the WILDERNESS ROAD

in 1775. GEORGE ROGERS CLARK, a lieutenant colonel in the

Virginia militia, captured the British outposts and FORT

SACKVILLE in modern-day Indiana.

BLAZED

cut a trail—as in, he was a trailblazer!



WILDERNESS ROAD

WAR in the SOUTH

1778-1780: The British offered freedom to the slaves of Patriots if they would run away and join the British troops. In December of 1778, British commander **HENRY CLINTON** captured Savannah, Georgia (and eventually the entire state of Georgia). In May of 1780, Clinton also gained control of Charleston, South Carolina, in a battle that destroyed most of the American army in the South. **GENERAL CORNWALLIS** was put in charge of maintaining a British stronghold in the South.

Congress appointed **GENERAL HORATIO GATES**, who had led troops to victory in Saratoga, to create a new Southern army. Unfortunately, they were quickly defeated by Cornwallis.

1781: Congress replaced Gates with a new Southern general, **NATHANAEL GREENE**. Greene's army (under Patriot Daniel Morgan) defeated the British at the battle at Cowpens, South Carolina. It was the first time that militia units were deployed in battle.

GUERRILLAS and the SWAMP FOX

Instead of using the traditional European style of lining up for combat, Southern Patriots used their knowledge of the terrain by attacking supply and communication centers in small groups and escaping before they could be caught.

It was a new kind of warfare: **GUERRILLA WARFARE**. The most famous guerrilla of the South was **FRANCIS MARION**, leader of **MARION'S BRIGADE**. He was so difficult to catch that the British called him the "**SWAMP FOX**." Eventually, the British fled the Carolinas.

GUERRILLA WARFARE
system of warfare in which the soldiers fight using techniques such as surprise, ambush, and disruption



The BATTLE of YORKTOWN

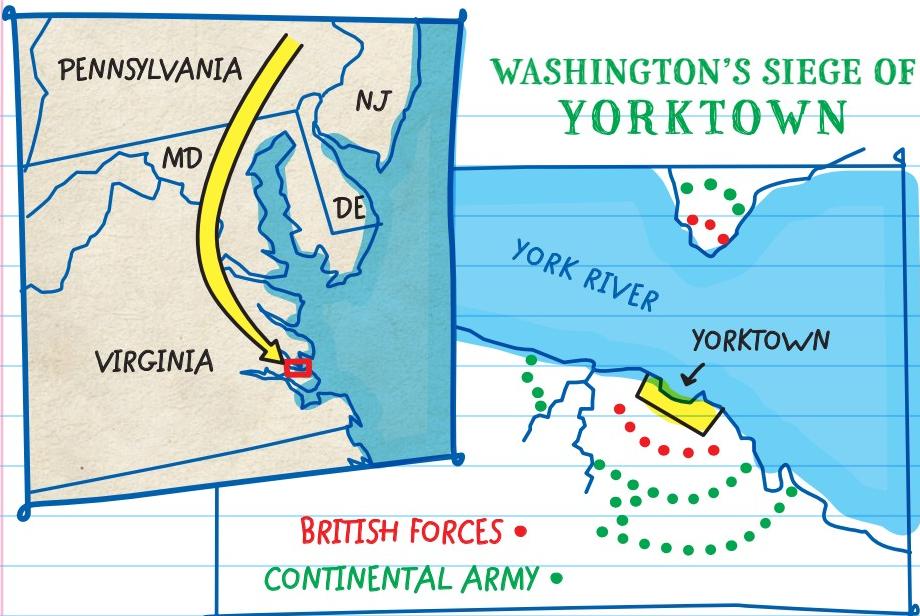
Early 1781: Cornwallis moved his troops to **YORKTOWN**, Virginia, on the banks of the York River. Supplies and money were running low and he needed a port to resupply his troops. Philadelphia and New York were controlled by the British. It was discovered that Benedict Arnold had been plotting to turn over the critical military fort, West Point, and conspiring to capture George Washington. Morale was low.

Benedict Arnold wasn't the only spy around.

NATHAN HALE, a young soldier for the Continental army, volunteered to go behind enemy lines and report on British troop activities during the Battle of Long Island. When he was caught and sentenced to hang in

1776, Hale's famous last words were this:

"I ONLY REGRET THAT I HAVE BUT ONE LIFE
TO LOSE FOR MY COUNTRY."



When Washington learned that Cornwallis had moved into Yorktown, he saw an opportunity. After a fast and top-secret march south, the Continental army (with the help of 7,000 French troops under Lieutenant General Rochambeau) surrounded the city of Yorktown. French ships had already blocked Chesapeake Bay, making it impossible for Cornwallis to escape or get reinforcements.

On October 19, 1781, after weeks of fighting, Cornwallis surrendered.

There were several small battles left to fight, but the war was over. Benjamin Franklin, John Jay, and John Adams began negotiations with the British in Paris to end the conflict. The last British troops left New York Harbor. Washington left for his home in Mount Vernon, Virginia.

The TREATY of PARIS (Again)

It took two years to finish negotiating the 1783 TREATY OF PARIS, but the terms were favorable for the U.S. On September 3, 1783, Britain officially agreed that:

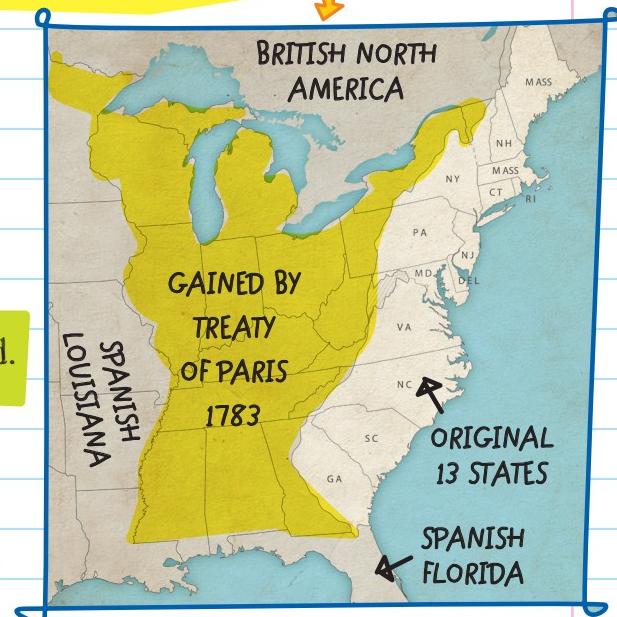
The U.S. was a free and independent nation.

Though it had the potential to expand, its boundaries were now the Mississippi River, the southern border of Canada, and the northern border of Spanish Florida.

Americans could fish the waters of British Canada.

Debts would be repaid.

Captured slaves would be returned.



The Congress agreed to RECOMMEND that property taken from Loyalists be returned. However, many Loyalists fled to New Brunswick and Nova Scotia. Also, Spain got Florida back.

The 1763 TREATY OF PARIS ended the Seven Years' War.
The 1783 TREATY OF PARIS ended the Revolutionary War.
A completely different TREATY OF PARIS, in 1898,
ended the Spanish-American War.

HOW the WAR WAS WON

So if the British army was better trained and better supplied,
how did the Patriots win?

HOME-FIELD ADVANTAGE

KNOWLEDGE OF THE TERRAIN

MOTIVATION FOR THE CAUSE

CIVILIAN SUPPORT

GREAT LEADERSHIP

HELP FROM FRANCE AND SPAIN

WOMEN IN THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR

With the men away, women took more responsibility for the home front. They also supported the cause of independence: They sewed clothes and made supplies for the army, or became nurses. A few even disguised themselves as men to fight or became spies. One famous example, Mary Ludwig Hays McCauley, was nicknamed **MOLLY PITCHER** because she brought pitchers of water to the soldiers. Although many historians doubt Molly Pitcher existed, her name symbolizes the many women of the Revolutionary War.

AFRICAN AMERICANS IN THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR

At first, African Americans weren't allowed to fight in the Continental army, mainly because the Southern states didn't want to give weapons to slaves. After the British recruited slaves, attitudes changed. A lot of free African Americans served in the army; for example, the **FIRST RHODE ISLAND REGIMENT** consisted of 140 African Americans out of 225 soldiers. By the end of the war, every state except South Carolina included African Americans in their troops.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How did people get out of the draft for the Revolutionary War?
2. How long were most American troops contracted to fight at the time of the Revolutionary War?
3. What was the significance of the Battle of Saratoga?
4. What is a privateer?
5. Why was Francis Marion called the "Swamp Fox"?
6. What were the terms of the 1783 Treaty of Paris?
7. How did women participate in the American Revolution?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. They paid slaves or apprentices to go instead.
2. One year
3. It was the first major American victory and led to French intervention.
4. A privately owned ship asked by the government to attack the enemy in exchange for whatever they could take
5. He used guerrilla tactics and was hard to catch.
6. American independence and borders were determined.
Debts were to be repaid and slaves returned. Americans could fish in British Canada, too.
7. Women made supplies for the army and became nurses.
A few also fought, helped soldiers, or became spies.





Chapter 12



A NEW GOVERNMENT

Nobody wanted a new tyranny, but they needed a national government.

The ARTICLES of CONFEDERATION

Congress appointed a committee to form a national government.

SOVEREIGNTY
authority or power

A new national constitution was drafted and called the **ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION**. It established a **CONFEDERATION CONGRESS**, a national legislature responsible for borrowing and creating money, settling arguments between states, dealing with Native Americans, and making treaties. The Congress could ask the states to provide money and soldiers. States could refuse, because they maintained their **SOVEREIGNTY**. Furthermore, each state had one vote regardless of size or population, so they were all equal.

RATIFY

to approve or confirm

The Continental Congress approved the Articles of Confederation on November 15, 1777, but the Articles still needed to be **RATIFIED**, or confirmed, by the states. Maryland was the last, and in March 1781, the Articles of Confederation became the constitution of a new nation.

The NORTHWEST TERRITORY

It was important for Congress to take control of the western lands, because the U.S. was in debt. It hadn't paid its soldiers yet and needed to sell land to make money.

The **LAND ORDINANCE OF 1785** split land into **TOWNSHIPS** that could be sold off. The **NORTHWEST ORDINANCE OF 1787** made these plots of land (parts of present-day Illinois, Indiana, Michigan, Ohio, Minnesota, and Wisconsin) the **NORTHWEST TERRITORY**.



Territories within the Northwest Territory could apply to become states once they reached a population of 60,000 people and drafted a state constitution. Slavery was banned in them. Land there was cheap; the population quickly increased.

TERRITORY

in this context, a subdivision of land that is not a state but is governed by the U.S.

DIPLOMATIC and ECONOMIC PROBLEMS

The Articles of Confederation didn't give the government much power. It couldn't **LEVY** taxes to cover the war debt or build a unified army. Britain realized this. They refused to follow through on the terms of the Treaty of Paris and wouldn't allow American ships into its ports.

Spain closed the lower Mississippi to U.S. shipping and trade with foreign lands. Other European countries placed high

TARIFFS on American goods. The war had seriously damaged harvests, particularly in the South, so these states had few crops to trade.

LEVY

impose, raise

TARIFF

a charge or fee imposed by the government on imports or exports

Another problem was **INFLATION**. The paper money printed by the Continental Congress during the Revolutionary War had little value, because the states didn't have gold or silver to back it up. The states lowered the

INFLATION

an economic condition characterized by high prices and a decrease in the value of money

value of paper currency by printing their own bills. The combination of inflation and

TRADE DEFICITS led to a **DEPRESSION**.

TRADE DEFICIT

when more goods are coming into the country than going out of it

DEPRESSION

an economic condition characterized by low employment and little economic activity

SHAYS' REBELLION

To pay its war debts, the state of Massachusetts decided to raise taxes on land. Farmers tended to own a lot of land but earn little money, and those who couldn't pay were forced to give up their land or go to jail.

In August of 1786, a farmer and former captain of the Continental army named

DANIEL SHAYS began **SHAYS' REBELLION**.

He and a group of farmers closed down the state courts and marched on the federal **ARSENAL**. The Massachusetts militia finally stopped him and his men. Although Massachusetts had requested federal assistance, it did not receive any, because Congress didn't have the authority to help. If ordinary farmers could launch a revolt, it was clear that the national government needed more power.

ARSENAL

a place where weapons are stored

The CONSTITUTIONAL CONVENTION

In May 1787, delegates met at a **CONSTITUTIONAL CONVENTION** in Philadelphia. After electing George

Washington as the president of the convention, they discussed whether to **AMEND** or ditch the Articles of Confederation.

AMEND

to modify or change, usually by a formal procedure

DON'T MIX UP THESE MEETINGS:

THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS

→ signed the Declaration of Independence

THE CONFEDERATION CONGRESS

→ created by the Articles of Confederation

THE CONSTITUTIONAL CONVENTION

→ met to fix the Articles of Confederation and ended up creating a whole new Constitution

THE FOUNDING FATHERS OF THE UNITED STATES

The men who attended the Constitutional Convention, signed the Declaration of Independence, framed the Constitution, and/or helped with the American Revolution are called the **FOUNDING FATHERS OF THE UNITED STATES**. No women or minorities were invited to sign documents or attend conventions.

The GREAT COMPROMISE

Congress couldn't agree on how states should be represented: a **BICAMERAL** legislature (two houses with votes per state based on the population—the **VIRGINIA PLAN**) or a **UNICAMERAL** legislature (one house with equal votes for each state—the **NEW JERSEY PLAN**). The Virginia plan appealed to large states that would have many representatives; smaller states like New Jersey wanted state size not to matter in terms of how much representation you got.

BICAMERAL

consisting of two chambers as a legislative body

UNICAMERAL

consisting of a single chamber as a legislative body

Roger Sherman of Connecticut proposed the **CONNECTICUT COMPROMISE** (the **GREAT COMPROMISE**), which created the bicameral federal legislature we know today: a **SENATE** with two votes per state and a **HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES** with representation proportional to each state's population.

VIRGINIA PLAN

BICAMERAL: TWO HOUSES WITH VOTES PER STATE BASED ON POPULATION

NEW JERSEY PLAN

UNICAMERAL: ONE HOUSE WITH EQUAL VOTES PER STATE

CONNECTICUT COMPROMISE

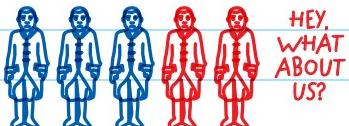
SENATE: TWO VOTES PER STATE

HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES:

REPRESENTATION BASED ON STATE POPULATION

RECOGNIZING SLAVES... OR NOT

Southern states, which had large slave populations, preferred a system in which slaves counted for representation by size of population—but not taxation. Northern states, which had few slaves, argued that if slaves were considered property, they should count for taxation but NOT representation. The delegates agreed that three-fifths of the slave population would count for both things—a clause called the **THREE-FIFTHS COMPROMISE**.



Allowing slaves in a nation founded on the principles of liberty and equality didn't make sense to some delegates. Many Northern states had already banned slavery and wanted to extend that to all the states. Southern states whose wealth depended on slaves disagreed. Georgia and South Carolina threatened to leave the Union if their right to own slaves was taken away. The delegates settled on the **SLAVE TRADE COMPROMISE**: Importing slaves could not be restricted or abolished until 1808.



The CONSTITUTION

On September 17, 1787, 39 of the 42 delegates who assembled in Philadelphia signed the Constitution. However, it still needed to be ratified so it could take effect. Those who refused to sign, including George Mason of Virginia, felt that a bill of rights—a formal summary of citizens' freedoms—was necessary.

The CONSTITUTION

The new government still operates today. It is based on the principle of **FEDERALISM**: balancing power between the national government and the state governments in a **DIVISION OF POWER**, and balancing strong central authority with **POPULAR SOVEREIGNTY**.

The three branches of federal government are:



THE LEGISLATIVE BRANCH

the Senate and House of Representatives, where laws are made

THE EXECUTIVE BRANCH

the president and his office, where laws are applied

THE JUDICIAL BRANCH

the courts, where laws are interpreted

A system of **SEPARATION OF POWERS** and **CHECKS AND BALANCES** keeps any one branch from getting too powerful.

The Constitution is the **SUPREME LAW OF THE LAND** and no state can create a law that goes against it.

The Constitution **CAN BE AMENDED** so that it stays flexible and is a “living document.”

FEDERALISM

system of government in which power is shared by the national government and the states

POPULAR SOVEREIGNTY

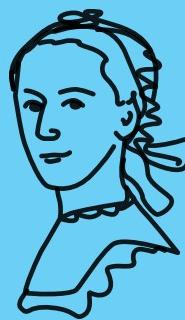
authority of the people

Just as the Declaration of Independence was inspired by John Locke, the Constitution was influenced and based on Enlightenment philosophy, the Magna Carta, the English Bill of Rights, and Thomas Jefferson's Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom.

FEDERALISTS and ANTIFEDERALISTS

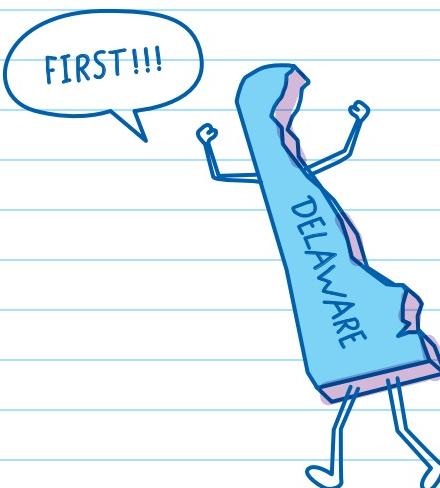
Those who were in favor of ratifying the Constitution called themselves **FEDERALISTS**. The Federalists promoted their views in a series of essays called the **FEDERALIST PAPERS**. Written by Alexander Hamilton, James Madison, and John Jay, but published under a pseudonym of "Publius," the Federalist Papers argued that the Constitution would protect people from tyranny. The **ANTIFEDERALISTS** felt that the Constitution gave too much power to the federal government.

In 1788, the Antifederalists published a pamphlet called "Observations on the New Constitution." It was written by a woman, **MERCY OTIS WARREN**, the sister of James Otis, the Boston lawyer who argued for no taxation without representation. Warren became a well-respected historian, playwright, and poet.



RATIFICATION of the CONSTITUTION

The Constitution required only nine states to ratify it for it to go into effect. Delaware was the first state to ratify, in December 1787, and when New Hampshire became the ninth in June 1788, the new government had been approved. Virginia and New York, two of the largest and most influential states, had not yet agreed to it. James Madison argued that the Constitution had to be approved as written; no changes could be permitted because it would mean each state was signing a different document. Virginia ratified it, and New York soon followed. Two years later, in May 1790, Rhode Island became the last state to ratify. The **BILL OF RIGHTS**, the first 10 amendments to the Constitution, was ratified in December of 1791.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What were the powers of the Confederation Congress?
2. According to the Northwest Ordinance, how could a territory become a state?
3. What was the state of the American economy in the 1780s?
4. Why did Daniel Shays lead a rebellion in Massachusetts?
5. What was the Three-Fifths Compromise?
6. What are the three branches of government?
7. What was the difference between the Federalists and the Antifederalists?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The Congress could borrow and create money, make treaties, settle disputes between states, and manage Native Americans.
2. Once it had 60,000 people and a draft of a constitution, it could apply for statehood.
3. Trade was decreasing and there was a lot of inflation. Congress could not raise revenue.
4. Because the state of Massachusetts was taking farmers' land if they could not pay their taxes
5. A clause that stated three-fifths of a slave population would count for both taxes and representation
6. Executive, legislative, and judicial
7. Federalists supported ratifying the Constitution and Antifederalists didn't, believing the new constitution would give too much power to the federal government.



The CONCISE CONSTITUTION



The Constitution is divided into seven **ARTICLES**, each of which includes **SECTIONS**. The Constitution also includes a **BILL OF RIGHTS**, as well as more **AMENDMENTS** added since it was originally framed.

You should read the whole thing to get all the details. Considering how **COMPLICATED** government is, the Constitution is really **SHORT**.

The PREAMBLE

The Preamble sets out the reasons for a constitution. It states that the people are establishing the new government.

The whole thing:

"**WE THE PEOPLE** of the United States, in Order to form a more perfect Union, establish Justice, insure domestic Tranquility, provide for the common defense, promote the general Welfare, and secure the Blessings of Liberty to ourselves and our **POSTERITY**, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America."

POSTERITY

future generations

The ARTICLES

ARTICLE I describes the

LEGISLATIVE BRANCH. The Legislature of the U.S. is bicameral: the House of Representatives and the Senate. The vice president of the U.S. is the president of the Senate, but doesn't vote except in a tie. If a majority of the Congress is present, a **QUORUM** is reached, but if not, they can **ADJOURN**. Each **BILL** must be signed by the president before becoming law. If the president **VETOES** the bill, it could still become law if two-thirds of the Congress **OVERRIDES** the veto. Congress has the right to make any laws "necessary and proper" to carry out its duties.

QUORUM

the required number of people needed to legally do business

ADJOURN

to end or postpone the rest of a meeting

BILL

a draft of a law

VETO

to cancel the actions of another branch of government

Article I, Section 8:18: The "necessary and proper" clause is also known as the "elastic clause" because it gives Congress the ability to stretch its powers.

OVERRIDE

to set aside or overturn

Before the Constitution, government positions were unpaid, and this favored wealthy people who could afford to work for nothing. The Constitution says that congressmen are paid a salary out of the treasury, which is important, because when that wasn't the case, government attracted only wealthy people.

SECTION 8: The powers of Congress are: Levying taxes and tariffs as long as they are uniform throughout the states, paying debts, borrowing money, regulating commerce with other countries/between states/with Native Americans, deciding how people become citizens, minting money and regulating it, punishing counterfeiters, making a post office, regulating copyrights, establishing federal courts inferior to the Supreme Court, punishing crimes against international law, declaring war, raising an army or navy and paying them, summoning militias, regulating law in the District of Columbia, and making any other laws "necessary and proper" to do all of that.

SECTION 9: But: No discussing slavery until 1808, no overriding the **WRIT OF HABEAS CORPUS** (can only arrest a person for a specific cause) except in wartime suspension, no passing a **BILL OF ATTAINDER** (a law targeting one person or group without a trial), no passing an **EX POST FACTO** law (a law that applies to people who broke it before it was written), no levying export taxes, no favoring one state in any way, no levying direct taxes on people (aka **CAPITATION**, no set amount that everyone has to pay in taxes, only taxes determined by income or money spent), no taking money from the treasury without a specific budget being passed as law, and no creating a titled aristocracy.

ARTICLE II describes the **EXECUTIVE BRANCH**: the president and his duties, his advisors, and the vice president. The president, like the vice president, serves a four-year term. He receives a salary and takes an oath to protect the Constitution. The powers of the president include serving as **COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF** of the armed forces; **PARDONING** criminals; nominating ambassadors, judges, and officers; and making treaties, provided that two-thirds of the Senate approves. The president, vice president, and other civil officers may be **IMPEACHED** for treason, bribery, or other misdemeanors and "high crimes."

PARDON

to release or excuse a person from being punished for an offense

IMPEACH

to bring an accusation against a government official

ARTICLE III describes the **JUDICIARY BRANCH**,

or the courts, and it establishes a Supreme Court. All judges appointed under Article III (such as judges on the Supreme Court, the federal courts of appeals, and district courts) can hold their jobs for life. In all cases involving ambassadors or entire states, the Supreme Court has **ORIGINAL JURISDICTION**, meaning it's the first court to hear the case.

JURISDICTION

the authority to administer justice



There is a reason judges hold their jobs for life—it's to prevent them from having to run for reelection or be influenced by politics.

ARTICLE IV defines the relationship between the states and says that the federal government guarantees each state a "**REPUBLICAN FORM OF GOVERNMENT**".

In the *FEDERALIST PAPERS*, James Madison described a republican form of government as a representative democracy as opposed to a direct democracy. That is, people have control via representatives. Also, a monarch cannot rule the government. The Constitution created a republic—NOT a democracy.



ARTICLE V explains how **AMENDMENTS** to the Constitution can be proposed and passed.

An amendment requires two-thirds of both the House and Senate and three-fourths of the state legislatures for approval. However, legislators can bypass Congress completely and pass an amendment if two-thirds of the state legislatures approve a call for a convention, which would convene to draft the amendment. Then, the amendment would need three-fourths of the states' approval. This method, however, has never been used.

ARTICLE VI states that the Constitution is the **SUPREME LAW OF THE LAND**.

ARTICLE VII confirms that the Constitution is established once nine states of the thirteen ratify it.

The AMENDMENTS

The first ten amendments are known as the **BILL OF RIGHTS**.

Ratified in 1791, they protect individual liberties and limit the powers of the federal government.

1. Individual rights: freedom of religion, freedom of speech, freedom of the press, the right to assemble, and the right to petition the government.
2. The right to bear arms (meaning the right to own and carry weapons).
3. The right not to have soldiers quartered in a person's house without consent of the owner.
4. The right not to have **WARRANTS** issued without probable cause.
5. The right to due process, meaning that nobody can serve as a witness against himself, and capital crimes cannot be charged without a Grand Jury (except in wartime).
6. The right of the accused to have a speedy and public trial by jury, to know what crime they are charged with, to confront witnesses against them, and to be represented by a lawyer.
7. The right not to have a case that was already decided by a jury reexamined in another court.
8. The right not to have to pay excessive bail or receive cruel or unusual punishments.
9. The right to other rights that may not be listed in the Bill of Rights.
10. The right of states to hold powers not specifically assigned to the federal government.

WARRANT

the authorization of an officer to make an arrest, seize property, or make a search

THE BILL OF RIGHTS CAN BE GROUPED LIKE THIS:

AMENDMENT 1 protects individual rights and minorities from majority rule.

AMENDMENTS 2–4 address mistakes made during the Revolutionary War.

AMENDMENTS 5–8 guarantee rights to people charged with crimes.

AMENDMENTS 9–10 maintain the rights of states and citizens.

Following the Bills of Rights, other amendments were made to the Constitution. There are 27 amendments in total.

Remember the
MAIN PRINCIPLES
of the Constitution:

Popular sovereignty
Limited government
Separation of powers
Checks and balances
Federalism
Republicanism
Individual rights

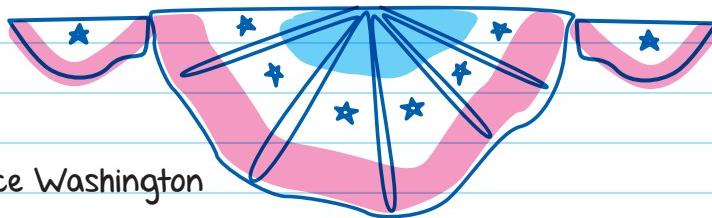


You can memorize these principles and the fact that Rhode Island was the last state to ratify with this mnemonic device:

Please,
Let's
Sign
Constitutions
Faster,
Rhode
Island.

★ Chapter 13 ★

PRESIDENT PRECEDENTS



Since Washington was the first president, everything he (and **FIRST LADY MARTHA WASHINGTON**) did became the start of a tradition, or a **PRECEDENT**.

For example, Washington chose to be called "Mr. President" instead of "Your Highness," "Your Excellency," or "Your High Mightiness" (someone seriously suggested that).

The **FIRST PRESIDENT**

In early 1789, the states that had ratified the Constitution decided that an **ELECTORAL COLLEGE** would meet and elect a president. George Washington was convinced to come out of retirement, and he received

ELECTORAL COLLEGE

a group that represents the people's vote in electing a president

WASHINGTON IS THE ONLY
PRESIDENT TO HAVE EVER WON
ALL OF THE ELECTORAL VOTES.

ALL the electoral votes. According to the rules of the Constitution, the person with the second-highest number of votes was vice president, so John Adams became the first vice president. They were inaugurated on April 30, 1789, in New York City, then the nation's temporary capital.

Each state legislature appointed a certain number of "electors" (based on its number of congressmen) to represent their state and elect a president. The electoral college system has changed a lot since then but is still in use today.

The CABINET

Congress created departments of the Executive Branch: the State Department (to deal with other countries), the War Department (to deal with defense issues), the Treasury (to deal with the economy), the Justice Department (to deal with administration of justice), and the Postal Service. Washington chose these people to head these departments:

Henry Knox (a general from the Revolutionary War): Secretary of War

Thomas Jefferson: Secretary of State

Alexander Hamilton: Secretary of the Treasury

Edmund Randolph: Attorney General

Samuel Osgood: Postmaster General

As a group, these heads of departments were **THE CABINET**. The Cabinet (except the postmaster) began to advise the president, as they do today.

The JUDICIARY ACT of 1789

ARTICLE III of the Constitution had few specifics about a federal court system, so Congress passed the **FEDERAL JUDICIARY ACT OF 1789**. This established federal courts consisting of thirteen **DISTRICT COURTS** and three **CIRCUIT COURTS OF APPEAL**. The states still maintained their own courts, but a federal court could overturn their decisions. The Supreme Court, the final federal court of appeals, would consist of six **JUSTICES** that were nominated by the president. President Washington nominated John Jay as the first **CHIEF JUSTICE** of the Supreme Court.

ALEXANDER HAMILTON and the NATIONAL ECONOMY

The new nation faced a huge war debt, with debts to foreign nations, individual citizens, and soldiers who'd been paid with **BONDS** rather than cash. Alexander Hamilton proposed a three-prong solution in 1790:

The U.S. would pay off all debts, including debts owed by states.

Revenue would be generated by raising tariffs, which should also encourage people to buy American-made goods.

A NATIONAL BANK would be established, owned jointly by the government and private investors, for the government to store money and make loans.

A national mint would print paper money.

ESTABLISHED THE JUDICIARY BRANCH

Hamilton ran into opposition:

The South had paid their few debts, so they saw Congress's decision as rewarding the North's failure to pay.

The South opposed tariffs, which don't benefit an economy that doesn't rely on manufactured goods.

People who lent money to the government in exchange for bonds often sold their bonds for cheap to **SPECULATORS**, who would now get a profit.

Some people argued that Congress didn't have the right to found a bank.

Hamilton supported a LOOSE CONSTRUCTION VIEW OF THE CONSTITUTION, noting that the ELASTIC CLAUSE of Article I gives Congress the authority to do what is "necessary and proper" to carry out its powers.

Thomas Jefferson and James Madison favored a STRICT CONSTRUCTION VIEW OF THE CONSTITUTION, arguing that the "necessary and proper" clause put stronger limits on what was truly necessary.

While Hamilton seemed to favor businessmen, Jefferson and Madison supported small farmers. While Hamilton advocated having a strong central government, Jefferson and Madison

SPECULATORS
people who buy items at a low price with the hope that their value will later increase and they can be sold at a profit

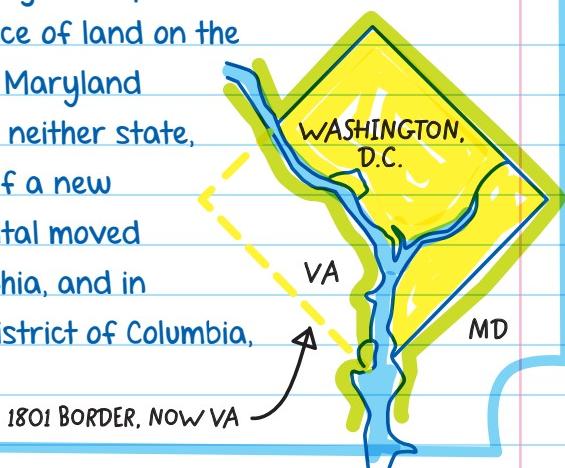
favored local and state governments. The disagreement between "Hamiltonians" and "Jeffersonians" over the scope and extent of federal powers laid the foundation for the first political parties in the U.S.



Partly by assuring Southern congressmen that the location of the nation's capital would move, Hamilton was able to convince them to accept his plan. Congress assumed the state debts, enacted low tariffs, and established the Bank of the United States in 1791. The bank had a 20-year charter that would have to be renewed, and states had the right to start their own banks. Washington had tried to stay neutral, but he agreed with Hamilton.

★ WASHINGTON, D.C. ★

New York City was a large and bustling metropolis, but some worried that keeping the capital there favored Northern interests. A piece of land on the Potomac River, between Maryland and Virginia but part of neither state, was chosen as the site of a new capital. In 1790, the capital moved temporarily to Philadelphia, and in 1800, Washington, the District of Columbia, became the new capital.



The WHISKEY REBELLION

Alexander Hamilton also encouraged Congress to pass a tax on whiskey. In western Pennsylvania, farmers who grew the corn used to make the whiskey saw the tax as an attack. Many of them used whiskey as money.

In the summer of 1794, farmers attacked tax collectors in the **WHISKEY REBELLION**. That November, Washington personally led an army to stop the rebellion, and the farmers surrendered right away. Washington proved that the U.S. government was powerful and would use force if its people did not follow the law.

The **WHISKEY REBELLION** is the only time in U.S. history that a sitting president has personally commanded an army.



The TREATY of GREENVILLE

Native Americans in the Northwest Territory united to fight American expansion into their land, with the support of the British. After many initial successes but a final defeat, 12 tribes signed the 1795 **TREATY OF GREENVILLE**, **CEDING** most of their land in the Northwest Territory to the U.S.

CEDE
to yield or formally surrender

The NEUTRALITY PROCLAMATION

In 1789, when the French Revolution began, Americans were supportive of a revolution that seemed similar in spirit to their own. But the French Revolution turned bloody and violent—a period that came to be known as the "Reign of Terror"—and war broke out between the French and other European nations. Jefferson felt that the U.S. shouldn't abandon its ally France—its people were fighting for liberty. Hamilton thought it was more important for the U.S. to protect relations with Britain, its biggest trading partner.

On April 22, 1793, Washington issued the **NEUTRALITY PROCLAMATION**. Americans wouldn't fight or help EITHER side, and foreign warships couldn't use American ports. Madison argued that only Congress had authority over foreign affairs. Jefferson resigned as secretary of state.

IMPRESSIONMENT and JAY'S TREATY

The British kidnapped American ships that traded in the French West Indies and forced the American sailors to fight for Britain. This practice, called **IMPRESSIONMENT OF SEAMEN**, pushed the U.S. closer to another war with England.

Washington sent Chief Justice John Jay to England to discuss the seized U.S. ships. In 1795, Jay was able to get the British to agree to pay for the losses. **JAY'S TREATY** prevented another war with Britain, and also:

- improved trade between the countries
- withdrew British troops from western outposts in the U.S.
- established commissions to settle border disputes

WASHINGTON'S FAREWELL

Concerned that he had too much power for one man, and overdue for retirement, George Washington announced in 1796 that he wouldn't be running for a third term (he could've run—there wasn't any precedent yet about how many terms a president got). In his **FAREWELL ADDRESS**, Washington warned against forming political parties, **FACTIONS**, or "permanent alliances" with foreign nations.

FACTION
a group that shares a common goal or belief

POLITICAL PARTIES FORM

The disagreements with Jefferson and Madison on one side and Hamilton on the other grew into the first full-fledged parties in American politics.

The **DEMOCRATIC-REPUBLICAN PARTY** (Jefferson and Madison) supported the ideas of **REPUBLICANISM**, including

- strict construction view of the Constitution
 - reliance on agriculture
- the ideal of a nation of small farmers
 - sympathy for the French

The Democratic-Republican Party was favored in the South and on the western frontier.

The Democratic-Republican Party was also just called the Republican Party. It's not related to today's Republican Party. It actually evolved into today's Democratic Party.

The **FEDERALIST PARTY** (Hamilton) was named after those who had supported the Constitution from the beginning. This party supported:

- strong, central representative government
- loose construction view of the Constitution
- reliance on trade (especially with England)
- the importance of urban merchants

Most Federalists did business and lived in urban areas in New England.

The ELECTION of 1796

The Democratic-Republicans chose Thomas Jefferson to run for president and Aaron Burr to run for vice president at a **CAUCUS**. The Federalists chose John Adams

CAUCUS
a meeting of party leaders to select candidates

and Charles Pinckney. Adams received the most electoral votes and became president.

Jefferson, the runner-up, became vice president.

ADAMS: 71
JEFFERSON: 68
CLOSE ELECTION!

Jefferson and Adams were former friends who became bitter rivals.

The XYZ AFFAIR

France began attacking American ships, as England had. In 1797, President Adams sent Charles Pinckney, Elbridge Gerry, and John Marshall to Paris to negotiate. The French foreign minister,

TALLEYRAND, refused to meet. Instead, Talleyrand sent three agents to discuss a treaty for a huge bribe. Adams was furious. Referring to the agents as Agent X, Agent Y, and Agent Z, he urged Congress to prepare for war.

This insult outraged Americans and led to the slogan "Millions for defense but not one CENT for tribute."

Congress expanded the navy, but Adams didn't REALLY want war.

CONSIDERED TO BE THE FATHER OF THE AMERICAN NAVY

The ALIEN and SEDITION ACTS

American citizens were now wary of new European immigrants, who might side with the French. Congress passed the **ALIEN AND SEDITION ACTS** in 1798. These controversial laws allowed the president to deport or imprison immigrants in wartime. They also made **SEDITION**,

SEDITION
rebellion against the government

or opposing the government, illegal, taking away basic civil liberties such as freedom of speech and freedom of the press.

The KENTUCKY and VIRGINIA RESOLUTIONS

Democratic-Republicans thought the Alien and Sedition Acts were an abuse of power. Jefferson wrote a resolution for the Kentucky legislature in 1798, and Madison wrote one for Virginia in 1799 (although the authorship was kept secret).

The **KENTUCKY AND VIRGINIA RESOLUTIONS** argued that the Acts were unconstitutional because they interfered with Constitutional rights granted to states. The Kentucky Resolution insisted that states could **NULIFY** laws they found unconstitutional. The resolutions didn't change the law—Congress just let the Acts expire after Adams left office—but they showed that states could challenge the federal government.

The CONVENTION of 1800

In 1800, Adams sent another set of delegates to Paris. In the **CONVENTION OF 1800**, France agreed to stop naval attacks.

Adams was pleased, but many Federalists from his own party had wanted a war. And ever since the Alien and Sedition Acts, the Democratic-Republicans saw Adams as an enemy to their cause. When election season rolled around, Adams was in a bad position for reelection.

NULIFY
to cancel or
make void



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What is the role of the president's cabinet?
2. Who nominates federal justices?
3. Why did Alexander Hamilton support raising tariffs?
4. Why is Washington, D.C., the capital of the U.S.?
5. What caused most Americans to lose enthusiasm for the French Revolution?
6. What did Washington say in his Farewell Address?
7. What was the justification for the doctrine of nullification supported by the Kentucky Resolution?



CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



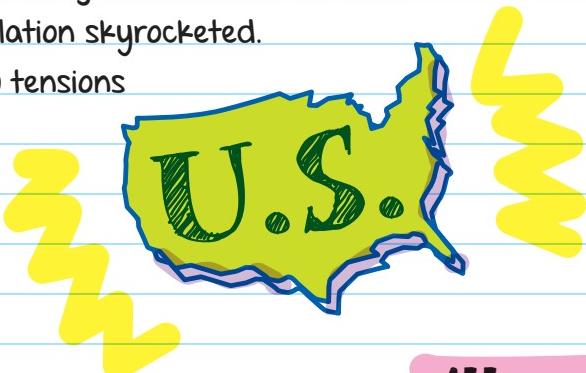
1. To advise the president
2. The president
3. To raise revenue and encourage people to buy American goods
4. It was a compromise to move the capital closer to a neutral location that was not part of any state and between the North and South.
5. The Reign of Terror
6. He advised the nation to avoid forming political parties, factions, and permanent alliances with foreign countries.
7. That the states have rights that the federal government cannot alter, so the states can declare acts unconstitutional and nullify them

Unit 4

American Expansion 1801-1861

The first half of the nineteenth century was a period of expansion. The continental U.S. grew to fill the borders it has today, and the population skyrocketed.

Changes created both new tensions and new opportunities.





Chapter 14



PRESIDENT THOMAS JEFFERSON

The ELECTION of 1800

Democratic-Republicans tried to paint Federalist candidate John Adams as a monarchist. Adams tried to label Thomas Jefferson, the Democratic-Republican candidate, as a radical and an **ATHEIST**. Adams clearly lost, but Jefferson tied with Aaron Burr, at 73 votes in the electoral college.

ATHEIST

a person who rejects belief in gods

The House of Representatives (mostly Federalists) voted THIRTY-FIVE TIMES trying to break the tie. Finally, Alexander Hamilton convinced a congressman not to vote for Burr. Thomas Jefferson became the third president of the U.S.

Hamilton and Burr became bitter enemies.

This was the first time in history that there was a peaceful transfer of power between opposing political parties.

The mess of trying to break the tie led to the **TWELFTH AMENDMENT** in 1803, which made the election of the president and vice president two separate ballots.

JEFFERSON as PRESIDENT

Jefferson emphasized the central stances of the Democratic-Republican Party:



limited government with a
LAISSEZ-FAIRE approach

focus on agriculture

political unity through
individual independence

Taxes were repealed, the Alien and Sedition Acts expired, the military and military spending shrank, and the number of employees working for the federal government decreased.

LAISSEZ-FAIRE

French for “leave it alone,” a theory, particularly in economics, that insists on minimal government intervention

The MIDNIGHT JUDGES

At the very end of Adams's presidency, Congress had passed the **JUDICIARY ACT OF 1801**, creating new federal judge positions. Once the judges were in office, they would keep their jobs for life, so Adams made sure to appoint them before he left. Because of the last-minute timing, they were called the "**MIDNIGHT JUDGES**."



When Jefferson became president, some of the judges hadn't yet gotten their **COMMISSIONS**, the documents that made it official. It was the job of the new secretary of state, **JAMES MADISON**, to deliver the commissions, but Jefferson told Madison, well, just not to deliver them. One of the judges left in limbo was **WILLIAM MARBURY**.

MARBURY v. MADISON (1803)

It gets complicated and there's **Latin**, but it's important. Marbury took his case straight to the Supreme Court, where he requested a **WRIT OF MANDAMUS** against James Madison, which basically asked the court to force Madison to give him his commission. The **JUDICIARY ACT OF 1789** gave the Supreme Court the power to settle the case. Although **CHIEF JUSTICE JOHN MARSHALL** agreed that Marbury deserved his commission, he ruled against Marbury, saying the Supreme Court didn't have the power to grant the writ and settle the case because:

Congress had no right to pass the Judiciary Act of 1789 in the first place.

The Constitution is the "supreme law," so when the Constitution and the law were in disagreement, the Supreme Court could cancel out the law.

The case of **MARBURY v. MADISON** is important because it established **JUDICIAL REVIEW**: the power of the Supreme Court to nullify a law by declaring it unconstitutional. It made the Supreme Court equal in power and status to the executive and legislative branches. **MARBURY v. MADISON** strengthened the idea of checks and balances in the federal government and made the Supreme Court the final word on the constitutionality of the law.

JUDICIAL REVIEW

the power to declare an act of Congress unconstitutional

WESTERN EXPANSION

KENTUCKY was admitted to the Union in 1792, **TENNESSEE** joined soon after in 1796, and **OHIO** in 1803. The Mississippi River was officially the western border, but Americans kept moving and kept pushing the limits. Merchants wanted to use the Mississippi River to conduct trade. Spain controlled the river and its major port, New Orleans . . .

The LOUISIANA PURCHASE

. . . but they didn't own it. Spain had secretly traded the Louisiana Territory (all of the land between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains, including New Orleans) to France in 1800. In 1802, Spain closed the port to American shipping. **NAPOLEON BONAPARTE**, the ruler of France, was planning to expand his empire in the Americas, using New Orleans as a critical point of entry for troops headed to the country. New Orleans also controlled the Mississippi River, which was a major port of exit for goods from the American West. France was essentially threatening the sovereignty and economic stability of the U.S.

Jefferson sent **ROBERT R. LIVINGSTON** and **JAMES MONROE** to France to meet with Minister Talleyrand ← ASKED FOR A BRIBE IN 1798



to discuss buying the territory of New Orleans, but they got a surprise. Haitian leader **TOUSSAINT-LOUVERTURE** led a slave revolt that forced the French out of Haiti. ← **FRENCH TROOPS WERE ALSO DECIMATED BY YELLOW FEVER.**

BURR v. HAMILTON

Concerned that the newly acquired lands would soon be filled with Democratic-Republicans, some Federalists discussed **SECEDED** and becoming a "Northern Confederacy," a separate union that would include New York. They encouraged Aaron Burr, who had been **OSTRACIZED** by his own party for not dropping out of the race during his tie with Jefferson, to run for governor of New York. Burr lost (he was sitting vice president at the time).

Burr blamed Alexander Hamilton for ruining his reputation and challenged Hamilton to a duel. In July 1804, Hamilton claimed he was opposed to dueling, and he may have chosen not to shoot at his opponent, or it may have been a mistake, but Burr shot Hamilton. Alexander

Hamilton died from wounds from the duel 30 hours later.

SECEDE

to formally withdraw from an alliance or association

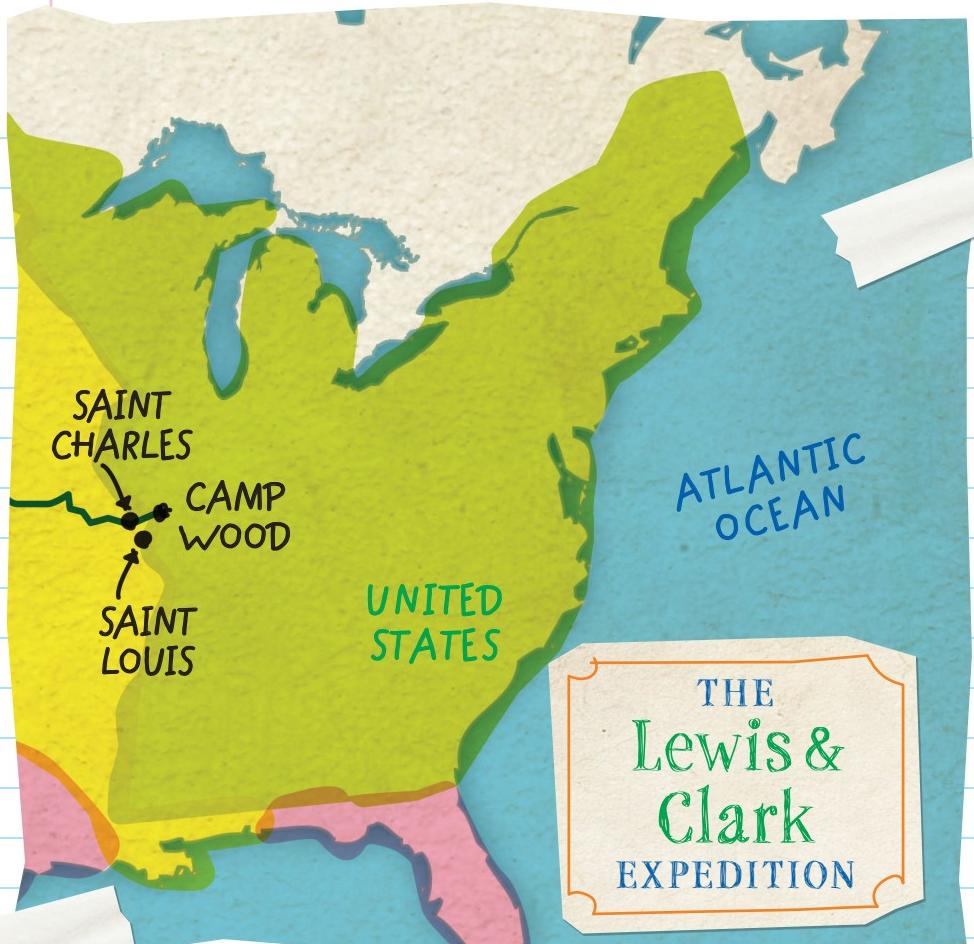
OSTRACIZE

to exclude by general consent



Talleyrand offered to sell them the whole Louisiana Territory, which was larger than the entire U.S. at the time.

The price of \$15 million was a bargain (roughly 3 cents an acre). In October 1803, the **LOUISIANA PURCHASE** extended the borders of the U.S. to the Rocky Mountains (despite its questionable constitutionality).



LEWIS and CLARK

Congress chose Captain Meriwether Lewis and Lieutenant William Clark to lead an exploration of the West. Their group of about 50 men—the "**CORPS**

OF DISCOVERY"—set out to map the new land. In May of 1804, the **LEWIS AND CLARK EXPEDITION** left St. Louis and followed the Missouri River. By winter, they had reached modern-day North Dakota.

CORPS

a group of people acting together under a common direction (the P and the S are silent)

When Lewis and Clark headed west again in the spring, a young Shoshone woman named **SACAGAWEA**, her husband (a French trader), and their newborn baby went with them. Sacagawea was the interpreter and guide. Following the Columbia River on the western side of the Rockies, they came into sight of the Pacific Ocean in November of 1805. Lewis and Clark returned home the next year filled with information. Their experiences inspired enthusiasm for the West.

TRADE TROUBLES

Even though the U.S. had remained neutral in the conflict between Britain and France, each of them tried to stop America from doing business with the other.

Jefferson, who had been reelected to a second presidential term, decided to punish England and France by cutting off their access to American trade altogether. In December 1807, Congress passed the **EMBARGO ACT**, ending all international trade between the U.S. and the rest of the world. Britain and France just traded with other countries instead. It was a disaster for American merchants and for Jefferson's image.

EMBARGO

a government order prohibiting commercial ships sailing into or out of its ports

James Madison (Democratic-Republican) won the next presidential election.



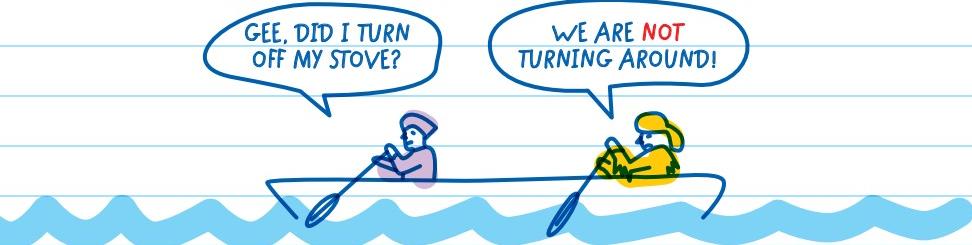
CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How was the tie in the election of 1800 broken?
2. What were the central stances of the Democratic-Republican Party?
3. To whom does the term "midnight judges" refer?
4. What was the decision in the case MARBURY v. MADISON?
5. Why were the Mississippi River and the port of New Orleans important?
6. What did Napoleon Bonaparte intend to do with the Louisiana Territory?
7. How did Alexander Hamilton die?
8. Which route did Lewis and Clark take to the Pacific?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Hamilton convinced a congressman not to vote for Burr.
2. Limited government and laissez-faire economics, individual participation in government, and agriculture
3. It refers to the judges appointed by President Adams right before he left office.
4. Marbury had a right to his commission, but Congress had no right to extend the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court to apply to the case.
5. Because merchants wanted to use the Mississippi River to conduct trade
6. He would use it as a point of entry to gain holdings in America.
7. He was mortally wounded in a duel with Aaron Burr.
8. The Missouri River





Chapter 15

The WAR of 1812 and OTHER FAILURES to COMMUNICATE

TECUMSEH and WESTERN WORRIES

Native Americans in the Northwest and Louisiana Territories were determined to hold on to their land. Led by Shawnee chief **TECUMSEH**, who was supported by Great Britain, several tribes united to fight settlers.

WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON, governor of Indiana Territory, sent a warning to Tecumseh, urging him to stick to the terms of past agreements. Tecumseh responded that the few chiefs who signed the treaties didn't have authority to represent other tribes and give away their land.

The BATTLE of TIPPECANOE

While Tecumseh headed south to convince the Creek Nation tribe to join his forces, Harrison attacked and defeated the

Shawnee people near the Tippecanoe River in 1811 at the **BATTLE OF TIPPECANOE**. Tecumseh crossed to Canada to join the British troops.

DEMANDS for WAR

Once again, war with the British seemed inevitable. **WAR HAWKS**, as they were called, were frustrated by the British practice of impressment and determined to acquire new land and more power for their new nation. The British were also inciting Native American unrest on the frontier. On June 18, 1812—the first time Congress had declared war—the **WAR OF 1812** began. That fall, James Madison was elected to his second term as president.

The WAR of 1812 BEGINS

The first American plan of attack was to invade Canada, but the British and their Native American allies seized Detroit before the Americans could head north. It was also difficult to invade Canada because the British controlled Lake Erie.

Commodore **OLIVER HAZARD PERRY**, the naval officer in charge of the Lake Erie forces, was ordered to seize the lake from the British. Even after his ship was destroyed,

Perry continued to fight. The British eventually surrendered on September 10, 1813, making Perry a national hero and paving the way to invade Canada.

The term “**WAR HAWK**” refers to anyone in government who supports war.
The term “**PEACE DOVE**” refers to someone who advocates peace.

After his victory, Perry sent a message to Harrison: “We have met the enemy and they are ours.”



In October 1813, William Henry Harrison—commanding the troops in the area—defeated the British and their Native American allies near the U.S.-Canadian border. The **BATTLE OF THE THAMES** killed both Tecumseh and any alliance with the Creek Nation. Although the Americans had pushed the British out of the area, battles with Native Americans, including the **CREEK WAR**, continued. In March 1814, **ANDREW JACKSON**, leader of the Tennessee militia, defeated the Creek Nation in the **BATTLE OF HORSESHOE BEND**, forcing them to sign the **TREATY OF FORT JACKSON** and lose even more land.



ATTACK on WASHINGTON, D.C.

By 1814, Napoleon had fallen from power and British forces could focus on enemies to the west. On August 24, 1814, the American troops were defeated in the Battle of Bladensburg, which allowed the British to sail into the Chesapeake Bay.

They invaded Washington, D.C., setting fire to the Capitol and the White House and forcing President Madison to flee.

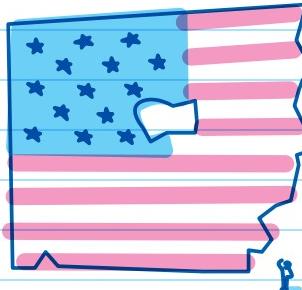
(The first lady, Dolley Madison, stayed behind until the last moment to save a portrait of George Washington.)

The British continued up the Chesapeake to Baltimore, Maryland, intending to capture **FORT McHENRY**. On September 13, British warships began their attack. But because of the Americans' refusal to surrender, the British armada eventually withdrew.



“The Star-Spangled Banner”

Before the British attack on Baltimore, Americans raised a large flag over Fort McHenry. When **FRANCIS SCOTT KEY**, a lawyer who had witnessed the night-long bombardment, saw at dawn that the flag was still there, he was so moved that he wrote a poem to it. The poem was later set to music, and it eventually became the U.S. national anthem.





CAPITAL VS. CAPITOL

A capital (with an “a”) is a city or place that is the official seat of government of a country or state. The U.S. Capitol (with an “o”) is a building in Washington with a famous dome and is named after an ancient Roman hill called the Capitoline.

The BATTLE of LAKE CHAMPLAIN and the BATTLE of NEW ORLEANS

In September 1814, British forces trying to seize the city of Plattsburgh, New York, faced the U.S. Navy at Lake Champlain. The Americans refused to surrender in the **BATTLE OF LAKE CHAMPLAIN**, and the British retreated.

The British forces in the south decided to attack New Orleans. As they advanced on Louisiana on January 8, 1815, an army organized by Andrew Jackson waited. Marching in their typical style across an open field, the British were easy targets. Winning the **BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS** boosted Jackson's popularity. It was the final battle of the War of 1812—and it occurred after the war had officially ended.



The END of WAR

The British decided war wasn't worth the effort and reached an agreement with the Americans. But the news didn't reach Andrew Jackson or the Federalists. From December 15, 1814, to January 5, 1815, Federalists met at the **HARTFORD CONVENTION** to show opposition to the war.

Little did they know that on December 24, 1814, the British and Americans had signed the **TREATY OF GHENT** in Belgium.

The Hartford Convention embarrassed the Federalists for opposing a war that was already won.

The Treaty of Ghent did not resolve border and trade disputes between the U.S. and Britain, but it increased patriotism. While the treaty returned the countries to the way things were before the war, Americans were proud to have held their own. Because the War of 1812 cemented America's independence, it is also called "America's Second War for Independence." American manufacturers profited, since British goods weren't available. The nation seemed destined for success.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How did Tecumseh try to protect Native American lands?
2. Who were the "war hawks" and what did they want?
3. What was the first time Congress ever declared war?
4. When did the U.S. push the British out of the Northeast?
5. What inspired "The Star-Spangled Banner"?
6. What was the last battle of the War of 1812?
7. What effect did the War of 1812 have on the national mood?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. He led several united tribes to fight settlers.
2. They were people who wanted war with England.
3. The War of 1812, on June 18, 1812
4. After the Battle of the Thames, in October 1813
5. Francis Scott Key was inspired by troops at Fort McHenry defending Baltimore from the British.
6. The Battle of New Orleans, which took place after the war ended.
7. Patriotism increased, as did confidence in the success of the nation.

A PEEK INTO AMERICAN LIFE ★ in the ★ EARLY 1800s

The INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION

The American Industrial Revolution is said to have begun in Rhode Island in 1793, when **SAMUEL SLATER** built the first American spinning mill, a factory that makes cloth. Rhode Island's geography was perfect for water-powered mills, and the War of 1812 made it tough to get imported goods, inspiring Americans to find more efficient ways to produce their own. The most famous factory was a textile mill started by Francis Cabot Lowell in 1814 and mostly employed young women. It was so successful that it led to the founding of an entire town, called **LOWELL, MASSACHUSETTS**. The "Lowell girls" were paid well, but they worked long hours in grueling conditions.

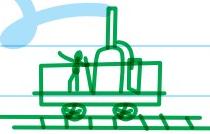


The INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION was the first time many people in America needed a clock. On a farm, you can plan your day by the movement of the sun; in a factory, not so much.

The Industrial Revolution was a time of great innovation.

NEW TECHNOLOGY

OF THE ERA INCLUDED:



INTERCHANGEABLE PARTS:

Introduced by **ELI WHITNEY** (who invented the **COTTON GIN**) for muskets for the army, these premanufactured, identical parts created the possibility of **MASS PRODUCTION**.

STEAM POWER:

Once **STEAM ENGINES** were improved by **JAMES WATT** in 1780, factories no longer had to be located near rivers.

The **TELEGRAPH**, invented by **SAMUEL F. B. MORSE** in 1837, improved communication.

Using **MORSE CODE**, telegraphs sent short pulses of energy along a wire that were translated into letters that spelled out messages.

The **STEAMBOAT**, perfected by **ROBERT FULTON** in 1807, improved river transportation.

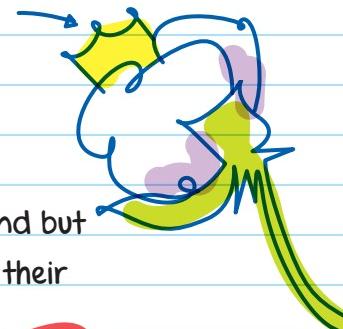
The **STEAM LOCOMOTIVE**, created by **PETER COOPER** in 1830, improved land transportation and led to the development of railroads.

New technology helped people who were headed west. They could now use better agricultural tools, like the **JOHN DEERE PLOW** and the **MCCORMICK REAPER**. Wheat became a cash crop, cities such as Chicago sprang up, farms in the Midwest began to supply the factory workers in the Northeast with food, and the Northeast began to supply the Midwest with manufactured goods. Large distances seemed to become smaller, thanks to American innovation.

One of the most significant inventions was the **COTTON GIN**. Invented by Eli Whitney in 1793, it could clean seeds from cotton quickly. It allowed plantation owners in the South to speed up harvests so that workers in the North could make more cotton goods.

On the flip side, however, the cotton gin also increased the use of slaves. Plantation owners, who only made up about three percent of the Southern population, made even more profit. In the Deep South, cotton was "king," and there was no incentive for anything else.

Other Southern whites earned livings as **YEOMEN**, small-scale farmers who owned land but no slaves, or **TENANT FARMERS**, who rented their land. These people tended to be poor.



SLAVE LIFE

By 1808, the international slave trade was abolished. The domestic slave trade increased to make up for it. By the early part of the century, almost every slave in the U.S. had been born into slavery.

Some slaves were determined to win their freedom. **NAT TURNER**, one of the most famous slave rebels, led a violent uprising in 1831 in Virginia. Turner was hanged, and **NAT TURNER'S REBELLION** scared many Southerners and hardened their position. Some states passed even harsher laws to control slaves.

★ Chapter 16 ★

NEW AMERICAN BORDERS

After the War of 1812, feelings of **NATIONALISM** spread through the U.S.

NATIONALISM

patriotism; a sense of national identity

NATIONALISM and the ERA of GOOD FEELING

James Monroe was elected America's fifth president in 1816 with little opposition from the now fractured Federalist Party. Monroe toured the country and was widely supported and welcomed everywhere he went. This era was marked by so little disagreement about national politics that it was called the **ERA OF GOOD FEELING**. In 1820, Monroe was reelected almost unanimously.

ERA OF GOOD FEELING? ANYONE WITHOUT THE RIGHT TO VOTE PROBABLY THOUGHT OTHERWISE...

The AMERICAN SYSTEM

In order to strengthen the national economy and further promote national unity, **HENRY CLAY**, Speaker of the House, proposed a program called the **AMERICAN SYSTEM**:

A Bank of the United States would issue a single U.S. currency.

Protective tariffs would be increased to encourage American manufacturing.

Money generated from tariffs would be spent building roads and canals (public works).

The Bank, whose original charter expired in 1811, received a new charter in 1816 and was called the Second Bank of the United States, but it was still controversial. The South opposed tariffs because they hurt their economy. And some people argued that the Constitution did not say that Congress could spend money on public works within the individual states.

Congress had already approved the construction of the **CUMBERLAND ROAD** from Cumberland, Maryland, to Vandalia, Illinois (later called the **NATIONAL ROAD**). Congress also invested in the **ERIE CANAL**, built almost entirely by hand.

between 1817 and 1825, to connect New York City with the Great Lakes region. The Erie Canal led to increased trade and a population surge in the Midwest. It inspired the building of many more canals in pre-railroad era America.



SECTIONALISM

As nationalism grew, **SECTIONALISM**, or the importance of regional and state identity, also grew. As always, the Northeast focused on factories and trade, the South relied on plantations, and now the West was a place for people to exploit new land.

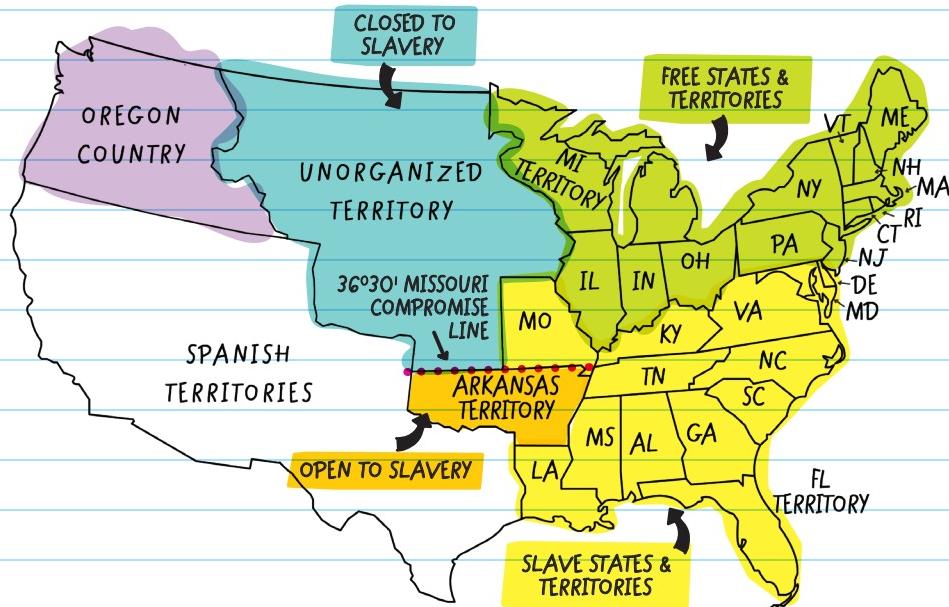
This created regional politics: The North advocated high tariffs so that people would buy American-made goods. The South supported slavery, and they also supported low tariffs, because they imported most of their goods.

Northerners wanted the government to sell its land at a high price to discourage poor workers from leaving the cities, but Westerners wanted the government to sell them land at a low price and give them roads and other public improvements.

The MISSOURI COMPROMISE

A conflict rooted in sectionalism happened when Missouri applied for statehood in 1817. At the time, the U.S. consisted of 11 slave states and 11 free states. If Missouri entered the Union as a slave state, as it wanted, it would upset a balance of power in the Senate between slave and free states.

In 1820, Henry Clay came up with a solution for the land from the Louisiana Purchase—the **MISSOURI COMPROMISE**.

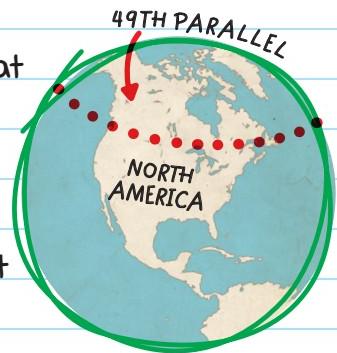


Missouri would enter the Union as a slave state, but Maine, which was still a part of Massachusetts, would enter at the same time as a free state. In all future applications for statehood, slavery would be illegal north of the southern border of Missouri, at latitude $36^{\circ}30'$. The Missouri Compromise divided the land from the Louisiana Purchase into separate regions defined by slavery. Slavery was increasingly becoming an issue that divided the North and South.

RELATIONS with ENGLAND and SPAIN

The U.S. and Britain agreed that neither nation would maintain a navy in the Great Lakes region or along the U.S.-Canada border. A demilitarized border between the U.S. and Canada was created at the **49TH PARALLEL**, stretching as far west as the Rocky Mountains.

PARALLEL
another word for a line of latitude



Relations between the U.S. and Britain improved, but tensions with Spain were high. The U.S. claimed western Florida belonged to the U.S. because it was part of the Louisiana Purchase. Spain disagreed. As American settlers moved into the Florida territory, the Seminole Indians native to the area raided the settlements and helped slaves escape.

In April 1818, without government permission, Andrew Jackson invaded Spanish territory and captured two Spanish forts,

starting the **FIRST SEMINOLE WAR**. Instead of punishing Jackson, and knowing that Spain could not fight back, Secretary of State **JOHN QUINCY ADAMS** (former President Adams's son) gave Spain two choices: They could police their territory or sell it. Spain sold Florida and their claims to part of the Pacific Northwest to the U.S. for \$5 million. These military campaigns enhanced Jackson's reputation as a hero.



The MONROE DOCTRINE

Spain was losing territories not only in the U.S. but also throughout Latin America. **SÍMON BOLÍVAR** led revolutions to free people from Spanish rule. **MIGUEL HIDALGO Y COSTILLA** won independence for Mexico in 1821. When France, Russia, Prussia, and Austria discussed helping Spain regain its land, Monroe feared that European countries would also attempt to recolonize territories in the Americas.

On December 2, 1823, Monroe issued the **MONROE DOCTRINE**. It established American foreign policy for years to come and set the stage for America to become a world power.

Its three major points were that:

1. European interference in U.S. affairs would not be tolerated and the U.S. would stay **NEUTRAL** in European colonies or conflicts.
2. The U.S. wouldn't tolerate **NEW COLONIZATION** of the Americas.
3. Any attempt by Europe to further colonize the Americas would be considered an act of **AGGRESSION**.

The ELECTION of 1824

All of the candidates of the 1824 presidential election considered themselves to be in the same party.

However, there was no agreed-upon way of nominating a candidate for the presidency. The North was in favor of John Quincy Adams, the South supported Andrew Jackson or William Crawford, and the West wanted Henry Clay or Andrew Jackson. Andrew Jackson won the **POPULAR VOTE** but didn't receive a majority of electoral votes.

POPULAR VOTE
method of electing a candidate based on a majority of votes.

Jackson got the most votes—about 40%—but NOT a majority.

ELECTORAL VOTES: POPULAR VOTE:

JACKSON: 99

151,271

J.Q. ADAMS: 84

113,122

CRAWFORD: 41

40,856

CLAY: 37

47,531

NO CANDIDATE
WON A MAJORITY
OF THE ELECTORAL
COLLEGE VOTE—THERE
WERE TOO MANY
CANDIDATES

According to the Constitution, the House of Representatives would decide the winner in that situation. Henry Clay, the Speaker of the House, who finished in last place, convinced his colleagues to vote for John Quincy Adams. When Adams became the country's sixth president and appointed Clay as his secretary of state, his opponents argued that a backroom deal had been made.

THE ELECTION of 1828 and JACKSONIAN DEMOCRACY

The bitterness and anger over the 1824 election led to the development of two new political parties:

The Democrats supported Jackson; the National Republicans supported Adams. Jackson was a hardworking national war hero nicknamed "**OLD HICKORY**" for his toughness. He won an overwhelming victory, and **JOHN C. CALHOUN**, who had been John Quincy Adams's vice president, became his vice president.



"OLD HICKORY"

One reason for Jackson's victory was that he promoted expanding democratic privileges to a wider population. Called **JACKSONIAN DEMOCRACY**, this movement included the extension of **SUFFRAGE**. Before, only white men who owned property or paid taxes could vote, but Jackson loosened these restrictions to include more white men—free

SUFFRAGE

the right to vote

blacks and women still couldn't vote. Jackson's win was considered a triumph for the common man.

Jackson began to replace government bureaucrats with his friends and supporters. Called the **SPOILS SYSTEM**, this was criticized as favoritism and political payback, but Jackson argued that it was good to clean house. Jackson appointed **MARTIN VAN BUREN** as secretary of state and depended on his advice. He also relied on his "**KITCHEN CABINET**," friends who gave him advice, often in the White House kitchen.

TARIFFS and the NULLIFICATION CRISIS

Before Jackson took office, Congress raised tariffs on raw materials and manufactured goods so much that the South called it the **TARIFF OF ABOOMINATIONS**. The South argued that the tariff was unconstitutional because it favored one region over another. Also, the states could nullify laws that were unconstitutional because of the **THEORY OF STATE SOVEREIGNTY**, which says that the power of the federal government comes from the states and that the states are more powerful.

In the **NULLIFICATION ACT OF 1832**, South Carolina declared a federal tariff null and void, and threatened to secede from the Union. Jackson pushed for Congress to pass the **FORCE BILL** to allow him to use the army to enforce the

tariff. In 1833, Henry Clay came up with a plan that would gradually reduce the tariff. South Carolina agreed to the compromise. When Jackson was reelected, he showed support for state rights by vetoing a renewal of the charter for the Second Bank of the United States, moving money to state banks.

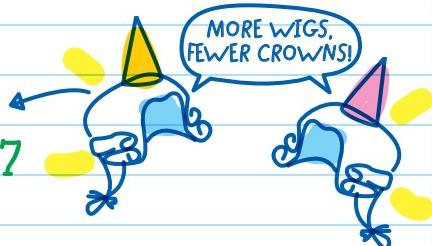
None of this resolved the debate about states' rights, which has never ended.

The WHIG PARTY and the PANIC of 1837

Partly in opposition to Jackson's destruction of the Second Bank of the United

States, a new political party formed. The **WHIG PARTY** was formed in opposition to what they saw as a danger of majority parties. Led by Henry Clay, the Whig Party nominated three candidates for president in 1836 in hopes of throwing the election. They took their name from the English anti-monarchy party because they were opposed to choosing electors by popular vote. They felt it led to the tyranny of "King Andrew" Jackson. However, Van Buren, the presidential nominee for Jackson's supporters, now called the **DEMOCRATS**, still won and took office in 1837 as the eighth president.

By then the economic boom of Jackson's presidency was over. During the **PANIC OF 1837**, the values of land, cotton, and paper money decreased, leading to terrible inflation. The



previous year, Jackson had attempted to make it illegal for people to use paper money to buy inexpensive land, demanding gold or silver instead, but this policy didn't work; nevertheless, he remained a national hero. Van Buren, not Jackson, was blamed for the depression that followed, particularly because he believed in laissez-faire economic policies.

"TIPPECANOE and TYLER TOO"

In 1840, the Whig Party nominated William Henry Harrison for president and JOHN TYLER for vice president. Using a log cabin as their symbol, the Whig Party tried to show that Harrison was a common man from the Ohio frontier while Van Buren was a man of privilege. (Harrison also came from a rich family, so...) Their personal attacks on Van Buren are called the **LOG CABIN CAMPAIGN**.

The Whigs also used the catchy slogan "**TIPPECANOE AND TYLER TOO**" to emphasize Harrison's past as a war hero at the Battle of Tippecanoe. The Whigs' plan worked, and William Henry Harrison was elected the ninth president.



On Inauguration Day, which was bitterly cold, Harrison (who was 68 years old) didn't wear a coat while he delivered his speech, probably to show he was a tough war hero.

LONGEST
INAUGURAL
ADDRESS IN
HISTORY! BRRR!

He caught pneumonia and died about a month later.

Tyler became president and went back to the beliefs of his former party, the Democratic Party. Like the other parties, the Whig Party was destined to fall victim to sectional differences.



FIRST TIME A PRESIDENT DIED IN OFFICE
AND WAS SUCCEDED BY HIS VICE
PRESIDENT. ALSO SHORTEST PRESIDENCY!



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why was the period after the War of 1812 known as the Era of Good Feeling?
2. What are the three major points of the Monroe Doctrine?
3. Name a factor behind increased sectionalism at the end of the Era of Good Feeling.
4. What were the terms of the Missouri Compromise?
5. What is the theory of state sovereignty?
6. How did Jackson try to stop the economic problems that led to the Panic of 1837?
7. What were the values of the Whig Party?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Nationalism increased and partisanship decreased during that time.
2. American neutrality, no more colonies in the future, and that European intervention in the Americas would be considered an act of aggression
3. Each region's economy became even more specialized and different from the other's.
4. Missouri would be a slave state, Maine would be free, and all further states north of $36^{\circ}30'$ would be free.
5. That federal power comes from the states, so states are the most powerful body in government
6. He tried to make it illegal for people to use paper money to buy inexpensive land—he demanded gold or silver instead.
7. They were against majority parties having too much power and potential presidential "tyranny."

★ Chapter 17 ★

WESTWARD HO!

Americans looked west for new opportunities. New canals, railroads, and roads made travel easier, and **LAND SPECULATORS**, who had bought up large quantities of land, allowed families to make a fresh start by selling them parcels of that land (at a big profit). By the 1830s, a total of 26 states had been admitted to the Union, including Illinois, Alabama, and Michigan.

The INDIAN REMOVAL ACT

Native Americans already lived on the land settlers wanted. President Jackson believed that it was impossible for Native Americans to live as independent nations within what had become the borders of the U.S. He felt that they should either become U.S. citizens or leave.

In 1830, he encouraged Congress to pass the **INDIAN REMOVAL ACT**, which authorized the federal government

to force the Native Americans of the Southeast, who lived on valuable farmland, off their land. The plan was to send them to the Great Plains, which Congress mistakenly believed was barren, worthless desert. Congress selected an area of modern-day Oklahoma to be **INDIAN TERRITORY** (also known as a **RESERVATION**). Within the next few years, Congress also established the **BUREAU OF INDIAN AFFAIRS** to manage the removal and transport of Native Americans.

The "**FIVE CIVILIZED TRIBES**" of the Southeast (Cherokee, Chickasaw, Choctaw, Creek, and Seminole) had already assimilated into American culture to varying degrees. They hoped that doing so would benefit them in some way, but they had little leverage against the U.S. government.

The **TRAIL of TEARS**

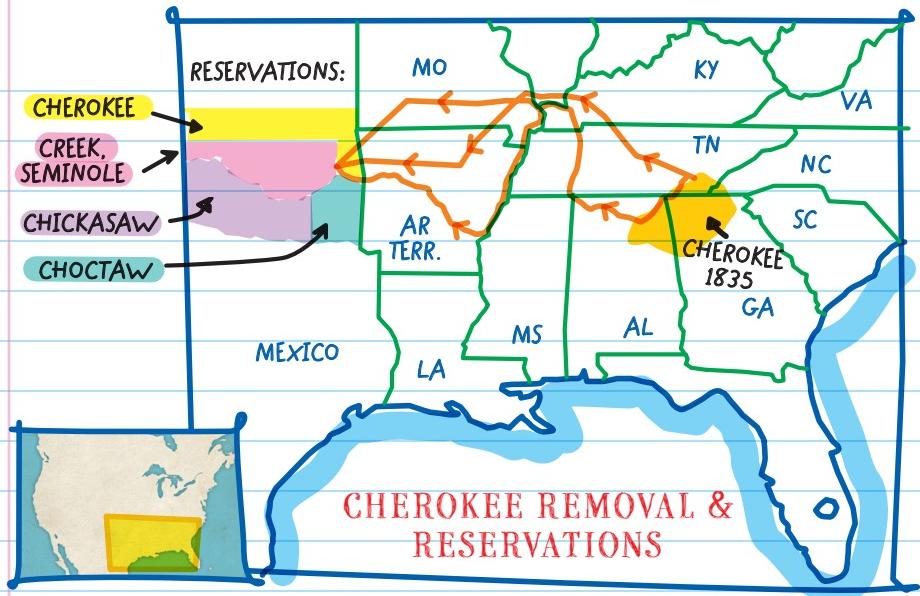
The Cherokees of Georgia were the most assimilated of the Southeast tribes, but the state of Georgia had motivation to

DISPLACE them: In 1828, gold had been found on their land.

DISPLACE

to force people to leave their home or country

The Cherokees were part of a separate nation recognized in an eighteenth-century treaty, and they had a deep understanding of American law. They took their case to the Supreme Court. In 1832, in the case of **WORCESTER v. GEORGIA**, the Supreme Court ruled the Cherokees were a sovereign nation and that only the federal government (not Georgia) had the power to



form a treaty with another nation (to move the Cherokees off their land). Both the state of Georgia and President Jackson decided to ignore the ruling. The Supreme Court had no power to enforce it.

In 1835, Congress was able to persuade a very small number of Cherokees to sign a treaty ceding their land, and the government decided that this counted as agreement of the entire tribe. President Van Buren sent **GENERAL WINFIELD SCOTT** and thousands of U.S. Army troops to invade the Cherokee Nation in 1838. Sixteen thousand Cherokees were moved into holding camps and then forced to go to their new land. During their 800-mile trek to Indian Territory, a quarter of the population died from disease, starvation, and harsh weather conditions. Their painful march became known as the **TRAIL OF TEARS**.

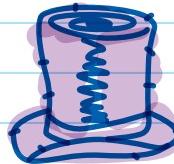
OTHER RESISTANCE to the INDIAN REMOVAL ACT

In Florida, the Seminoles also resisted being displaced. Although they were forced to sign removal treaties too, their chief, **OSCEOLA**, urged his people to go to war against the Americans, starting the **SECOND SEMINOLE WAR**. Even after Osceola was captured in 1837, his people hid in the Everglades, made surprise attacks, and used guerrilla tactics against the Americans. In 1842, the American army gave up, allowing those Seminoles who survived to remain in Florida. A Seminole population lives in Florida to this day.



OREGON COUNTRY

Back in Europe, hats made from beaver fur became a popular fashion accessory, prompting an explosion of the American beaver fur trade. It became so large that it nearly wiped out the Eastern beaver population.



People who made their living from beavers traveled to the Northwest to find more. A lot of these **MOUNTAIN MEN** immersed themselves in Native American culture and married into Native American families, choosing to live in the Northwest rather than return to the Northeast to make trades.

Instead, they met at a yearly **RENDEZVOUS**, where they socialized with other trappers and did business with Eastern merchants, such as those working for the American Fur Company owned by **JOHN JACOB ASTOR**. As the beaver population in the Northwest also died out, and as beaver hats grew less fashionable, some mountain men started farming in Oregon, but many went back East and became guides to help other people make the journey West.

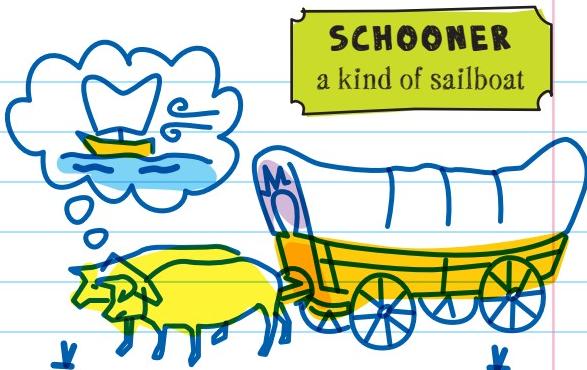
RENDEZVOUS
from the French, meaning
a “meet up”; pronounced
“rahnday-voo”

The land the mountain men settled in was called **OREGON COUNTRY** (modern-day Oregon, Washington, and Idaho, along with parts of Montana and Wyoming). The land had been claimed by the U.S., Britain, Spain, and Russia, but the 1819 Adams-Onís Treaty and another treaty between Russia and the U.S. in 1824 kept Spain and Russia out. The U.S. and Britain still both wanted the territory, but they decided not to go to war over it, instead choosing to control it jointly.

The Adams-Onís Treaty formally added Florida to the U.S. and defined Spanish-American borders. It also recognized the 42nd parallel as the southern boundary of the Oregon Territory.

The OREGON TRAIL

After the Panic of 1837 and at the height of the economic depression, many Americans chose to make the 2,000-mile trip from Independence, Missouri, to Oregon on the **OREGON TRAIL**. The difficult journey generally took six months in a wagon train of "prairie **SCHOONERS**" (wagons that looked like ships from a distance).



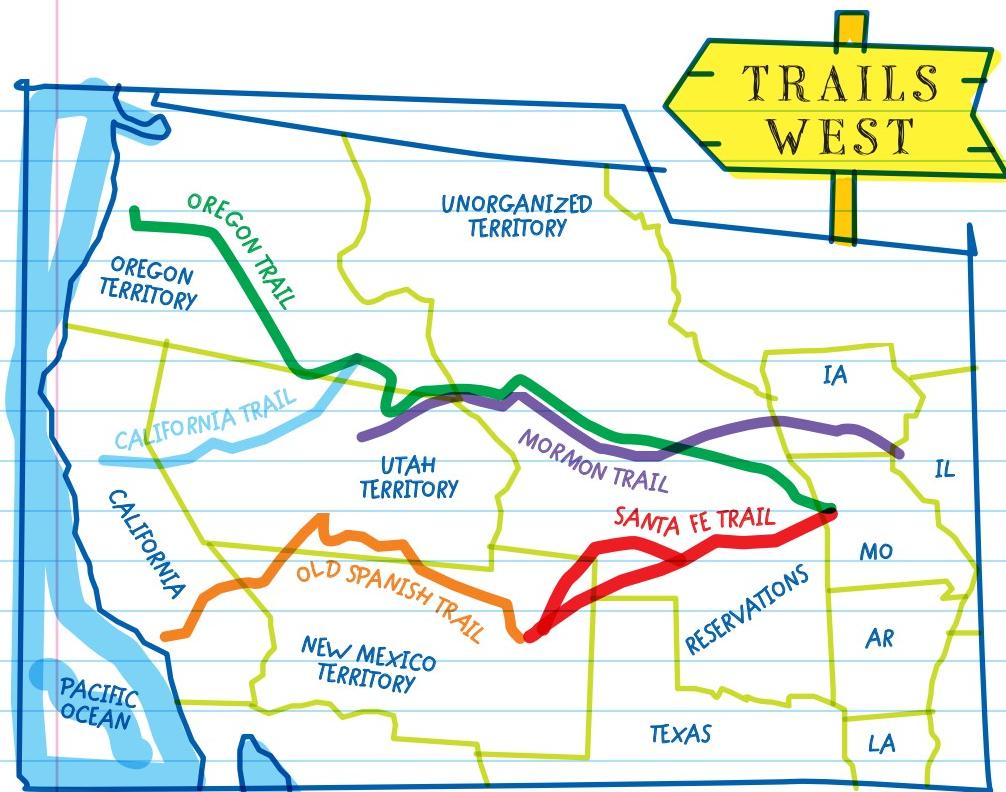
MISSIONARIES were among the first to travel the Oregon Trail. Their reports of the beautiful land of the West encouraged others to follow. They believed that American expansion to the Pacific coast was part of **MANIFEST DESTINY**: the idea that the U.S. was chosen by God to spread across the continent and that the expansion of the United States was the people's "manifest," or obvious, destiny.

MISSIONARY

someone who goes on a mission to a foreign place to spread his religion

The SANTA FE TRAIL

The **SANTA FE TRAIL** also began in Independence, Missouri, and led to Santa Fe. After Mexico gained its independence and took control of New Mexico Province, which stretched from California to Texas, this area became an ideal place



for trade. Although the 800-mile trip was long and often dangerous, the prospect of large profits inspired many traders.

The MORMON TRAIL

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints had been founded by **JOSEPH SMITH** in 1830 in New York. The church's members, called Mormons, were persecuted because they practiced **POLYGAMY** and communal ownership of property, among other reasons. The Mormons moved to the Midwest (to Nauvoo, Illinois), but

POLYGAMY
having more than
one spouse

conditions there were equally difficult and dangerous.

Smith was murdered by an anti-Mormon mob in 1844.

The new Mormon leader, **BRIGHAM YOUNG**, led his people in 1846 to an area they called **DESERET**. When Deseret became the **UTAH TERRITORY** in 1850, Brigham Young was appointed governor. Utah didn't become a state until 1896, nearly fifty years later.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How did speculators profit from cheap western land?
2. What were President Jackson's views on Native American rights?
3. Why was Indian Territory situated in Oklahoma?
4. How did the Cherokees resist being displaced?
5. What happened to the beaver population in the Northeast?
6. Why were wagons known as prairie schooners?
7. What is the idea behind Manifest Destiny?
8. Why did the Mormons go to Utah in 1846?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

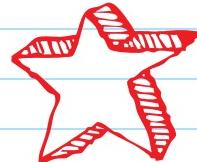


1. They bought it cheap and resold it in pieces for more money.
2. He thought they could not live as noncitizens within American borders.
3. The land was thought to be arid and uninhabitable.
4. They brought a case against Georgia to the Supreme Court (*WORCESTER v. GEORGIA*) and won (at least in court).
5. They were killed off to make hats.
6. Because they looked like ships sailing across the prairie
7. That God created the U.S. to spread across the continent, so American expansion was destiny
8. Because they were persecuted in the East, mostly for polygamy and owning property as a group

★ Chapter 18 ★

The LONE STAR NON-STATE

After Mexico gained its independence from Spain in 1821, it became a republic with a government based in Mexico City. Its territory included present-day Texas, which the Spanish called "Tejas."



SETTLERS in TEXAS

At the beginning of the nineteenth century, very few people lived in Tejas, aside from a few thousands **TEJANOS**, or Spanish Texans. To promote growth, the Mexican government offered large, inexpensive land grants to **EMPRESARIOS**, people who agreed to find settlers to purchase these grants. One of those settlers, **STEPHEN F. AUSTIN**, also received permission to start a new colony, on the condition that the new settlers follow Mexican law. Austin agreed, and, after arriving in Tejas in 1821, he recruited three hundred new families, who became known as the "**OLD THREE HUNDRED**" to settle in the

area. These families encouraged many more Americans to move to Tejas in the upcoming years.

The new American settlers did not speak Spanish or practice Catholicism, and they kept illegal slaves. Within a decade, there were more Americans in Texas than Tejanos, and the U.S. decided to pressure the Mexican government to sell its land. In 1830, fearful of the growing, dissatisfied American population in Texas, the Mexican government outlawed immigration from the U.S. to Texas.

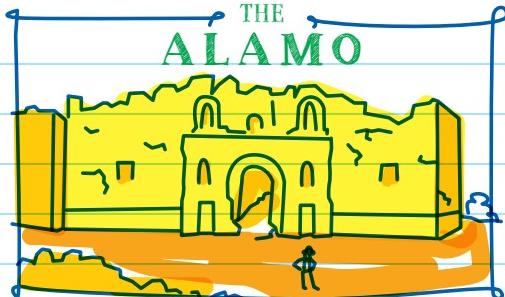
The TEXAS WAR for INDEPENDENCE

American Texans grew increasingly unhappy about following Mexican law. In 1833, Stephen Austin met with Mexico's vice president to urge Mexico to lift the ban on immigration. They agreed, but did not agree to Austin's request that Texas become an independent Mexican state. Instead, Mexico's new president, **ANTONIO LÓPEZ DE SANTA ANNA**, arrested Austin in Satillo and jailed him in Mexico City when he learned of Austin's plans for rebellion. Santa Anna also declared himself a dictator, thereby violating and subsequently abolishing Mexico's constitution, which protected the Tejanos' rights.

In 1835, Santa Anna gathered troops and sent them to **GONZALES**, Texas, with orders to seize its cannon. The Mexicans failed to confiscate the weapon, but the attempt set off the first battle in the Texas War for Independence.

The ALAMO

Having no army of their own, the Texans put out a call for volunteers. The 180-person volunteer militia (including free



African Americans, rebel Tejanos, local residents, and adventure-seeking Americans like **DAVY CROCKETT** and **JAMES BOWIE**) occupied an abandoned mission called the **ALAMO** from February 23 to March 6, 1836. The volunteers were no match for Santa Anna, who had the entire Mexican military at his disposal. Mexican cannons broke down the walls of the Alamo, but the Texans did not surrender. The Mexicans captured and executed the remaining militia, who were stationed at a fort called Goliad, in the **GOLIAD MASSACRE**. But rather than become discouraged by these events, more Texans were inspired to join the militia.

The BATTLE of SAN JACINTO

AMBUSH
to attack unexpectedly

As Santa Anna remained on the attack, the Texas militia, now more than double in size and led by **SAM HOUSTON**, headed eastward. On April 21, 1836, Houston's troops **AMBUSHED** Santa Anna's army at their camp near the San Jacinto River. Shouting "**REMEMBER THE ALAMO!**" the Texans quickly defeated the Mexicans, taking Santa Anna captive and forcing him to sign a treaty recognizing Texan independence.

The LONE STAR REPUBLIC

During the siege of the Alamo, Texan leaders met to draft their own constitution, which they modeled on the U.S. Constitution. On March 2, 1836, they declared their independence and established the **REPUBLIC OF TEXAS**, or the "Lone Star Republic." After Santa Anna signed the treaty, elections were held and Sam Houston became president. Stephen Austin, whom the capital of Texas was later named for, became secretary of state.

Because the Republic of Texas was in debt and still in conflict with the Mexicans,

Houston requested that the U.S. **ANNEX** Texas in 1836 so it could apply for statehood. At the time, Jackson was president of the U.S., and he feared admitting another slave state to the Union, as well as provoking Mexico, so he denied the request. Instead, he offered Texas diplomatic recognition as its own nation. The next president, Martin Van Buren, inherited the Texas issue from Jackson. Annexation debates took place under the Van Buren administration. Mexico never recognized the new nation, forcing Texas to create the **TEXAS RANGERS**, a militia devoted to guarding the border. Texas would not be admitted to the Union until 1845.

ANNEX
to attach or add on



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What was the form of government in Mexico following the 1821 revolution?
2. How did the Mexican government try to attract settlers to Texas?
3. How did General Santa Anna get control of the Mexican government?
4. Why was Stephen F. Austin jailed in 1833?
5. Why is Gonzales, Texas, famous?
6. What was the Alamo? Why should we remember it?
7. What was the Goliad Massacre?
8. What forced Santa Anna to recognize Texan independence?
9. Why was Texas's request to be annexed by the U.S. denied?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Republic
2. It offered land grants and hired empresarios to sell the land to people.
3. He overthrew the government and declared himself dictator.
4. Santa Anna jailed Austin because Austin was planning a rebellion.
5. The people of Gonzales did not allow Mexico to take their cannon, which began the Texas War for Independence.
6. It was an abandoned mission where a volunteer militia fought to their deaths.
7. It was when the remaining Texan militia were executed by the Mexican army, shortly after the fall of the Alamo.
8. He was taken captive by Sam Houston's troops.
9. Because it would have been a slave state and annexation might have provoked Mexican anger.



★ Chapter 19 ★

THE MEXICAN-AMERICAN WAR

Even after Congress approved the U.S. annexation of the Lone Star Republic in 1845, Texas remained a disputed territory. A new Mexican government declared that the treaty Santa Anna had signed was not valid. Oregon Country and California also remained in question.

FIFTY-FOUR FORTY or FIGHT!

When John Tyler fell out of favor with the Whig Party, the Whigs nominated Henry Clay as their candidate in the 1844 presidential election. The Democrats nominated **JAMES K. POLK**, whose main campaign promise was in the slogan of "**FIFTY-FOUR FORTY OR FIGHT!**" That is, he supported setting the northern border of Oregon Country, which the U.S. jointly occupied with Great Britain, at latitude 54°40' north, giving the U.S. more land.

On this promise, and the popularity of Manifest Destiny, Polk was elected president. Because he was more interested in territory than war, Polk eventually compromised with Britain to extend the border to the 49th parallel, which

previous U.S. administrations had already proposed.

THE OREGON TREATY of 1846 reset the borders between the U.S. and British-controlled Canada, creating the **OREGON TERRITORY**.

U.S.-MEXICO TENSIONS

Mexico eventually acknowledged that Texas was an American territory, but the border between the two nations was not yet settled. The U.S. government considered the Mexican border to be along the **RIO GRANDE RIVER**; the Mexican government believed the border was much farther north, along the **NUECES RIVER**.



The MEXICAN-AMERICAN WAR BEGINS

In 1845, President Polk sent Ambassador John Slidell to offer Mexico \$30 million for the disputed areas of Texas, California, and New Mexico, but Mexico refused to negotiate. In a controversial move, Polk also sent **GENERAL ZACHARY TAYLOR** and his troops to Texas, with instructions to make camp in the disputed region between the Rio Grande and the Nueces.

Polk's stance was that this land was American land, so the U.S. was not invading Mexico. Mexico argued that the U.S. Army was making hostile moves. When Mexican troops engaged Taylor's men on April 25, 1846, Polk informed Congress that Mexico had attacked U.S. troops on U.S. soil without being provoked. In early May, Congress declared the **MEXICAN-AMERICAN WAR**. Public support for war with Mexico was mixed: Gaining another Southern territory would create more slave states in the Union. Still, the vote in Congress was a landslide since it would gain a lot of land at a very low cost.

THE SECOND DECLARED WAR
UNDER THE CONSTITUTION

MEANWHILE, in CALIFORNIA

Mexico had taken control of California from Spain after Mexico's war for independence. The Mexican government replaced the Spanish mission system with **RANCHOS** (ranches), large parcels of land owned



by wealthy rancheros and managed by **VAQUEROS**, or cowboys. The Hispanic Californians, called **CALIFORNIOS**, felt a stronger sense of local identity than of national identity. Given the distance between California and Mexico, it was tough for them to consider themselves Mexican. The American settlers, or **ANGLOS**, took this to an extreme: They felt that California shouldn't be part of Mexico at all.

The BEAR FLAG REVOLT

In June 1846, Anglos in California decided to declare independence and proclaimed themselves the **REPUBLIC OF CALIFORNIA**. Because of the bear motif on the flag they flew, California became known as the **BEAR FLAG REPUBLIC**. But by early 1847 California was firmly under the control of the U.S.



MEXICO DEFEATED

President Polk's plan for the Mexican-American War was to push the Mexican army out of Texas, take New Mexico and California, and then march on Mexico City. By the beginning of 1847, Zachary Taylor had accomplished the first step. Meanwhile, **GENERAL STEPHEN KEARNY** had occupied New Mexico and continued on to California, where the Bear Flag Revolt was under way. By September 1847, **GENERAL WINFIELD SCOTT** and his troops marched to Mexico City and took control. Mexico had no choice but to surrender.

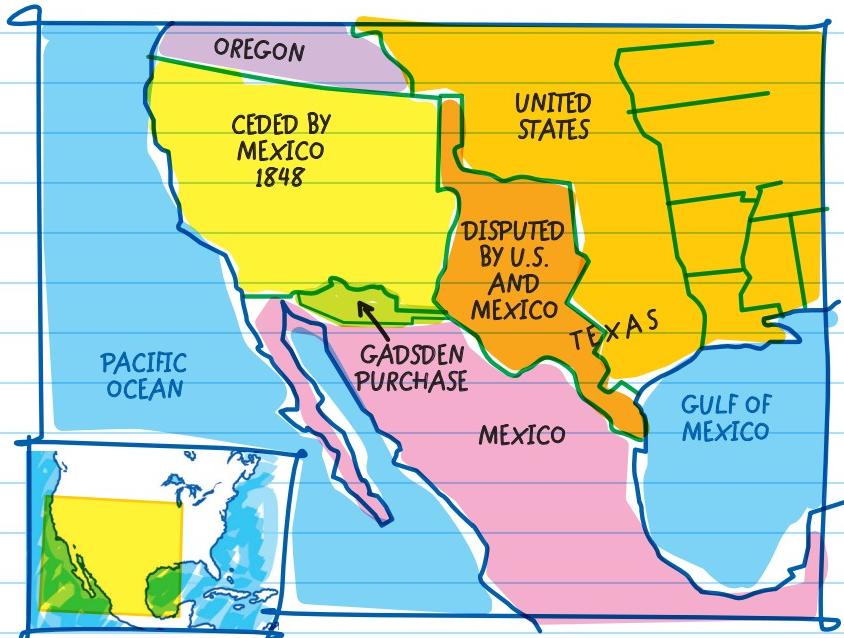
The TREATY of GUADALUPE HIDALGO and the GADSDEN PURCHASE

The official end of the Mexican-American War came in February 1848 after the signing of the **TREATY OF GUADALUPE HIDALGO**.

In what is known as the **MEXICAN CESSION**, Mexico gave up present-day California, Nevada, and Utah, along with parts of Arizona, New Mexico, Colorado, and Wyoming. Mexico also recognized the U.S. annexation of Texas and agreed to set the border between Texas and Mexico at the Rio Grande. In exchange, America gave Mexico \$15 million and promised to protect those Mexicans who would now be living in the U.S.

CESSION

something that is ceded, or given up



In 1853, Mexico also sold the U.S. a strip of land in present-day Arizona and New Mexico for \$10 million. Negotiated by **AMBASSADOR JAMES GADSDEN**, the **GADSDEN PURCHASE** would have enabled the U.S. to build a southern transcontinental railroad, and it set the borders of the nation.

WAS NOT BUILT—THE FIRST TRANSCONTINENTAL ROUTE WENT MUCH FARTHER NORTH.



SETTLING the SOUTHWEST

After the U.S. took control of the Southwest, more Americans flocked there. Many followed the **CALIFORNIA TRAIL**, an offshoot of the Oregon Trail that ran through the Sierra Nevada Mountains. Although the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo granted land rights to the Mexicans and Native Americans who already inhabited land in the Southwest, these grants were generally not enforced, giving new settlers a good chance to take over. Mexican, Native American, and Anglo cultures mixed, forming the distinct heritage of the American Southwest.

Maybe the most famous travelers on the California Trail were the **DONNER PARTY**, a group that set out for California, tried to find a shortcut, and then became stranded in the Sierra Nevada mountains during the winter of 1846–1847.

Why are they famous? When they ran out of food, some of them resorted to the only nourishment they could find: They ate each other.

>Gold Rush<

One of the first American men to settle in California was John Sutter, who founded **SUTTER'S FORT** in 1839. His homestead became a popular stop for people traveling or trading in the area near the Sacramento River, so he hired James Marshall, a carpenter, to build a sawmill. While he was working in January of 1848, Marshall discovered gold. It wasn't long before the entire country learned that there was **GOLD** in the rivers and mountains of California.



In 1849, tens of thousands of people flooded into California to try to strike it rich. Because most of them arrived that year, they became known as **FORTY-NINERS**. The miners usually agreed that the first person to begin looking for gold in a certain area could stake a claim to it, but conflicts often arose over mining rights. And while some people did get very wealthy, most miners ended up finding little or nothing of value.



BOOMTOWN LIFE

The sudden influx of people in California led to the creation of mining camps. These camps quickly became **BOOMTOWNS**, cities that came to life almost overnight. Few women lived in the towns, but those who did could earn money cooking and cleaning for the masses of young men. Merchants prospered in the mining towns, where there was little competition for their goods and services.

About eighty percent of the forty-niners were American, but a significant percentage also came from China. As gold supplies began to decline, a perception developed that the Chinese were taking American gold. In 1852, the **FOREIGN MINERS TAX** made mining too expensive for many Chinese immigrants, who were forced to find other work. Some founded successful businesses, and these became the foundations of thriving Chinese communities throughout California.

One of the most famous and successful boomtown merchants was Levi Strauss, a Jewish-German immigrant who sold miners sturdy work pants called “Levi’s.”



CALIFORNIA STATEHOOD

Even after the gold rush died down, many miners remained to farm or ranch. After just two years as a territory, California had a large enough population to apply for statehood. California wasn't granted statehood immediately; Because it would be a free state, California would upset the Union's 30-year-long balance. It would also mean that the South would lose some of its power in Congress. In 1850, in another compromise between Northern and Southern interests, California became the thirty-first state to be admitted to the Union, but tensions between the North and South mounted.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What is the meaning of the phrase "Fifty-four Forty or Fight"?
2. Where did the U.S. think the Texas-Mexico border was?
Where did Mexico think it was?
3. How did President Polk get Congress to declare war on Mexico?
4. What was the nickname of the Republic of California? Why?
5. What was the Mexican Cession?
6. What was the motivation behind the Gadsden Purchase?
7. What cultural heritages make up the culture of the American Southwest?
8. Who were the forty-niners?
9. Why did California institute the Foreign Miners Tax?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Polk promised he would extend the Oregon border to the northern edge of the territory.
2. The U.S. thought it was the Rio Grande and Mexico thought it was the Nueces River.
3. He sent Zachary Taylor to camp in the zone between the disputed borders so it would be seen as an attack on American soil when the Mexicans defended what they thought was their territory.
4. The Bear Flag Republic, after the image on its flag
5. A land parcel including California, Nevada, Utah, and parts of Arizona, New Mexico, Colorado, and Wyoming
6. It would allow a cross-country railroad route in the South.
7. Mexican, Native American, and Anglo heritage are all combined into a unique culture.
8. They were the people who went to California during the gold rush of 1849.
9. Because of the perception that Chinese miners were taking American gold

★ Chapter 20 ★

The MORE THINGS CHANGE:

REFORM

As the physical shape of the U.S. changed, so did its people and culture. Influenced in part by the Industrial Revolution, more immigrants poured into the country; those already here began movements to secure more rights.

IMMIGRATION

Millions of people immigrated to America in the mid-1800s. They often traveled in **STEERAGE**, but they made the journey in spite of the rough conditions. Many Irish people crossed the Atlantic due to the **IRISH POTATO FAMINE** in the 1840s. Mostly poor and uneducated, they settled in northeastern cities to work as laborers or domestics, which was preferable to famine and anti-Catholic persecution by the ruling Protestants in Great Britain.

STEERAGE

the lowest class on a ship

Driven out by an 1848 revolution in their homeland and general poverty, Germans made up another significant percentage of U.S. immigrants in the mid-nineteenth century. Germans tended to settle in the Midwest, where they found inexpensive land and the opportunity to farm. Most large groups of immigrants settled in clusters: Scandinavians tended to head for the northern Midwest, and the Chinese, who immigrated across the Pacific, went to California.

NATIVISM

Americans were afraid the new arrivals would take their jobs for lower pay. Those who opposed immigration became known as **NATIVISTS**, and nativist politics soared in popularity.

NATURALIZATION

when a foreigner becomes a citizen



In 1849, a secret society of nativists founded the American Party, though they were often called the **KNOW-NOTHING** Party because they refused to speak about the details of their organization. The Know-Nothings were anti-Catholic, and supported longer waiting periods for **NATURALIZATION** and a ban on foreign natives holding public office. Within a few years, however, the party fell apart over disagreements about slavery.

CITY LIFE

City life proved challenging for many immigrants. Most cities lacked adequate sewer systems, police and fire departments,

and enough housing
for a population boom.

Immigrants tended to live
in crowded **TENEMENT**

TENEMENT

a low-rent,
low-quality
apartment



apartment buildings, where disease spread easily. Others,
however, prospered as middle-class business owners.

The SECOND GREAT AWAKENING

The **SECOND GREAT AWAKENING** was a new religious revival movement in the early nineteenth century, like the Great Awakening, with millions of supporters. Preachers in the movement:

challenged traditional Protestant views

encouraged an emotional attachment to religion

emphasized the power of each person (rather than churches, priests, and rules) to control their own soul and salvation

taught personal responsibility

wanted to improve the world

REFORM MOVEMENTS

The Second Great Awakening's principles quickly spread outside religion. Many Americans, particularly middle-class women who had time and money to spare, developed a spirit

of reform. The popularity of reform movements was so great that the 1820s to 1860s became known as the **AGE OF REFORM**. Major reform movements of this time included:

THE TEMPERANCE MOVEMENT: This blamed society's problems on liquor and wanted a ban on alcohol.

THE PRISON-REFORM MOVEMENT: This was led by DOROTHEA DIX, who encouraged the creation of mental institutions so that the ill wouldn't be imprisoned with criminals anymore. The juvenile justice system also began in the same time period.

EDUCATION REFORM: This included the creation of the first teachers' training schools; CATHERINE BEECHER's first all-girls school; SAMUEL GRIDLEY HOWE's school for the blind; THOMAS GALLAUDET's school for the deaf; the expansion of public education; and the founding of liberal arts colleges, including Oberlin, the first college to admit women and African Americans.

CALLED
"NORMAL
SCHOOLS"

HELEN
KELLER
WENT
THERE.

UTOPIAN SOCIETIES: These were attempts to create perfect communities based on religious or philosophical ideals. The SHAKERS, whose faith-based society prohibited marriage and having children, lasted longer than you'd expect, through converts and the adoption of orphans.

UTOPIA
a perfect place

WORKERS' RIGHTS MOVEMENTS: These included the establishment of a union for the Lowell textile mill workers that advocated for better working conditions and shorter workdays using strikes.

The fear of unemployment in the Panic of 1837 stalled this movement. People wanted to keep any job they could get.

ABOLITIONISM

ABOLISH
to do away with

Another major reform movement of the 1830s was the antislavery movement for **ABOLITION**. It firmly divided the pro-abolition North and the pro-slavery South. Not all Northerners agreed on how to end slavery. Some wanted to keep a racial hierarchy. Some thought sending African Americans to Africa was the only solution.

In 1821, the **AMERICAN COLONIZATION SOCIETY** founded the African nation of **LIBERIA** as a free home for African Americans. As it turned out, it wasn't feasible to send large numbers of people to Liberia. Also, most African Americans had lived their whole lives in the U.S. and wanted to stay.

In 1831, **WILLIAM LLOYD GARRISON** of Massachusetts began to publish **THE LIBERATOR**, an abolitionist newspaper. He also founded the **AMERICAN ANTI-SLAVERY SOCIETY**. Supporters included the Southern-born sisters **ANGELINA AND SARAH GRIMKÉ**, who wrote and lectured. Former slaves like **FREDERICK DOUGLASS** and **SOJOURNER TRUTH** traveled

the nation and the world educating people about their lives as slaves.

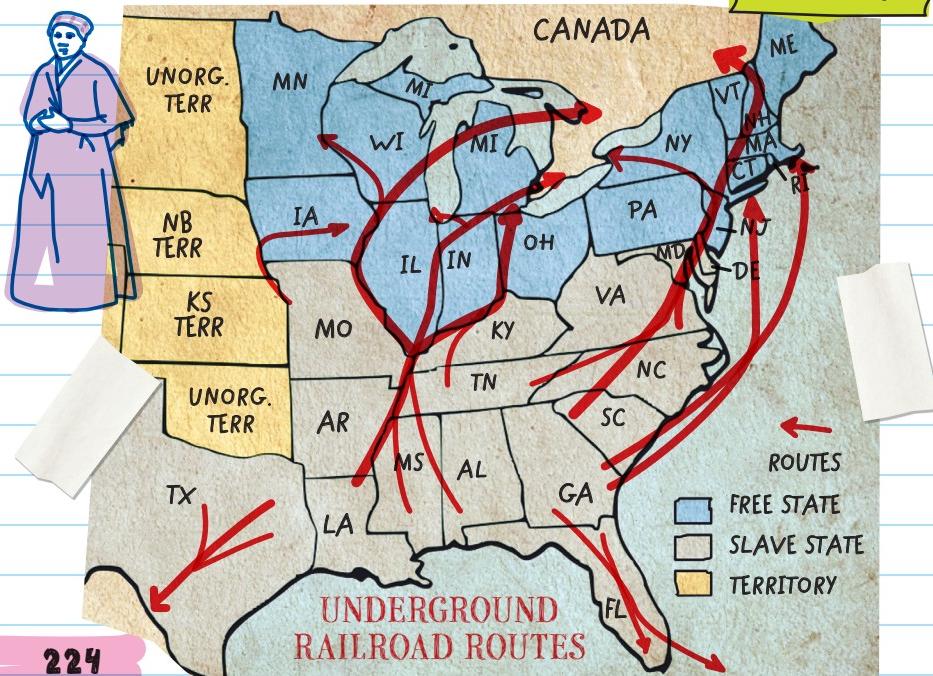
Frederick Douglass wrote *Narrative of the Life of Frederick Douglass, an American Slave* and delivered one of the most important antislavery orations on July 5, 1852, which became known as "What to the Slave Is the 4th of July?"

The UNDERGROUND RAILROAD

In the mid-1800s, a network of abolitionists, free blacks, and former slaves helped slaves escape to the North or to Canada. The **UNDERGROUND RAILROAD** (not an actual railroad) organized transportation and hiding places for

FUGITIVE SLAVES. Its most famous guide, or "conductor," was **HARRIET TUBMAN**, a former slave who made more than a dozen trips to guide slaves to freedom.

FUGITIVE
a person fleeing from intolerable circumstances; a runaway



OPPOSITION to ABOLITIONISM

To Southerners, abolitionism was a threat to their way of life. Even in the North, some people worried that free blacks would take jobs from whites. Abolitionists faced violence and persecution.

The arguments against abolitionism and women's rights followed the same pattern:

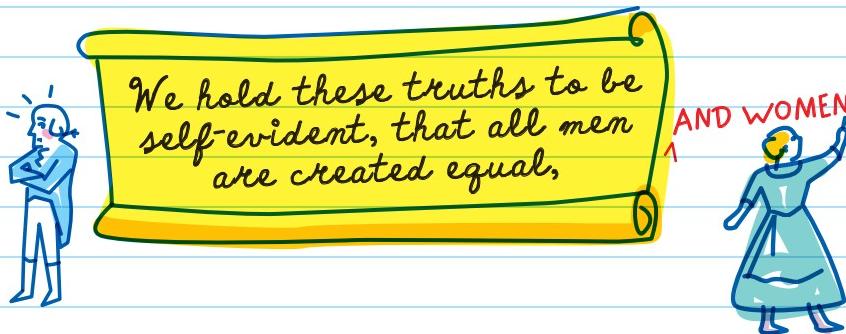
- ↳ Some Southerners said blacks were incapable of taking care of themselves and were better off as slaves.
- ↳ Some people said women were incapable of taking care of themselves and were better off being protected from the world.

WOMEN'S RIGHTS

Around the same time, the women's rights movement was solidifying. Many supporters of abolition, such as the Grimké sisters, Sojourner Truth, and Frederick Douglass, also wanted equality of the sexes. Women couldn't vote; most weren't educated; they didn't receive equal pay for equal work; and if they did earn money, it belonged to their husbands or fathers.

In 1840, **ELIZABETH CADDY STANTON** tried to attend an abolitionist convention in London, but women weren't allowed to participate. She and her friend **LUCRETIA MOTT** decided to organize a women's rights convention. The **SENECA FALLS CONVENTION**, in July 1848 in Seneca Falls,

New York, was the first meeting of its kind. Activists drafted a **DECLARATION OF SENTIMENTS AND RESOLUTIONS**, based on the Declaration of Independence, to lay out the injustices in gender relations. For example, it stated that "all men **AND WOMEN** are created equal." (Women didn't get the right to vote for another 70 years.)



The two pillars of the women's rights movement were abolition and temperance. Women could relate to the status of slaves, and they saw that alcohol abuse led to domestic issues.

LUCY STONE became a spokesperson for the American Anti-Slavery Society. **SUSAN B. ANTHONY** encouraged New York State to pass laws allowing women to own property. The abolitionist movement and the women's rights movement had common roots, but they disagreed over which had greater priority.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What drove Europeans to immigrate to the U.S. in the mid-1800s?
2. What were the main values preached during the Second Great Awakening?
3. Who were most active in the reform movements of the mid-1800s?
4. What were the points of disagreement inside the abolitionist movement?
5. What was the Underground Railroad?
6. What were some of the ways that women were unequal in society?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



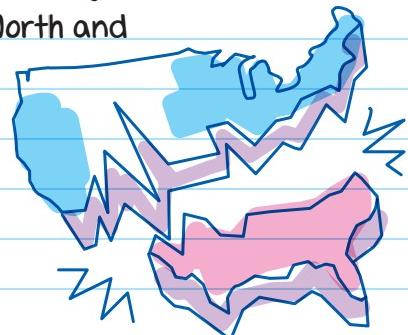
1. Overcrowding, poverty, and persecution in Europe; opportunities in the U.S.
2. The Second Great Awakening challenged traditional Protestant views and taught personal responsibility. It also emphasized individual power of destiny and salvation, as well as an emotional attachment to religion. The preachers wanted to improve the world.
3. Middle-class women
4. People disagreed about whether African Americans should return to Africa, whether a racial hierarchy should exist, and how to go about advocating for change.
5. It was a network that organized transportation and hiding places for fugitive slaves.
6. Most women were not educated, could not vote, and did not receive equal pay for equal work. If they did work, the money they earned belonged to their husbands or fathers.

Unit



Civil War and Reconstruction 1850s-1870s

As the U.S. approached its seventieth year of independence, the relationship between the states and the federal government still wasn't resolved. Slavery remained a contentious issue. How would the North and South reconcile their differences? They couldn't, and the result was the Civil War.





Chapter 21



NORTH VERSUS SOUTH

By the mid-nineteenth century, the U.S. stretched from the East Coast to the West Coast. As states continued to apply for statehood, the debate over abolition went on.

The WILMOT PROVISO

Representative David Wilmot of Pennsylvania had proposed the **WILMOT PROVISO**, suggesting that slavery be banned in any territory acquired through the Mexican Cession.

It passed in the House, but Southerners prevented its passage in the Senate.

PROVISO

a part of a law that restricts something

The ELECTION of 1848

When the Wilmot Proviso failed, a new political party formed: the **FREE-SOIL PARTY**. They wanted to keep new territories and states free of slavery. They nominated former President Martin Van Buren against the Whig candidate

ZACHARY TAYLOR and Democrat Lewis Cass (a senator from Michigan). Taylor won the election. The Free-Soil candidates won some seats in Congress.

PROPOSED
THE MISSOURI
COMPROMISE, TOO

COMPROMISE of 1850

When California applied to the Union as a free state, some Southern states threatened to secede. Henry Clay had a compromise:

California would be admitted as a free state.

Texas would give up some of its land and the government would help pay off its war debts.

Popular sovereignty would decide positions on slavery in territories and new states, which meant that settlers would decide the issue.

DON'T FORGET—THIS MEANS AUTHORITY OF THE PEOPLE

The slave trade (but not slavery itself) would be banned in Washington, D.C.

Congress would pass stronger laws requiring the capture and return of runaway slaves.

After President Taylor died suddenly and his vice president, **MILLARD FILLMORE**, took his place, the Compromise of 1850 was passed into law.

The FUGITIVE SLAVE ACT

Maybe the most controversial part of the Compromise of 1850 was the **FUGITIVE SLAVE ACT**, which required Northern citizens to cooperate with and assist slave-catchers, and denied runaway slaves a fair trial (they were tried in a separate court). Many free blacks fled to Canada, and some Northern whites practiced **CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE**, refusing to follow the new law. In Massachusetts, abolitionist **HARRIET BEECHER STOWE** was inspired to write **UNCLE TOM'S CABIN** (1852), a story about the harsh realities of slavery. It became one of the most influential novels of the nineteenth century. The Fugitive Slave Act further divided the nation. The North hated it. The South felt vindicated. The North also passed Personal Liberty Laws, which basically negated the Fugitive Slave Act and proved to the South that the North was not enforcing the law.

“CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE” was an essay written by Henry David Thoreau on the idea that people should refuse to follow the laws or commands of a government when they seem unjust.

The KANSAS-NEBRASKA ACT

In the presidential election of 1852, little-known Democratic candidate **FRANKLIN PIERCE** of New Hampshire defeated the Whig nominee, war hero Winfield Scott. At this time, some western land, including Kansas and Nebraska, was not yet organized, and Illinois senator **STEPHEN A. DOUGLAS** wanted to build a railroad that ran through it from Chicago

DOCTRINE

a theory or position
on an issue

to the Pacific. He initially proposed making **KANSAS** and **NEBRASKA** U.S. territories that, under the terms of the Missouri Compromise, would be free. However, Douglas also knew that Southerners would object to this idea. Backed by President Pierce, he proposed the **KANSAS-NEBRASKA ACT**, which would invoke the **DOCTRINE** of popular sovereignty and allow the people there to determine the slavery issue. The act passed, and the Missouri Compromise was made obsolete.

BLEEDING KANSAS

During the March 1855 territorial elections in Kansas, thousands of so-called **BORDER RUFFIANS** crossed the border to vote from the slave state of Missouri. In fact, about four times more people voted in Kansas than lived there. A pro-slavery local government took control. Antislavery settlers started their own government, creating two governments for one state.



RUFFIAN

a tough, lawless person; a bully

In May 1856, the pro-slavery government sent a group to Lawrence, Kansas, to arrest the rival government, but they had fled. The pro-slavery group ransacked the city in the **SACK OF LAWRENCE**. In response, the passionate abolitionist **JOHN BROWN** led his group in the **POTTAWATOMIE CREEK MASSACRE** of pro-slavery

SACK

to pillage and plunder

Kansans. Over the summer, hundreds of people were killed in "BLEEDING KANSAS" before federal troops restored order.

BLEEDING SUMNER

Violence also broke out in Congress after Senator CHARLES SUMNER of Massachusetts criticized people who were pro-slavery, specifically Andrew Butler of South Carolina. Butler's cousin, Representative PRESTON BROOKS, beat Sumner over the head with a cane in the Senate chambers. Sumner was badly injured.

The REPUBLICAN PARTY and the ELECTION of 1856

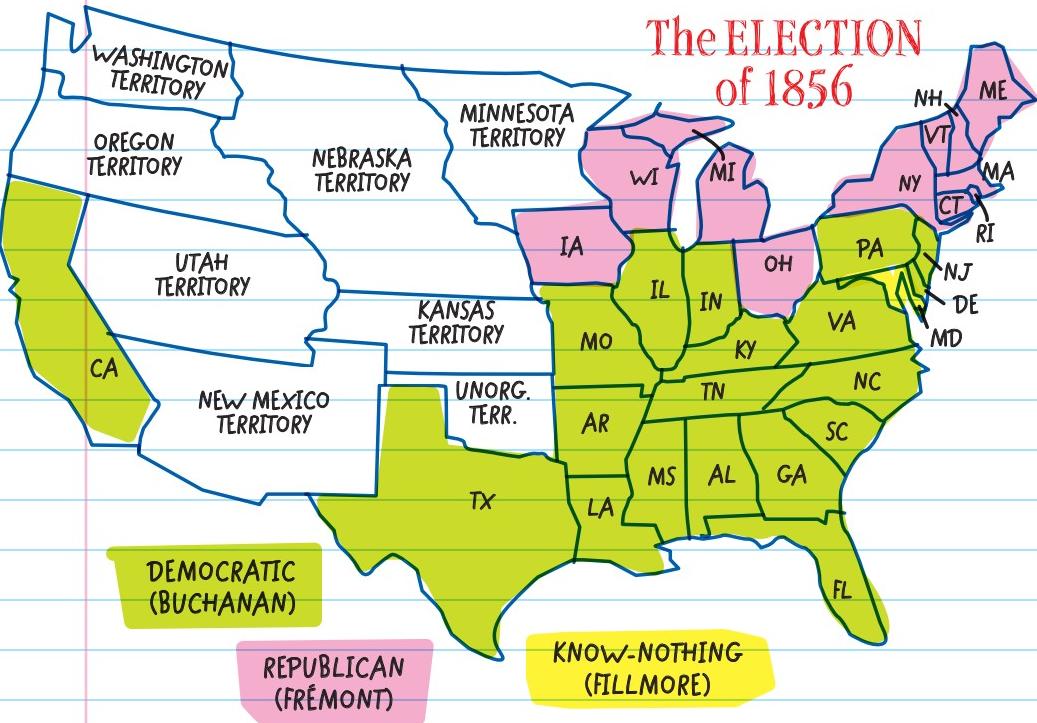
Both the Democratic and Whig parties were splitting on sectional lines. The antislavery Whigs decided to join the Northern Democrats and Free-Soilers to create the REPUBLICAN PARTY.

Though some names have stayed the same, modern political parties are not the same as their roots.

The Republican Party nominated John C. Frémont of California for president, and the Democratic Party nominated JAMES BUCHANAN, a Pennsylvanian who favored compromise. The Know-Nothing Party nominated former president Millard Fillmore. Buchanan won the South and won the election.

Frémont's campaign slogan was "Free Soil, Free Men and Frémont."

The ELECTION of 1856



DRED SCOTT

In 1857, a Supreme Court case about an enslaved man named **DRED SCOTT** fueled the abolitionist cause. Scott was a slave to an army doctor in Missouri, John Emerson, who brought him along on travels to Illinois, where slavery was illegal. After Emerson passed away in 1843, Scott petitioned his widow for freedom, but she refused. Scott continued living in slavery, but a few years later, with the help of lawyers from the North, he sued for his freedom, making the argument that he was free after having lived in a free place.

After a decade of appeals, the Supreme Court took on the issue in the case of **DRED SCOTT v. SANFORD** (also called the **DRED SCOTT DECISION**). Chief Justice Roger Taney wrote the 7-2 decision that ruled against Scott because:

1. Scott didn't have the right to sue because he was only a piece of property, not a citizen.
2. The government can't seize private property (Scott) from a citizen (Emerson) without due process of law.
3. Congress can't ban slavery in the territories, because that would violate the property rights of people bringing slaves there.
4. Therefore, the Missouri Compromise and other popular sovereignty decisions were unconstitutional.

The nation's highest court had ruled that abolishing slavery was unconstitutional.

The LINCOLN-DOUGLAS DEBATES

In the senatorial election of 1858, Senator Stephen A. Douglas of Illinois faced a new young challenger, **ABRAHAM LINCOLN**, a Republican lawyer who had served one term in the House of Representatives and eight years in the state legislature. Since Lincoln wasn't very well known, he challenged Douglas

to a series of debates, the **LINCOLN-DOUGLAS DEBATES**. They were both against slavery, but they met seven times in cities and towns throughout Illinois to debate what to do about it.

Douglas was afraid that Lincoln believed in equality of the races. Lincoln said that blacks were entitled to the rights listed in the Declaration of Independence but also stated that they weren't equal to whites in every way. Lincoln gave his famous "House Divided" speech, while Douglas argued the **FREEPORT DOCTRINE**—a belief that territories could exclude slavery through local legislation. Douglas won the election, but Lincoln got national name recognition out of it.

The RAID on HARPERS FERRY

John Brown led another raid, this time in **HARPERS FERRY, VIRGINIA**. On October 16, 1859, his abolitionists raided an arsenal so they could arm slaves for an uprising. Local slaves feared joining his rebellion, and Brown and others were captured. John Brown was hanged for treason and murder, a **MARTYR** for Northern abolitionists.

The raid had a huge impact on the South, which feared armed rebellion by slaves.

MARTYR

someone who dies for his or her beliefs

The ELECTION of 1860

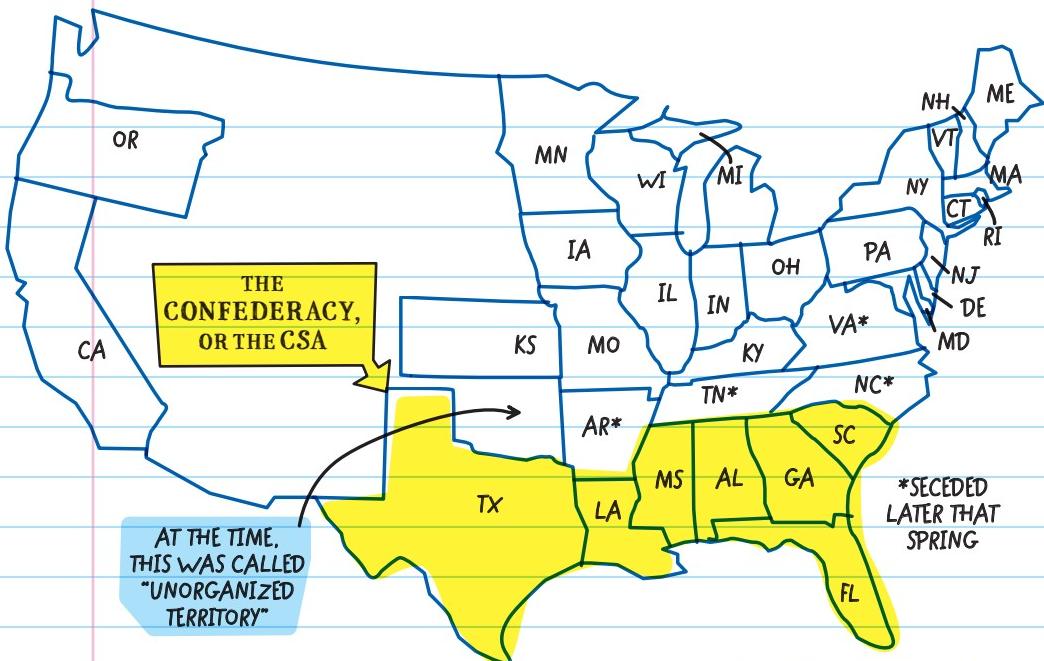
Northern Democrats nominated Stephen Douglas, who supported popular sovereignty; Southern Democrats chose **JOHN BRECKINRIDGE** from Kentucky, who supported

slavery. A new party, the **CONSTITUTIONAL UNION PARTY** (compromise and union at any cost), nominated **JOHN BELL** of Tennessee. Abraham Lincoln, who believed slavery should be banned in the territories, received the nomination from the Republican Party. Lincoln received only 40 percent of the popular vote and did not carry a single Southern state. However, he swept the North, along with California and Oregon, and became the sixteenth president of the U.S.

SECESSION

Although Lincoln did not favor abolishing slavery in states where it already existed, he had said that putting a stop to slavery's expansion would, sooner or later, cause the institution to fall apart. That idea made the South very worried about having him in the White House. Within days of Lincoln's victory, the South Carolina legislature met for a special session, arguing that, just as a state could choose to enter a union, it was possible for a state to choose to leave. On December 20, 1860, South Carolina seceded from the U.S. by repealing its ratification of the Constitution. While proponents of states' rights believed that secession was a legal right, there were those who believed that South Carolina's decision was a revolt. However, the South claimed that the government had violated its rights by not protecting slavery.





The CONFEDERATE STATES of AMERICA

Following in South Carolina's footsteps,

Texas, Louisiana, Mississippi, Alabama, Florida, and Georgia also seceded. On February 4, 1861, these states met to establish their own government as the **CONFEDERATE STATES OF AMERICA**. They elected **JEFFERSON DAVIS** as president.

CONFEDERATE
part of an alliance
or confederacy

LINCOLN'S FIRST INAUGURAL ADDRESS

Abraham Lincoln was inaugurated on March 4, 1861. The main points of his first **INAUGURAL ADDRESS** were:

INAUGURAL

having to do with an inauguration, the ceremony at which someone is sworn into office

Legal **REDRESS** and revolutionary actions are different; secession is not an acceptable choice.

REDRESS
relief from an injury
or wrongdoing

The Union is perpetual, therefore the CSA doesn't actually exist and is a band of rebels living in the U.S.

Federal property in the South will remain federal property.

Slavery shouldn't be completely abolished, but it shouldn't spread.

War is not a reasonable option.

The people of the United States should all be friends, not enemies, because the United States is one country.

The address was meant to reassure Southerners that Lincoln would not interfere with slavery in the states where it already existed.

Lincoln's inaugural address is well known for its eloquence: "In your hands, my dissatisfied fellow-countrymen, and not in mine, is the momentous issue of civil war. The Government will not assail you. You can have no conflict without being yourselves the aggressors. You have no oath registered in heaven to destroy the Government, while I shall have the most solemn one to preserve, protect, and defend it.... I am loath to close. We are not enemies, but friends. We must not be enemies. Though passion may have strained it must not break our bonds of affection. The mystic chords of memory, stretching from every battlefield and patriot grave to every living heart and hearthstone all over this broad land, will yet swell the chorus of the Union, when again touched, as surely they will be, by the better angels of our nature."





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What was the platform of the Free-Soil Party?
2. What did the Fugitive Slave Act require of Northern citizens?
3. What is popular sovereignty?
4. How was the Republican Party founded?
5. What was one reason given by the Supreme Court in the Dred Scott decision?
6. What were Lincoln's prewar opinions about racial equality?
7. What were the secessionists' arguments for the legality of their actions?
8. What did Lincoln think about the legality of secession?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. They believed that new states and territories ought to be free of slavery.
2. That Northern citizens had to cooperate with and assist slave-catchers and that slaves would be tried in special courts
3. The belief that states ought to let the people decide about slavery
4. Antislavery Whigs and Northern Democrats joined forces with the Free-Soilers.
5. Dred Scott did not have the right to sue because he was not a citizen.
6. He did not believe in equality but he thought slavery was wrong.
7. They believed that the Union got its power because all of the states independently agreed to participate, and they could choose to leave at any time.
8. Lincoln believed that secession was not legally possible and that the Confederacy was in rebellion.

#5 has more than one correct answer.

★ Chapter 22 ★

The CIVIL WAR

FORT SUMTER

Soon after his inauguration, President Lincoln learned that supplies for federal troops at **FORT SUMTER**, which was located in the harbor of Charleston, South Carolina, were running out. Sending more supplies could provoke war. After alerting the CSA, Lincoln sent unarmed supply ships. In response, on April 12, 1861, the Confederacy attacked Fort Sumter. The fort surrendered two days later. The **CIVIL WAR** had begun.

CIVIL WAR

a war within one country, rather than between two different nations

BORDER STATES

Lincoln called on state militias to supply troops for what he estimated would be three months of fighting. In response, North Carolina, Tennessee, Virginia, and Arkansas seceded—they refused to bear arms against their fellow Southerners and saw Lincoln's actions as unjust. Border states where

slavery was legal but not such a big part of the economy—Delaware, Kentucky, Maryland, and Missouri—stayed in the Union. In 1863, the part of Virginia loyal to the Union—WEST VIRGINIA—became the USA's thirty-fifth state.

NORTH VERSUS SOUTH

The North (the YANKEES, or the UNION, who wore blue uniforms) had a bigger population, more transport options (especially railroads), more factories and production capacity, and more money.

The South (the REBELS, or the CONFEDERATES, who wore gray uniforms) had influence on the world's cotton market.

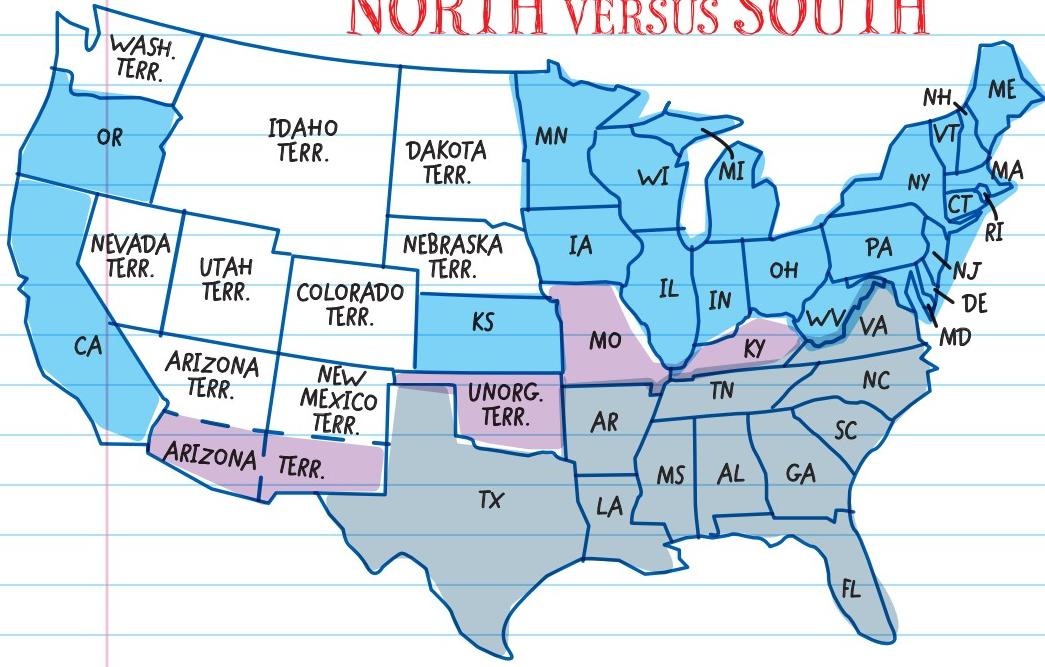
The South needed to fight a defensive war. They hoped for foreign intervention and planned to hold out until the North got weary of the war.

The North needed to fight a more active war and subdue the Rebels.

Both armies consisted mostly of inexperienced volunteers who signed up for only 90 days of fighting.

Together, North and South faced the scary reality of a war that put brother against brother.

NORTH VERSUS SOUTH



STATES
(UNION)

CONFEDERACY
(CSA)

CLAIMED BY CSA

The FIRST BATTLE of BULL RUN

In July of 1861, the Union army tried to take Richmond, Virginia, which had become the CSA capital. The Confederate troops met the Union army at **MANASSAS**, Virginia, which was a key railroad junction near **BULL RUN CREEK**. Neither side was ready. On July 21, the Union forces crossed the creek and pushed back all of the Rebels, except for the unit led by General Thomas Jackson, who received the nickname "Stonewall" for refusing to move. Under **STONEWALL JACKSON**, the



Confederate army pushed the Union troops back to Washington, D.C. The First Battle of Bull Run showed both sides that this war was going to be more dangerous and difficult than expected.

REBEL YELL

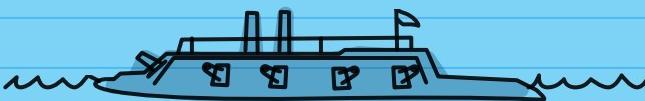
The Confederate army was known for screaming loudly when they were on the attack, so their battle cry was known as the “rebel yell.”

GEORGE McCLELLAN and ULYSSES S. GRANT

Lincoln brought in **GENERAL GEORGE McCLELLAN** to lead the Union **ARMY OF THE POTOMAC**. McClellan trained his troops for almost a year but, convinced that the Confederate troops were too powerful, hesitated to attack. Meanwhile, Union forces in the West, led by **ULYSSES S. GRANT**, were taking forts, gaining ground, and taking over trade and supply routes. **ADMIRAL DAVID FARRAGUT** led navy troops to take New Orleans, wrapping his wooden ships in heavy chains to protect them like **IRONCLADS**.

NEW MILITARY TECHNOLOGY

One of the most significant new inventions of the Civil War was the **IRONCLAD** warship, a ship that was armored with iron. Other major innovations were the **REPEATING RIFLE** (which could fire more than one bullet before it had to be reloaded) and the **MINIÉ BALL BULLET**; soldiers could shoot farther and more accurately. War became a whole lot deadlier.



THE BIG BATTLES:

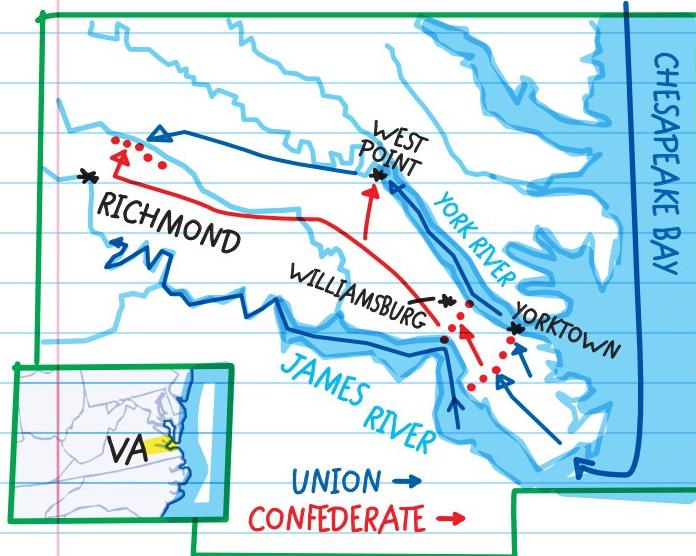
The BATTLE of SHILOH

The Confederacy's western troops retreated to Corinth, Mississippi. Grant's army followed closely behind, stopping near **SHILOH CHURCH**, in Tennessee, to wait for reinforcements.

On April 6, 1862, Albert Sidney Johnston, leader of the Confederacy's western troops, and his soldiers ambushed Grant's camp. Over two days, the Union forces were able to push the Confederates back into Mississippi, but both sides lost huge numbers of soldiers in the **BATTLE OF SHILOH**.

The PENINSULA CAMPAIGN

As Lincoln was frustrated with McClellan's hesitations, McClellan finally announced a plan to move the entire army by boat to Virginia's Lower Peninsula—a huge and slow



operation. He wanted to enter the James River Peninsula to attack Richmond from the south. By the time he got there, the Confederates were ready to attack.

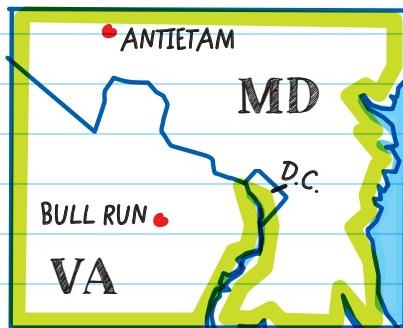
McClellan's army suffered heavy losses and was forced to retreat by the **CONFEDERATE ARMY OF NORTHERN VIRGINIA**, led by **ROBERT E. LEE**.

The SECOND BATTLE of BULL RUN

In August 1862, in the **SECOND BATTLE OF BULL RUN**, the Rebels gained another victory.

ANTETAM

Lee decided to attack the North. A victory there would take the war to Northern soil, encouraging Britain to join the war. (It was also designed to help Virginia farmers harvest their crops by moving the battle north.) In September 1862, the Confederate army crossed the Potomac into Frederick, Maryland.



Lee planned to divide his army into three units, which made him vulnerable to attack. A Union soldier found a copy of Lee's marching orders in an abandoned Rebel camp. When McClellan learned of the plan, he was slow to act when he could have used this secret information to get an advantage.

Two days later, on September 17, the two armies met near Sharpsburg, Maryland, at the **BATTLE OF ANTETAM**, which became the single deadliest one-day battle in all of U.S. history.

After Lee retreated, McClellan didn't follow with an attack. Lincoln fired McClellan.

COMBINED CASUALTIES
WERE 23,000 KILLED,
WOUNDED, OR MISSING.

The EMANCIPATION PROCLAMATION

According to Lincoln, the Civil War wasn't being fought to end slavery. It was to preserve the Union. At first he didn't want to upset the border states.

EMANCIPATION
setting free



The Union victory at Antietam gave him more confidence. On January 1, 1863, Lincoln issued the **EMANCIPATION PROCLAMATION**. He did not have the constitutional power to end slavery, but he had the authority to seize enemy property—including slaves. So this military order could free all slaves in any area that was in rebellion. The Emancipation Proclamation transformed the Civil War into a moral crusade against slavery and it encouraged some slaves to escape. However, the Union army could not actively ensure that slaves were freed. Nonetheless, it also prevented foreign intervention because no European power would fight to restore or preserve slavery.

Although many whites doubted black soldiers' courage and ability to fight, they—most famously the **54TH MASSACHUSETTS VOLUNTEERS** regiment—proved their bravery after Congress allowed them to fight. There were **175 UNITED STATES COLORED TROOPS (USCT)** regiments by the end of the Civil War, which constituted 10 percent of the entire Union army.

The HOME FRONT

Because so many men were away fighting, women took on more responsibility in farming, business, and manufacturing. Women also supported the war effort as nurses; nurse CLARA BARTON later founded the AMERICAN RED CROSS.

High demand for supplies bolstered the Northern economy. Shortages and inflation damaged the Southern economy and hurt Southern morale.

Both the Union and Confederate governments imposed an INCOME TAX and issued new currency; in the North, this money was called GREENBACK money.

The need for soldiers led to the institution of a draft on both sides. Because rich men could buy their way out of it, riots ensued in New York City, and over one hundred people died in the July 1863 draft riots.

HABEAS CORPUS

Concerned about the damage the opposition at home could do to Union morale, Lincoln suspended the WRIT OF HABEAS CORPUS. That is, he allowed people to be arrested without a specified cause.

According to the Constitution, the president can ask Congress to suspend the writ of habeas corpus in an emergency but cannot act on his own. Lincoln's decision stirred controversy, but Congress validated it when it began its next session.

In Latin, "habeas corpus" means to "have the body." Literally, it means that a person can't be charged with murder unless a body is presented to prove that the crime took place. In law, the "writ" (or legal order) of habeas corpus means that a person can't be kept in jail unless those detaining him have the legal authority to do so.

FREDERICKSBURG and CHANCELLORSVILLE

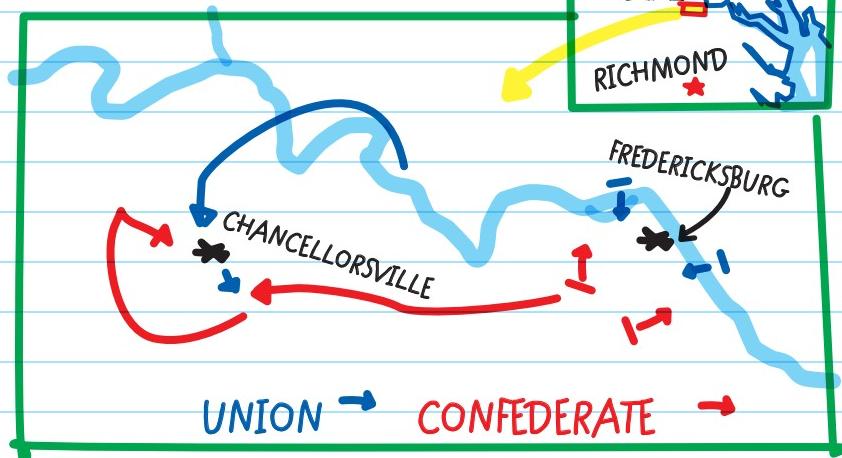
After firing McClellan, Lincoln put **AMBROSE BURNSIDE** in charge. The Rebels and General Lee forced the Union to retreat in the December 1862 **BATTLE OF FREDERICKSBURG**. It was one of the worst defeats of the Union army, who lost more than 12,500 men. Burnside resigned. **GENERAL JOSEPH HOOKER** took his place.

Remember the not-so-great Union generals McClellan, Burnside, and Hooker with this mnemonic device:

**MAKE
BETTER
HEROES.**

CHANCELLORSVILLE WAS LEE'S GREATEST VICTORY, DESPITE LOSING JACKSON.

In May of 1863, Hooker led the Union army in an attack on Chancellorsville, but they were again forced to retreat, even though Stonewall Jackson died of wounds from the battle. Hooker resigned. He was replaced by **GEORGE MEADE**.



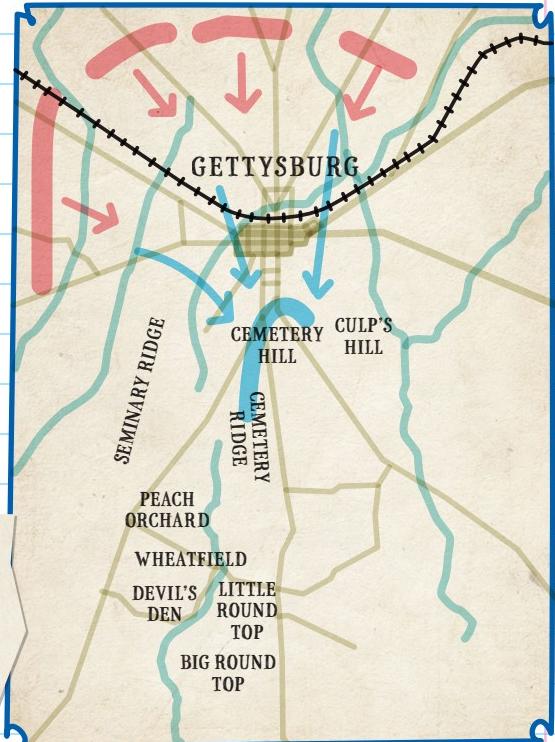
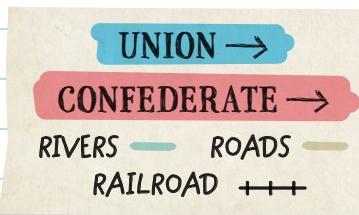
THE BIG ONE: THE BATTLE OF GETTYSBURG

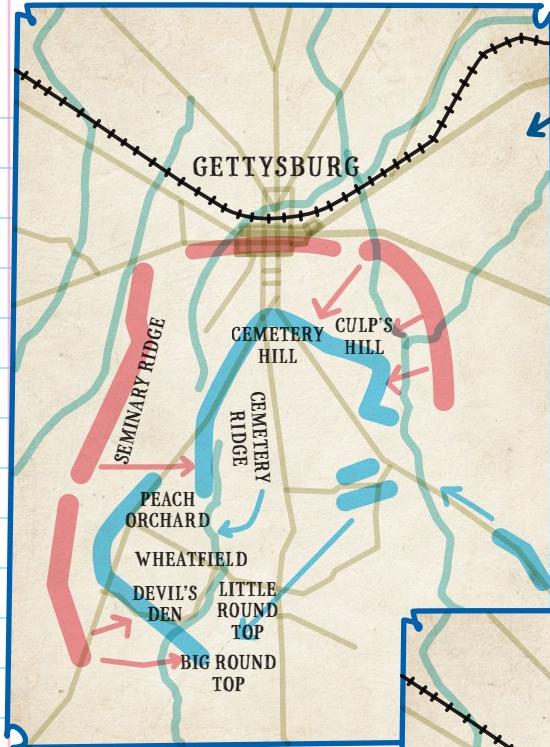
Lee took another chance on invading the North. In June of 1863, Lee's army entered Pennsylvania and searched for supplies in the town of Gettysburg, unaware that Union cavalry was there as well. It was an accidental encounter that blew up into the most famous battle of the Civil War.



TIMELINE:

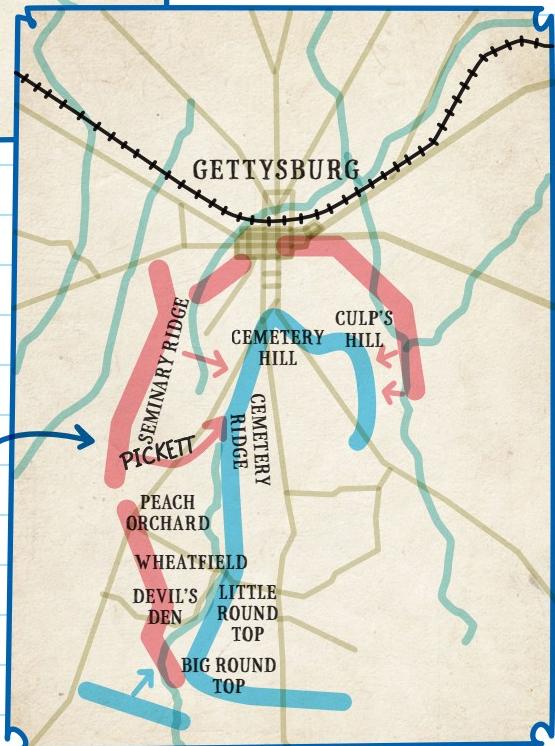
July 1: After the Rebels pushed the outnumbered Union forces back into the town, the Union troops regrouped on **CEMETERY RIDGE** and **CULP'S HILL**, strategic positions on high ground. Both sides called for reinforcements.





July 2: Lee ordered the Confederate army to gain the high ground on the hills **BIG ROUND TOP** and **LITTLE ROUND TOP**, but the Union held on to these positions after heavy fighting.

July 3: When the Union line appeared to be weakened, Lee ordered **GENERAL GEORGE PICKETT** to attack the center of the Union line. In **PICKETT'S CHARGE**, the Confederates marched directly into heavy Union fire.



July 4: Lee and his army began to retreat back to Virginia.

The **BATTLE OF GETTYSBURG** was a major victory for the Yankees and a turning point in the Civil War. Pickett's Charge became known as the "high-water mark of the Confederacy" because victory would never again be so close for the Confederates. Gettysburg is also famous as the site of Lincoln's **GETTYSBURG ADDRESS**. On November 19, 1863, during the dedication of a soldiers' cemetery there, Lincoln gave a two-minute-long speech on the importance of the Union's cause.

The first line of the **GETTYSBURG ADDRESS**, "Four score and seven years ago, our fathers brought forth, upon this continent..." is a clue to the year in which it was delivered. A "score" is 20, so four score and seven = $4 \times 20 + 7 = 87$ years. $1863 - 87 = 1776$.

Vicksburg also fell to the Union on July 4, 1863, which meant that the North controlled the entire Mississippi River.

The VIRGINIA CAMPAIGN

After all the disappointing Union commanders, in early 1864, Lincoln put Ulysses S. Grant in charge of all military operations so the Union armies could act as one. Grant decided that the war would be an attack on Southern morale and resources. That is, the Union would practice **TOTAL WAR**.

TOTAL WAR
war that also uses/attacks civilians and nonmilitary resources

In the **BATTLE OF THE WILDERNESS** on May 5 and 6, 1864, Grant pushed into Virginia despite heavy losses, knowing that his army was larger than Lee's. He pushed on no matter how many casualties his army suffered. From June 9, 1864, to March 25, 1865, Lee was forced to defend Richmond and was vastly outnumbered in the **SIEGE OF PETERSBURG**. Grant broke through the Confederates' lines and forced Lee to abandon his fortifications. Lee's army had dwindled down to just 27,000 men, compared to Grant's force of 120,000.

SHERMAN in the DEEP SOUTH

In September 1864, **GENERAL WILLIAM TECUMSEH SHERMAN** marched with Union forces to Atlanta and destroyed the city. He continued on his **MARCH TO THE SEA**, capturing the city of Savannah, then moving north into the Carolinas. In this terrifying campaign, Sherman's army destroyed plantations and burned fields. He wanted to destroy the economy and morale of the South. He did—and he stirred up long-lasting resentment.

William Tecumseh Sherman was named after the Native American Shawnee chief Tecumseh.

He wasn't proud of it; he became famous for stating later that "the only good Indian is a dead Indian."

The ELECTION of 1864

Until mid-1864, Lincoln had been in a bad position for reelection. After victories in Gettysburg and the South in the summer and fall of 1864, Lincoln won in a landslide against George McClellan. It was seen as a mandate (command) for emancipation. On January 31, 1865, Congress passed the **THIRTEENTH AMENDMENT**, banning slavery and making the Emancipation Proclamation a reality. It was quickly ratified by the states.

APPOMATTOX and the END of the WAR

On April 2, the government of the CSA fled, burning the city of Richmond behind them so that it wouldn't be any use to the Union army. Lee reluctantly decided he had no choice but to surrender.

On April 9, 1865, Lee and Grant met at **APPOMATTOX COURT HOUSE**. Grant offered the following terms of surrender: The Confederate soldiers would be fed and allowed to return home with their property and horses. Lee accepted. The last Confederate army surrendered on May 26. The Civil War was over with a victory for the Union—and now it was time to rebuild the country.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Which side did each border state take during the Civil War?
2. What did the North and South learn from the First Battle of Bull Run?
3. Why didn't President Lincoln like General McClellan?
4. Whom did the Emancipation Proclamation actually emancipate?
5. What is the writ of habeas corpus?
6. What is total war?
7. What does the Thirteenth Amendment signify?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Delaware, Kentucky, Maryland, and Missouri sided with the North. North Carolina, Tennessee, Virginia, and Arkansas sided with the South.
2. They saw that the war would be difficult and dangerous.
3. McClellan was too hesitant.
4. Slaves in states that were in rebellion (but the Union army could not actively ensure that slaves were freed)
5. It legally guarantees that if you are arrested you must be given a specific cause.
6. Total war involves civilians and resources, not just soldiers.
7. A ban on slavery

★ Chapter 23 ★

RECONSTRUCTION

RECONSTRUCTION

Reconstruction was the name of the era after the Civil War ended, lasting from 1865 to 1877. The government and people struggled to find a balance between uniting the country and assisting former slaves.

The FREEDMEN'S BUREAU

Lincoln and Congress established the **FREEDMEN'S BUREAU**, an agency whose goal was to help the newly "freed men" by providing education, food, housing, and medical aid. The bureau was understaffed and lacked funding, but managed to set up schools and universities for former slaves.

The Freedmen's Bureau was under General O. O. Howard and Howard University was named in his honor.

LINCOLN'S ASSASSINATION

On April 14, 1865, only a month after the Freedmen's Bureau was established and just days after Lee and Grant met at Appomattox to negotiate the South's surrender, President Lincoln and his wife attended a play at **FORD'S THEATER** in

Washington. During the play, Lincoln was shot in the head by Confederate sympathizer **JOHN WILKES BOOTH**

and died the following morning. President Lincoln was the first American president to be **ASSASSINATED**. Booth's coconspirators attacked the secretary of state, William Seward, and severely wounded him, and were also supposed to kill Vice President Andrew Johnson. Lincoln's death destroyed any hope for an orderly Reconstruction.

JOHNSON'S RECONSTRUCTION and BLACK CODES

Lincoln's vice president, former Democrat **ANDREW JOHNSON**, was sworn into office. Although Johnson followed Lincoln's agenda for Reconstruction per his presidential duties, he did not believe in racial equality, and his interpretation of Reconstruction was lenient toward the South. Every Southern state except Texas created new governments, and Johnson approved them. Their legislatures passed new laws. Many of the laws were **BLACK CODES**.

DISCRIMINATORY laws that denied the **CIVIL RIGHTS** of blacks in the South and prevented the Freedmen's Bureau from doing its work.

ASSASSINATE

to kill an important person, usually for political reasons

DISCRIMINATORY

treatment against people based on the group or class to which they belong, such as race

CIVIL RIGHTS

rights that protect the ability to participate in activities granted to citizens, without discrimination; personal liberties

Some members of Congress—the **RADICAL REPUBLICANS**—decided that the federal government should intervene. Congress gave the Freedmen's Bureau more powers and passed the **CIVIL RIGHTS ACT OF 1866**, which confirmed that blacks were citizens and overturned the *DRED SCOTT* decision of 1857.

RADICAL
extreme

The FOURTEENTH AMENDMENT

The **FOURTEENTH AMENDMENT** to the Constitution was passed in June 1868. It ensured that any person (except Native Americans) born or naturalized in the U.S. was a citizen with full rights, such as **DUE PROCESS**. All of the states had to accept these amendments to reenter the Union. This led to:

DUE PROCESS

the normal way that the law is practiced; the process that is due to each citizen

riots in the South;

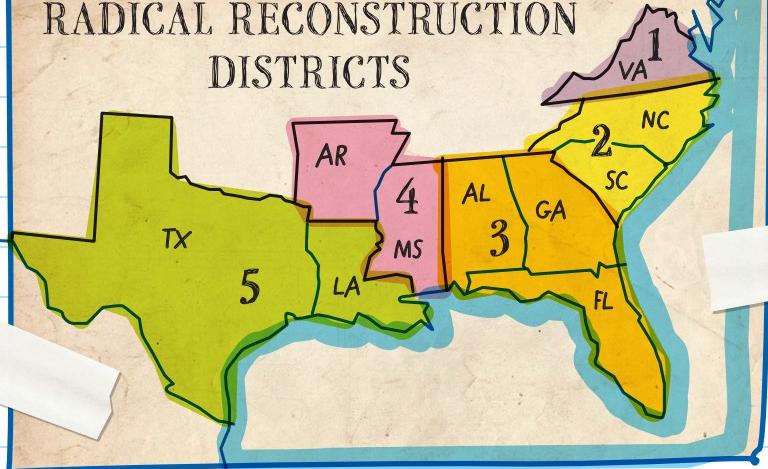
an influx of black voters; and

an unsuccessful attempt by Johnson to oppose it.

RADICAL RECONSTRUCTION

The Republicans initiated **RADICAL RECONSTRUCTION**. Congress, not the president, took charge of Reconstruction efforts. In March 1867, Congress passed the **RECONSTRUCTION ACTS**, which divided the South into five military districts that would be controlled by a military commander until the Southern states were readmitted to the Union.

RADICAL RECONSTRUCTION DISTRICTS



IMPEACHMENT

Aware that Johnson opposed Radical Reconstruction, Congress also passed

the **TENURE OF OFFICE ACT**, which limited executive power by requiring the president to secure congressional approval before he could remove members of his cabinet. During the summer of 1867, when Congress wasn't in session, President Johnson fired his secretary of war, Edwin Stanton. Congress voted to impeach Johnson for doing it without their approval (and, unofficially, for disagreeing with Congress). In February 1868, Johnson was tried in the Senate, but was acquitted by just one vote. He didn't run for reelection.

TENURE

term or period in an office or position

The ELECTION of 1868

In the presidential election of 1868, the Democratic former governor of New York, **HORATIO SEYMOUR**, ran against Republican war hero Ulysses S. Grant. Having garnered

the support of Republicans in the North and newly

ENFRANCHISED African Americans in
the South, Grant won the election.

VIRGINIA, MISSISSIPPI, AND TEXAS WERE
NOT ALLOWED TO PARTICIPATE BECAUSE THEY
WEREN'T FULLY RECONSTRUCTED YET.

ENFRANCHISE
to set free or endow
with a franchise, such
as the right to vote

Because African Americans turned out in high numbers to vote in the presidential election, Republicans feared that Southern states would try to limit their voting in future elections. In 1869, Congress proposed the **FIFTEENTH AMENDMENT**, which made it illegal to deny citizens the right to vote based on race.

The Fifteenth Amendment did not make any qualifications regarding gender. That is, women still could not vote.



LIFE for FORMER SLAVES

In 1870, **HIRAM REVELS** became the first African American in the U.S. Senate, representing Mississippi. In 1875,

BLANCHE K. BRUCE, also from Mississippi, became the second black senator. Most former slaves remained poor. General Sherman had proposed a plan to divide plantations among freedmen (so everyone would literally get "**40 ACRES AND A MULE**"), but this was opposed by Congress. Most former

slaves resorted to either contract work on plantations or the **SHARECROPPING**

SHARECROPPING
a system whereby farmers receive supplies and land in exchange for providing a share of the crop to the landowner

system, which often forced them into a lifetime of debt to landowners.

LYNCH

to execute someone (usually by hanging) without a trial

The KU KLUX KLAN

In 1866, a secret organization called the **KU KLUX KLAN** (the **KKK**) was organized in Tennessee with the purpose of violently opposing civil rights. Wearing disguises and hiding their faces, members attacked individuals,

LYNCING many. Local authorities often turned a blind eye. The **FORCE ACTS** passed by Congress and signed by Grant allowed the military to enforce the Fourteenth Amendment, which helped destroy the **KKK**. However, it would be resurrected in the 1920s.

CARPETBAGGERS AND SCALAWAGS

Northerners who came to work in the South as reformers were known as **CARPETBAGGERS**, after the luggage made of carpet that they used. Carpetbaggers were accused of trying to make a profit from Reconstruction. Southerners who supported the government were known as **SCALAWAGS**, or rascals. They were seen as traitors to the South.

The PANIC of 1873

In September 1873, a Philadelphia financial firm called **JAY COOKE AND COMPANY** went bankrupt, setting off the **PANIC OF 1873**. A major economic depression followed. Republicans were blamed.

The COMPROMISE of 1877

In the election of 1876, the Republican Party ran **RUTHERFORD B. HAYES**, the moderate governor of Ohio, against Democrat **SAMUEL TILDEN**, who fought corruption as governor of New York. Although it appeared that Tilden had won, the Republicans disputed electoral votes from the newly reconstructed states. Congress appointed a commission that led to the **COMPROMISE OF 1877**: Hayes would become president, but in return federal troops would leave the South and provide Southerners with aid for public projects. The Compromise of 1877 essentially ended Reconstruction.

SOUTHERN "REDEMPTION"

REDEEM
to recover or make amends for

Southern Democrats retook control of their state governments. Seen as the restorers of the "true South," they became known as **REDEEMERS**. They aimed to decrease taxes, decrease the size of government—and decrease racial equality. Although the Fifteenth Amendment guaranteed citizens the right to vote regardless of race, Southern states instituted **POLL TAXES** (requiring people to pay money to vote) and **LITERACY TESTS** (requiring a certain level of literacy to vote). These measures made it very difficult for former slaves to participate in government, but they did not have as much of an effect on whites: Most white men, even the poor and uneducated,

were **EXEMPTED** from both the tax and the literary test by **GRANDFATHER CLAUSES**, laws that protected men whose fathers or grandfathers voted before the Civil War (because they were white). These laws weren't specifically based on race, so they were allowed to continue. Southern states passed measures known as the **JIM CROW LAWS**, which kept black citizens and white citizens separate.

PLESSY v. FERGUSON

When Homer Plessy rode in a whites-only **SEGREGATED** railroad car and was arrested, he sued the railroad company. The Supreme Court ruled in the **PLESSY v. FERGUSON** decision that segregation was legal as long as facilities for blacks were "**SEPARATE BUT EQUAL**" to those for whites. The Civil War was over, but equality was still a long road away.

EXEMPT
freed from responsibility

SEGREGATION
the enforced separation of people, specifically on the basis of race



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. When was Reconstruction?
2. What does the Fourteenth Amendment do?
3. Why was President Johnson impeached?
4. To what does the phrase "40 acres and a mule" refer?
5. What was the Compromise of 1877?
6. What was a grandfather clause?
7. What was PLESSY v. FERGUSON?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. 1865–1877
2. It guarantees the right to due process and equal protection under the law.
3. He broke the Tenure of Office Act by firing a cabinet member without Congress's approval.
4. General Sherman proposed giving these things to former slaves, to be taken from plantations that would be split up, but Congress didn't agree to it.
5. Hayes would become president, but in return federal troops would leave the South and provide Southerners with aid for public projects.
6. A grandfather clause exempted those whose grandfathers could vote from other voting criteria, such as literacy tests and paying poll taxes.
7. The Supreme Court case that ruled that segregation was legal as long as facilities for blacks were "separate but equal" to those for whites



Unit



Reshaping the Nation 1850–1917

The developments that started before the Civil War continued after it. There was even more **EXPANSION**, more **MINING**, and more **INDUSTRY**.

In between the Civil War and World War I, the U.S. turned into the modern nation we recognize today—but getting there took work.



Chapter 24



★ TRAINS, BONANZAS, ★ ★ ★ ★ and ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ BUCKAROOS

EAST MEETS WEST

In the early 1860s, the **PONY EXPRESS**, a mail relay system using horses, connected the East and West. The telegraph was much faster and rendered the Pony Express obsolete. But the telegraph couldn't carry people or packages.



The TRANSCONTINENTAL RAILROAD

Between 1862 and 1864, Congress passed the **PACIFIC RAILWAY ACTS**. It **SUBSIDIZED** the **CENTRAL PACIFIC** and **UNION PACIFIC** railroad companies to build a transcontinental railroad.

SUBSIDIZE

to provide financial help, usually used when a government helps a business

They relied on cheap immigrant labor to lay tracks through harsh conditions and rugged terrain, and were especially reliant on the Chinese and Irish, who finished the dangerous work.

The Central Pacific line started in Sacramento, California, and the Union Pacific line started in Omaha, Nebraska. On May 10, 1869, the two railroads met in the middle at **PROMONTORY**, Utah, where Leland Stanford, president of the Central Pacific railroad and former governor of California, drove a **GOLDEN SPIKE** into the railroad to connect the two lines.

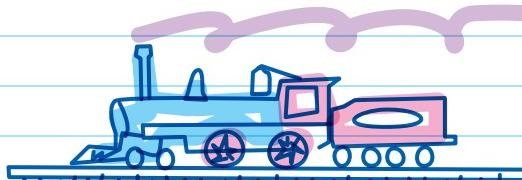
The golden spike was a giant nail used to attach the metal rail of a railroad to the wooden ties (the slats that run perpendicular to the rails) underneath.



TRAIN-ING the NATION

The railroad routes built during the late 1800s led to an explosion in the population of the West. Steel, cattle, and coal industries also grew, and locomotive technology expanded.

To make rail travel more uniform, in 1883 the railroad industry created four standard American time zones. (Before that, individual communities kept their own time according to the sun's position.) The railroad affected the life of every American.



COWBOYS and the “WILD WEST”

Post-Civil War prosperity in the Northeast created a demand for beef, so **RANCHERS** (particularly in Texas) raised a lot of cows, using the Great Plains's abundant amount of grass.

Cows need **COWHANDS**, or **COWBOYS**. Cowboys adopted the techniques and clothing of the Mexican vaqueros. When they arrived in a town, they had a reputation for being wild. The need for local lawmen or **VIGILANTES** to control cowboys and outlaws led to the myth of the **WILD WEST**—even though the West was no more wild than the rest of the country.

VIGILANTE

a person without legal authority who takes the law into his or her own hands



One of the most famous peace officers of the western frontier was **WYATT EARP**. He was also a farmer, buffalo hunter, and gambler, and his participation in a gunfight at the O.K. Corral made him an iconic figure of the Wild West.

HOME on the RANGE

The **HOMESTEAD ACT**, passed in 1862, opened up the land for any **HOMESTEADERS** who wanted to farm it, including women and African Americans. It gave settlers 160 acres of land to get started. Originally seen as a desert that couldn't be farmed, the Great Plains proved valuable to farmers who were determined to make use of the land.

HOMESTEADERS

people who claimed and agreed to settle on land promised to them by the Homestead Act

Barbed wire was patented by Joseph Glidden in 1871. It created hardships for Native Americans, but settlers could now fence in their property and contain cattle.

The FARMERS ORGANIZE



Farmers began to lose money. They blamed high shipping fees, high costs for supplies, and high interest payments.

In 1867, Oliver Hudson Kelley led farmers in creating the **NATIONAL GRANGE OF THE PATRONS OF HUSBANDRY**, an organization

that provided social services and set up cost-cutting

COOPERATIVES for farmers, although the cooperatives weren't successful. The National Grange also lobbied for state regulation of railroad fees and prices.

GRANGE

a place where grain is stored; an association of farmers

COOPERATIVE

an organization in which people share costs and profits

SILVER AND GOLD

In 1873, the nation put its currency on the **GOLD STANDARD**, meaning that the amount of paper money available was determined by the amount of gold in the treasury. Gold was scarce, so less money was in circulation; prices fell because each individual dollar was worth more. The **FREE SILVER** movement appealed to farmers because as prices fell, so did their profits. The Free Silver movement advocated adding silver into the mix to produce more money, which would lead to **INFLATION**.

POPULISM and the ELECTION of 1892

Following Presidents **JAMES GARFIELD** and **CHESTER A. ARTHUR**, **GROVER CLEVELAND** was elected in 1884. During Cleveland's presidency, Congress passed the **INTERSTATE COMMERCE ACT** in 1887, regulating the railroad industry.

SECOND PRESIDENT ASSASSINATED—THE ASSASSIN WANTED ARTHUR TO BE PRESIDENT!

In 1892, during **PRESIDENT BENJAMIN HARRISON**'s term, the political activism of farmers and the Free Silver movement led to the formation of the **POPULIST PARTY**, a new political faction with a platform of federal regulation, Free Silver, and workers' rights. In the 1892 presidential election, the Populist Party ran James B. Weaver, but Grover Cleveland decided on another (nonconsecutive) run for president and won. Still, another economic crisis (called the **PANIC OF 1893**) strengthened the Populist cause.

POPULIST

having to do with populism,
the political philosophy of
focusing on "average" people

Remember: The **PANIC OF 1837** took place during the Jackson and Van Buren administrations.

AAAAAHHHH!!!!



The **PANIC OF 1873** took place during the Grant presidency.

WAIT.
WHICH PANIC
IS THIS!?

The **PANIC OF 1893** took place in Cleveland's presidency.

The **ELECTION** of 1896

In 1896, an anti-silver candidate, **WILLIAM McKINLEY**, ran on the Republican presidential ticket. **WILLIAM JENNINGS BRYAN**, a Free Silver politician, ran on the Democratic ticket and was endorsed by the Populist Party. **McKINLEY** won the 1896 presidential election, and the Populist Party fell apart.

The END of the FRONTIER

Free land for homesteaders began to run out. The U.S. government was under pressure to make more land available. On April 22, 1889, it opened up an area in what is now Oklahoma to non-Native American settlers. Previously designated "Indian Territory," it was the last place in the Continental U.S. that was considered "unsettled." At noon that day, thousands of settlers rushed into the territory to stake their claims to new land. According to the historian **FREDERICK JACKSON TURNER**, the **FRONTIER** was finished.

EVEN THOUGH
MANY NATIVE
AMERICANS
LIVED THERE

FRONTIER
the border of a
settled territory



Oklahomans are known as **SOONERS** because although the land that would eventually become Oklahoma officially opened up on April 22, some ambitious farmers and ranchers rushed into the territory sooner to claim the best land.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why was the Pony Express first needed, and why did it later become obsolete?
2. Which two railway companies collaborated on the first transcontinental railroad?
3. Which industries were most affected by the railroad expansion?
4. Why were time zones invented?
5. Why was the West known for being "wild"?
6. What was the gold standard?
7. Who were the Sooners?
8. Was the territory now known as Oklahoma empty of people when it was opened to American settlers?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. It was needed to communicate with the West, and it was made obsolete by telegraphs.
2. Union Pacific and Central Pacific
3. Steel, cattle, and coal
4. In order to coordinate train schedules
5. Cowboys and outlaws led to a need for local policing, and thus to the myth of the Wild West—even though the West wasn't more wild than the rest of the country.
6. A system where the amount of paper money available was determined by the amount of gold in the treasury
7. Eager farmers and ranchers who rushed into the Oklahoma territory to claim land before it was officially open
8. No, Native Americans lived there.

★ Chapter 25 ★

NATIVE AMERICAN RESERVATIONS

LAND CONFLICT... AGAIN

Now the U.S. government was allowing American settlers onto land that was previously set aside for Native Americans. As miners and ranchers traveled west, they competed with the Native Americans for resources along the way. The U.S. built forts on **SIOUX** land to protect the travelers.

SIOUX

is pronounced “soo”

MORE RESERVATIONS

In 1866, Sioux warriors led by **RED CLOUD** began a series of attacks against those forts. In one attack, Sioux military leader **CRAZY HORSE** and his men ambushed American soldiers. The U.S. government agreed to abandon its forts and create a reservation for the Sioux, overseen by the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

The previous year, the **TREATY OF MEDICINE LODGE** had created reservations for the Comanche, Apache, Cheyenne, and several other peoples. Most of the Plains Indians didn't like the idea of living on a reservation, which would destroy their culture of nomadic hunting. However, they had little choice but to accept the terms of the treaties and move because the U.S. government wanted to use their land.

Conflict between the U.S. government and Native Americans continued throughout the 1860s. In 1863, the U.S. Army burned Navajo villages to force the people to make the "**LONG WALK**," a painful 300-mile trek to their appointed reservation in New Mexico, which killed many Navajos along the way. In 1864, the Colorado militia opened fire on a Cheyenne camp in the **SAND CREEK MASSACRE**. Although the Cheyenne, led by **CHIEF BLACK KETTLE**, retaliated, they eventually agreed to stop fighting.

CUSTER'S LAST STAND

In 1874, soldiers led by **LIEUTENANT GENERAL GEORGE ARMSTRONG CUSTER** found gold on the Sioux reservation in the Dakotas, tempting the U.S. to abandon the terms of the Second Treaty of Fort Laramie and purchase the land. However, Sioux **CHIEF SITTING BULL** refused to sell. Instead, he and Chief Crazy Horse encouraged their people to fight, beginning the most famous Native American act of resistance of the time. On June 25, 1876, Custer and a few hundred of his men faced thousands of Sioux and Cheyenne in the **BATTLE OF THE LITTLE BIGHORN**, near the Little

Bighorn River in Montana. The battle is also known as **CUSTER'S LAST STAND**, because Custer's entire unit was killed, including Custer.



Although Little Bighorn was a major Sioux victory, it was also their last. The U.S. government stepped up its military action, and the following year, in 1877, Crazy Horse surrendered. Although Sitting Bull initially fled to Canada, he surrendered in 1881 and was sent to a reservation—where he was later killed by reservation authorities.

Still, many Native American groups continued resistance movements. In 1877, **CHIEF JOSEPH** attempted to lead the Nez Percé from present-day Oregon to Canada, rather than to their appointed reservation in Idaho, though he gave in after the U.S. Army threatened to attack. **GERONIMO** led the Apache resistance from the 1870s until his surrender in 1886.

The buffalo were virtually hunted into extinction between 1850 and 1880. This hurt the Native American people by eliminating the most essential animal in their hunting culture. Buffalo were hunted for meat and hides, as well as hunted for sport from trains. The railroads wanted fewer buffalo because large herds caused delays in schedules.

The DAWES ACT

To make Native Americans assimilate into American culture instead of maintaining their own, Congress passed the **DAWES GENERAL ALLOTMENT ACT** in 1887, splitting Native

American land into **ALLOTMENTS**, private plots of land that were to be used as farms, destroying the Native American culture of communal property. The government reclaimed "leftover" land and sold it to American settlers. The government also took many Native American children away from their families, sending them to schools like the **CARLISLE SCHOOL** ↗ in Pennsylvania to make them more "American," changing their names and restricting how they wore their hair, and what language they could speak.

ALLOTMENT
a portion or share,
as of land

OLYMPIAN
JIM THORPE
GRADUATED
FROM HERE.

WOUNDED KNEE

Many Native Americans longed for the old way of life. They wanted to be nomadic hunters again, but the food demands of the American settlers and railroad crews had decimated the bison population. Many turned to a religious movement led by a prophet called **WOVOKA**, who spoke of a future time when the buffalo would return. Part of Wovoka's teachings included a ceremony called the **GHOST DANCE**, a peaceful religious gathering that the U.S. government interpreted as a threat and tried to suppress. On December 29, 1890, American troops attacked and killed hundreds of Sioux who were gathered for a Ghost Dance in the **WOUNDED KNEE MASSACRE**. This became the last major clash of its time between the U.S. government and the Native Americans.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why were Indian reservations created?
2. Why did Native Americans sign treaties forcing them onto reservations?
3. How did reservation life change Native American cultures?
4. What was the "Long Walk"?
5. Who won at the Battle of the Little Bighorn?
6. How did the U.S. government make money from the Dawes Act?
7. Why were Native American children taken away from their families?
8. What were Ghost Dance ceremonies?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The U.S. government wanted to use Indian land.
2. They had no choice.
3. They could no longer follow buffalo herds or hunt freely, which destroyed their traditional nomadic way of life. Allotments also destroyed their culture of communal property.
4. It was the journey of the Navajo from their homeland to their reservation.
5. Crazy Horse and Sitting Bull led the Sioux and Cheyenne to a victory.
6. Land on the reservations that was not used for allotments was sold.
7. They were sent to schools to be "Americanized."
8. Religious gatherings of Native Americans who hoped for a future in which the buffalo would return

★ Chapter 26 ★

The SECOND INDUSTRIAL



REVOLUTION

The SECOND INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION

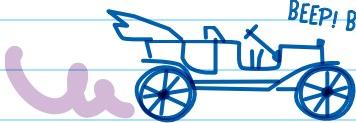
In the late 1800s, industry was revolutionized for a second time, creating a **SECOND INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION**. After the Civil War, the U.S. became one of the leading industrial powers in the world, and businesses such as steel and railroads grew by leaps and bounds. Business tycoons, notably the **RAILROAD BARONS**, those who rose to prominence in the railroad industry, flourished, and life changed for people of every income level.



INVENTIONS GALORE

Industrial growth, especially in the railroad sector, fueled a demand for new technology, and each new innovation led to others. Many of America's most significant technological developments came about in the late nineteenth century.

AMERICAN INVENTIONS GALORE



1851: ISAAC SINGER improved on the original 1845 SEWING MACHINE design, enabling the garment industry to begin to replace at-home clothing construction.

1866: The first TRANSATLANTIC TELEGRAPH wire was put in place.

1867: The first commercially successful TYPEWRITER was invented by Christopher Sholes, Carlos Glidden, and Samuel W. Soule.

1876: ALEXANDER GRAHAM BELL invented the TELEPHONE and started the Bell Telephone Company, launching the telecom industry.

1876: THOMAS EDISON opened a lab in Menlo Park, New Jersey, and went on to patent more than 1,000 inventions. In 1879, he invented the electric LIGHTBULB.

1886: GEORGE WESTINGHOUSE founded the Westinghouse Electric Company, which expanded the power grid created by Edison.

1888: The ADDING MACHINE, an early calculator patented by William Seward Burroughs, facilitated business transactions, and the KODAK CAMERA brought snapshot photography to the mainstream thanks to George Eastman.

1903: ORVILLE AND WILBUR WRIGHT made the first airplane flight at KITTY HAWK, NORTH CAROLINA, on December 17.

1908: HENRY FORD devised the Model T car. Created by his innovative assembly line system, the car was affordable enough for many middle-class Americans to own.

ASSEMBLY LINE → If everyone on the line does one job over and over (specialization and division of labor), people working together can produce more in a shorter time period. Those workers are also paid less because they have fewer skills.

In 1855, the British made steel production less difficult and less expensive, making railroad construction easier and skyscrapers possible with the **BESSEMER STEEL PROCESS**.

With new inventions also came a higher demand for fuel. After Edwin L. Drake's 1859 discovery of **CRUDE OIL** (which could be turned into kerosene for lighting lamps and used as fuel) underground in Pennsylvania, the petroleum industry began to skyrocket.

The CORPORATION

As businesses grew, many of them became too expensive or risky for one person to own. Instead, **CORPORATIONS** owned them and **SHAREHOLDERS** controlled them, meaning less risk, as well as the promise of **DIVIDENDS**. Selling **STOCK** was an easy way for corporations to raise **CAPITAL**, and banks could make a profit through involvement in corporate finances.

DIVIDENDS

sums of money paid to shareholders of a corporation from its earnings

STOCK

a share of a corporation, entitling the owner to a portion of the company's profits

CAPITAL

in this context, financial assets

HORIZONTAL and VERTICAL INTEGRATION

Some individual businessmen were so successful that they gained worldwide recognition, like **JOHN D. ROCKEFELLER**. Rockefeller founded an oil refinery in 1863, which became the **STANDARD OIL COMPANY** of Ohio in 1870. Before long, Standard Oil controlled almost the entire American petroleum industry, because Rockefeller created a **MONOPOLY** by driving his competition out of business.

In 1882, he founded the Standard Oil **TRUST**, a corporate board that bought stock in and controlled many companies in the industry. Standard Oil then owned its competition and could set prices across the industry. Once Rockefeller controlled the industry, he found ways to make even more profit, including demanding that railroads charge him less to transport his products. The railroads complied; if they didn't, they would lose too much business.

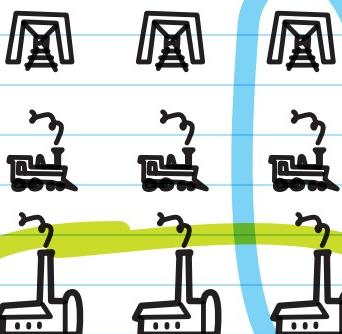
MONOPOLY

when one company or person controls an entire market

TRUST

a group of companies controlled by a single corporate board

Another famous businessman of the time was the Scottish-born steelmaker **ANDREW CARNegie**, who began his career as a railroad employee and, after making smart investments in steel and iron, founded the **CARNegie STEEL COMPANY**. Carnegie controlled every step of the manufacturing process, a tactic known as **VERTICAL INTEGRATION**: He owned not only the steel mills, but also the mines, the transportation,



VERTICAL INTEGRATION

(Carnegie)

HORIZONTAL INTEGRATION

(Rockefeller)

and the warehouses. He was able to cut costs and ensure a better product. Unlike Rockefeller, Carnegie did not intend to take over his competition (that tactic is known as **HORIZONTAL INTEGRATION**).

ROBBER BARONS and PHILANTHROPISTS

There was so much inequality that the period between 1869 and 1896 became known as the **GILDDED AGE**, because it looked like gold on the outside but was something crude on the inside. People like Rockefeller were called **ROBBER BARONS**, meaning that while they lived like nobility, they were also unethical men who had used trickery to become wealthy. In July of 1890, Congress passed the **SHERMAN ANTITRUST ACT**. Based on the concept that competition is necessary in free markets, it made trusts and monopolies illegal. It was difficult to enforce.

GILDDED

covered in gold, but not made of it

Carnegie published an article that came to be known as "The Gospel of Wealth." He stated that it was the wealthy's responsibility to society to act philanthropically.

Regardless of how they obtained their wealth, Carnegie and Rockefeller both were **PHILANTHROPISTS**, giving away large amounts and founding establishments such as Carnegie Hall and the Rockefeller Institute.

PHILANTHROPIST

someone who gives to charity

LIFE in the FACTORY

Although many businessmen prospered, factory workers faced long hours, low pay, and unhealthy conditions. At this time, factory workers were not only adults but children as well. As automation increased and skilled labor was less necessary, workers themselves became part of the machine—and many bosses treated them as such.

UNIONS

Although unions and trade guilds had existed before, they grew in size and scope. The first national union, the **KNIGHTS OF LABOR**, was founded in Philadelphia in 1869. Originally established as a secret society to protect its members from employer retaliation, the organization went public, under the leadership of Terence V. Powderly, in the 1880s. Unlike most unions, the Knights of Labor welcomed women, African Americans, and unskilled laborers—but Asians were still excluded.



With its large membership, the Knights tried to use the tactic of **COLLECTIVE BARGAINING** to secure pay equality and other workplace rights. In 1886, **SAMUEL GOMPERS** founded the **AMERICAN FEDERATION OF LABOR (AFL)**,

a coalition of many smaller unions of skilled workers, which became a much more influential organization.

COLLECTIVE BARGAINING

the idea of workers acting together, or collectively, is the essence of a union, as it gives workers the power to convince the management to make a compromise

GOING on STRIKE

Although **STRIKES** sometimes helped unions fight businesses, they also sometimes damaged the reputation of the unions, some of which came to be seen as violent **ANARCHIST** groups.

STRIKE

when employees refuse to work, usually in an attempt to negotiate a change in working conditions

ANARCHIST

opposed to government and/or law

The Haymarket Affair, Chicago, Illinois, 1886:

When the McCormick Harvester Company hired strikebreaking workers, a scuffle followed, killing a union member. This led to a protest at Haymarket Square in which several civilians and eight policemen were killed, and public opinion turned against the strikers.

The Homestead Strike, Homestead, Pennsylvania, 1892:

At Andrew Carnegie's Homestead steel mill, a strike led to a fight that resulted in ten deaths. The state militia was called in.

The Pullman Strike, Pullman, Illinois, 1894:

When **EUGENE DEBS**, the president of the American Railway Union, led a strike at the Pullman Palace Car Company over pay cuts, President Cleveland called in soldiers to put an end to the strike, which had shut down many railroads across the country.

Debs went to prison.

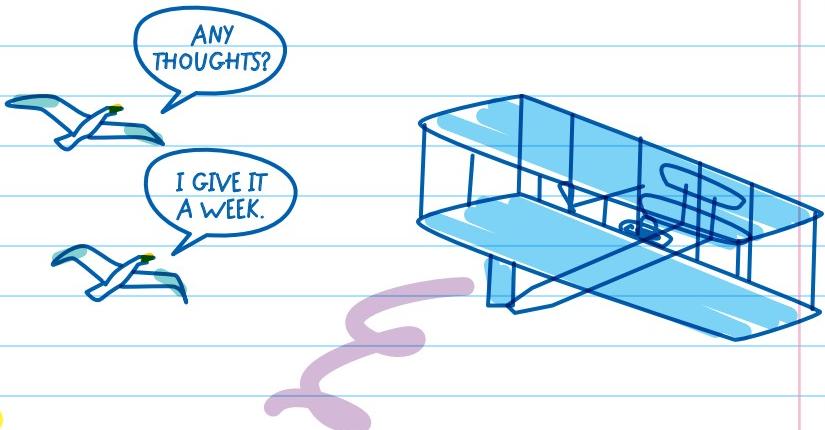


CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How did the Bessemer Steel Process affect the steel industry?
2. Why are assembly lines important?
3. Why was crude oil in higher demand in the mid-1800s than it had been before?
4. How did the Standard Oil Trust help create a monopoly for Standard Oil?
5. Why was Rockefeller seen as a "robber baron"?
6. What were the terms of the Sherman Antitrust Act?
7. Why were the Knights of Labor originally a secret society?
8. How did violent strikes affect labor unions' reputations?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Steel got cheaper and easier to make.
2. They allow faster, cheaper production through division of labor.
3. New inventions needed fuel.
4. The trust owned shares in Standard Oil's competitors.
5. He lived like nobility and gained his wealth through unethical trusts and monopolies, which were (later) criminal.
6. Trusts and monopolies were made illegal to allow fair business competition.
7. In order to protect their members from being retaliated against by employers
8. Unions became unfairly associated with anarchist movements.



★ Chapter 27 ★

NEW IMMIGRANTS, NEW CITIES

The NEW IMMIGRANTS

Previous immigrants had come mostly from western and northern Europe, but the "NEW IMMIGRANTS" in the 1880s were from eastern Europe and southern Europe, as well as Asia and Mexico.

The reasons for both waves of immigration were mostly the same. Immigrants strived to escape the overcrowding, religious and political persecution, and economic problems of their homelands. They hoped for a better life in America.

ELLIS ISLAND

After immigrants completed the often treacherous journey to the U.S., they had one last hurdle to cross: the immigration processing center, where their health, legal status, and destination were confirmed. Many people had their names

respersled, shortened, or otherwise "Americanized." The most famous immigration processing center was **ELLIS ISLAND** in New York Harbor. Most of those who came through Ellis Island were European; Asians usually entered the U.S. through the Bay Area's **ANGEL ISLAND**, and Mexican immigrants tended to arrive through an immigration center in El Paso, Texas.



The **STATUE OF LIBERTY**, installed in New York Harbor in 1886, was a gift to the U.S. from France.

The poem on the base of the statue includes the famous lines

"Give me your tired, your poor,
Your huddled masses yearning to breathe free"
(from "The New Colossus," by **EMMA LAZARUS**).

To many immigrants, the first sight of the statue represented a new beginning and the American dream.

BECOMING "AMERICAN"

Like previous immigrants, the new immigrants tended to settle in ethnic neighborhoods where they could continue speaking the language and practicing the religion, cuisine, and traditions of their homelands. However, the new immigrants were more recognizably different, and the diversity they brought to cities was often seen as a negative. Some U.S. citizens feared the immigrants would "take" jobs away from citizens by working for less, while others thought that the immigrants should

ASSIMILATE into American culture as quickly as possible. **NATIVISM**, an opposition to immigration, was on the rise again.

ASSIMILATE
to blend in

As it turned out, many immigrants, including women and children, ended up working in factories or **SWEATSHOPS** under harsh conditions for very low pay. Immigrant farmers could not afford to purchase their own land in America, so they had no choice but to accept the work.

SWEATSHOP
a factory defined by its poor working conditions and low wages

In 1882, Congress passed the **CHINESE EXCLUSION ACT**, which banned immigration from China for ten years (the act was renewed twice, for a total of thirty years). Congress also limited immigration from Japan and (unsuccessfully) attempted to restrict all immigration by illiterate persons. Convicts and people with certain illnesses were banned from coming to the U.S.

Although immigrants were encouraged to **AMERICANIZE**, the notion of being “American” was difficult to define. As immigrants assimilated, they changed what it meant to be American. America was becoming a “**MELTING POT**”: a blending of cultures.

URBANIZATION

Most immigrants moved to cities. As machinery reduced the need for farm labor, those workers began coming to cities in the North for factory work, as did many African Americans from the South. It was a time of great **URBANIZATION**, or growth of cities.

CITY LIFE

Turn-of-the-century cities were places of innovation and excitement:

The steel industry and the invention of the **ELEVATOR** (patented by **ELISHA OTIS**) allowed buildings to be taller; building up rather than out conserved city space. The first **SKYSCRAPER** was a ten-story building constructed in Chicago in 1884.

Next time you're in an elevator, look for a logo. The **OTIS ELEVATOR COMPANY** is still a major producer of elevators.



Public transportation enabled travel. San Francisco installed its **CABLE CARS** in 1873, and Richmond, Virginia, introduced **TROLLEYS**, electric cars to replace horse-drawn streetcars. Boston opened up its subway system in 1897, and New York City's followed in 1904.

Construction of **CENTRAL PARK** was completed in 1873. Designed by **FREDERICK LAW OLMSTED**, the park was built when New York recognized the importance of having a green space; other major parks were built during this same time period.

Cities were still in need of development. The working class often lived in dangerous tenements that were unhygienic and overcrowded. Areas with many tenements became **SLUMS**, which led to increased crime. City sewage systems were not equipped to handle so many people. Earthquakes and fires could destroy large sections of cities at a time because of unsafe building standards. These problems encouraged the growing **MIDDLE CLASS** to move to the **SUBURBS**, now easier to reach because of better transportation.

REFORMING the CITIES

Local governments did little to address the problems of the cities, especially for immigrants. However, individual activists tried to make a difference. Photojournalist Jacob Riis took photos of slums to expose their terrible conditions. Others set up **SETTLEMENT HOUSES** to provide social services to the poor. New York's **NEIGHBORHOOD GUILD**, founded in 1886 by Charles Stover and Stanton Coit, was the first. The most famous settlement house was Chicago's **HULL HOUSE**, founded in 1889 by **JANE ADDAMS** and Ellen Gates Starr.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What was new about the new immigrants?
2. Why did the new immigrants make the trip to the U.S.?
3. What was the point of immigration processing centers?
4. Why did some people want to stop immigrants from coming to the U.S.?
5. How does the concept of a "melting pot" apply to the assimilation of immigrants in the U.S.?
6. What were the causes of urbanization during the Second Industrial Revolution?
7. How did certain areas of American cities become slums?
8. What led to the growth of the suburbs?
9. Why did Jacob Riis take photographs of people in the slums?
10. Why were settlement houses necessary?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. They were from southern and eastern Europe rather than northern and western Europe.
There were also Asian and Mexican immigrants.
2. Economic problems, religious and political persecution, overcrowding, poverty, and the hope of a better life
3. To determine the health, destinations, and legal status of each immigrant
4. They were afraid immigrants would take jobs by working for less.
5. When immigrants become part of American culture, they also add their own heritage to the mix.
6. Many people (especially African Americans) were moving North, as fewer farm workers were needed to do the same amount of work.
7. Too many people lived there without adequate public services.
8. Bad housing, transportation improvements, and the growth of the middle class
9. To educate others about the way those people lived
10. The government was not providing for the poor.

Chapter 28

PROGRESS! (ivism)



CONSUMERISM and LEISURE TIME

Industrialization led to long hours in the factories, but unlike farmers,

factory workers (and the wealthy) often had days off. In the late 1800s, as **LEISURE TIME** became more common, so did activities such as

CONSUMERISM

increasing consumption;
focus on consumption
and purchasing

{ shopping in **DEPARTMENT STORES**, which encouraged **CONSUMERISM** via advertisements }

{ amusement parks, such as **CONEY ISLAND** in New York }

{ **VAUDEVILLE**, circuses, and other theater }

{ **WORLD'S FAIRS**, where consumers, merchants,
and innovators came together }

{ BASEBALL and other spectator sports, including basketball and college football, as well as participatory sports such as tennis, golf, and cycling }

{ new kinds of American music, such as RAGTIME and early JAZZ }

CORRUPTION in the GILDED AGE

Political parties used illegal means (like bribes and extortion) and legal means (like convincing the poor to vote a certain way by promising them jobs) to control elections. These organizations were called **POLITICAL MACHINES**, and their leader was the **BOSS**.

The most famous political machine was New York's Democratic **TAMMANY HALL**, led by **WILLIAM MAGEAR "BOSS" TWEED**, who is said to have stolen millions of dollars from the city.

The PROGRESSIVE MOVEMENT

President Garfield, who took office in 1881, saw that reform was needed, but he was assassinated before he could implement reforms. Some people, known as **SOCIALISTS**, believed that government should take complete ownership of corrupt businesses. Others, known as **PROGRESSIVES**, thought the government should regulate, not control. They aimed to democratize American society, and many of their reforms were to give the people a greater say in government. The **PROGRESSIVE MOVEMENT** in the 1890s aimed to fix social and economic problems, particularly in cities.

MUCKRAKERS

The Progressives gained support for their cause from journalists known as **MUCKRAKERS**, who exposed the "muck" of society. Famous muckrakers included **IDA TARRELL**, who exposed the oil trusts in her book **THE HISTORY OF THE STANDARD OIL COMPANY** (1904); **UPTON SINCLAIR**, who wrote about the meatpacking industry in his novel **THE JUNGLE** (1906); and **JACOB RIIS**, who displayed tenement life in his book of photographs **HOW THE OTHER HALF LIVES** (1889). Another muckraker, **LINCOLN STEFFENS**, exposed political machines.

REFORMERS and THEIR PROJECTS

Many of the most active Progressives in the country were middle-class women who were well educated but were expected to stop working when they got married. By the turn of the century, families tended to be smaller, and technology (like the vacuum cleaner) helped with housework, freeing up more of women's time to create change.

POLITICAL REFORM:

Supported by President Arthur, the PENDLETON CIVIL SERVICE ACT (1883) created a civil service exam to evaluate job candidates on the basis of merit, putting an end to the spoils system at the federal level.

POLITICAL REFORM CONTINUED ...

Wisconsin held the first **PRIMARY ELECTION** in 1903, prompting voters to become more involved in national politics.

Oregon introduced **VOTER INITIATIVES** (for citizens to propose laws), **REFERENDA** (to approve laws), and **RECALLS** (to remove officials before the end of their term), allowing voters more control over state politics.

Adopted in 1913, the **SIXTEENTH AMENDMENT** allowed Congress to levy an income tax, which gave government funding to do, in the Progressives' view, great things; ratified in 1913, the **SEVENTEENTH AMENDMENT** gave the people the right to elect their senators directly rather than through the often corrupt state legislatures.

EDUCATION REFORM:

Progressives like **JOHN DEWEY** advocated changes in public education to place greater emphasis on understanding rather than on rote memorization.

Settlement houses offered some of the first kindergarten classes.

Compulsory education laws were designed not only to educate children but to eliminate child labor.

ANTI-ALCOHOL REFORM (TEMPERANCE):

Organizations like the WOMAN'S CHRISTIAN TEMPERANCE UNION and the ANTI-SALOON LEAGUE worked to prohibit alcohol, which they saw as the cause of social problems.

Temperance activist CARRIE NATION charged into saloons and destroyed liquor bottles with an ax.

Ratified in 1919, the EIGHTEENTH AMENDMENT began PROHIBITION, the period during which the production, sale, and transport of alcohol were illegal in the U.S.

TEMPERANCE

abstaining from drinking alcohol

PROHIBITION

period in American history when alcohol was illegal

LABOR REFORM:

Since children could be paid less than adults, CHILD LABOR was commonly used. Many people advocated placing limits on child labor, but congressional limits were deemed unconstitutional.

In 1905, a Socialist union called the INDUSTRIAL WORKERS OF THE WORLD was established, and it welcomed women, minorities, and others who could not join the American Federation of Labor (AFL).

LABOR REFORM CONTINUED...

Following the 1911 TRIANGLE SHIRTWAIST COMPANY factory fire in New York, which killed nearly 150 workers (mostly young women) who were locked inside by the company owners to prevent theft, the INTERNATIONAL LADIES' GARMENT WORKERS UNION advocated for increased workplace safety.

In 1912, Massachusetts created the first minimum wage law.

SHIRTWAIST

a common term for a lady's shirt during the early twentieth century

WOMEN'S RIGHTS

Once slavery was banned, many former abolitionists turned their attention to women's SUFFRAGE. In 1869, the NATIONAL AMERICAN WOMAN SUFFRAGE ASSOCIATION (NAWSA) was formed, and its leaders included Elizabeth Cady Stanton, Susan B. Anthony, Anna Howard Shaw, and Carrie Chapman Catt.

The NINETEENTH AMENDMENT was ratified in 1920; at last, women had the right to vote.

FINALLY!!!



SUSAN B. ANTHONY

One of most famous female reformers of the time was Mary Harris Jones, better known as MOTHER JONES, who helped organize numerous labor strikes.

Antidiscrimination Movements

The American Jewish Committee and the **ANTI-DEFAMATION LEAGUE** fought anti-Semitism, the **SOCIETY OF AMERICAN INDIANS** advocated for Native American rights, and the Mexican-American **MUTUALISTAS** assisted those living in the **BARRIOS** (labor camps or predominantly Spanish-speaking neighborhoods). Other groups facing discrimination included Catholics, Asians, and African Americans.

MUTUALISTAS
community-based
aid groups

Within the African American community, two major schools of activism emerged. One was led by **BOOKER T. WASHINGTON**, who believed that education and financial stability were the keys to equality; that is, if African Americans persevered, equality would automatically follow. Washington struck the **ATLANTA COMPROMISE** with Southern white leaders, which stated that African Americans should be resigned to white political rule as long as they could receive education and economic equality. On the opposite side of the spectrum was **W.E.B. DU BOIS**, who believed that legal equality for African Americans would put an end to injustice.



Du Bois used the term “The Talented Tenth” to describe a class of leaders in the African American community that he believed would help create social change.

In 1881, Washington founded the **TUSKEGEE INSTITUTE**, an agricultural and industrial school in Alabama, and in 1909, Du Bois helped found the **NATIONAL ASSOCIATION FOR THE ADVANCEMENT OF COLORED PEOPLE**, or **NAACP** (pronounced "N-double A-C-P," it remains one of the most influential civil rights organizations in the U.S.).

Another significant African American figure of the time was **GEORGE WASHINGTON CARVER**. A member of the Tuskegee faculty, Carver revolutionized Southern agriculture by developing hundreds of uses for peanuts and other crops that were alternatives to cotton.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What is a political machine?
2. What is the main difference between Socialist beliefs and Progressive beliefs?
3. Who was Ida Tarbell?
4. Why were many reformers middle-class women?
5. What happened during the Triangle Shirtwaist Company factory fire?
6. When was suffrage granted to women?
7. What did Booker T. Washington and W.E.B. Du Bois disagree about?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Political machines are political parties that use illegal and legal means to control election outcomes.
2. Socialists believed that government should take complete ownership of corrupt businesses. Progressives thought the government should regulate, not control.
3. She exposed the oil trusts in her book **THE HISTORY OF THE STANDARD OIL COMPANY**.
4. They were well-educated and had time but were expected not to work.
5. Nearly 150 workers (mostly young women) were killed because they were locked inside by the company owners to prevent theft.
6. Suffrage was granted to women in 1920.
7. They disagreed about whether African Americans ought to focus on economic freedom or political freedom first.

★ Chapter 29 ★

EXPANSIONISM and IMPERIALISM

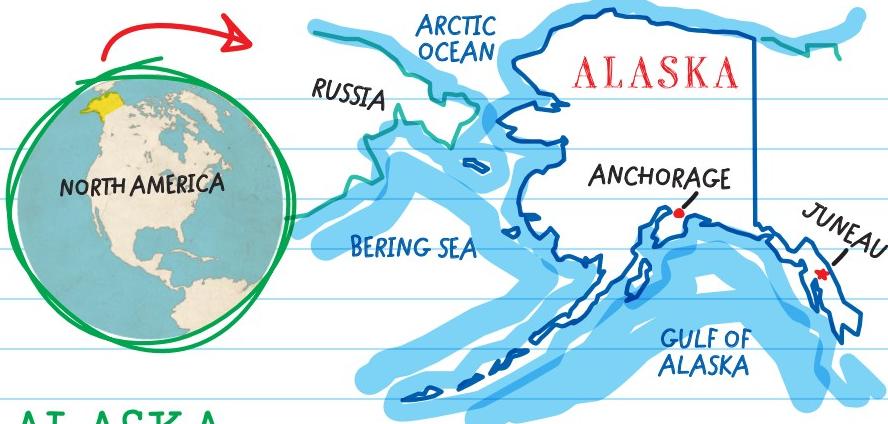
Alongside progressivism, old ideas persisted. These ideas included Manifest Destiny, even though it seemed as though there was nowhere left for Americans to spread.

SOCIAL DARWINISM

was a major factor in imperialism. It was a popular idea that technologically advanced societies should rule over and control less advanced societies.

The continental U.S. had taken shape following the Gadsden Purchase, but some Americans advocated expanding overseas. In Europe, **IMPERIALISM** was at its height as European powers took over nations in Asia and Africa. Many Americans believed that imperialism would bring prosperity and prestige to the U.S. and would allow Americans to spread Western ideals. Since Washington's Farewell Address, the U.S. had steered clear of foreign problems, as Washington had advised—but its agenda was about to change.

IMPERIALISM
the policy of gaining authority over other nations or of acquiring colonies



ALASKA

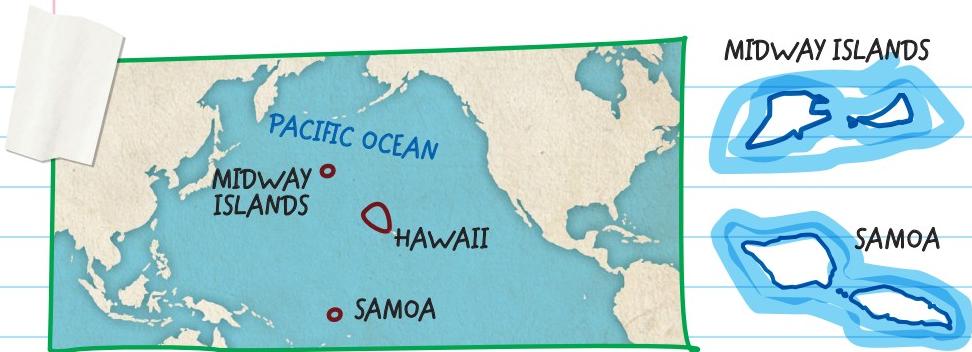
Shortly after the Civil War, Secretary of State **WILLIAM SEWARD** purchased **ALASKA** from Russia for \$7.2 million.

Considering how cold Alaska was, many people considered this a foolish purchase, calling it "Seward's Folly" and referring to Alaska as "Seward's Ice Box." As it turned out, Alaska was rich with natural resources, and the U.S. officially annexed it in 1884.

The U.S. in the PACIFIC

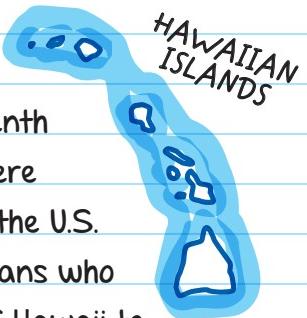
The U.S. was becoming increasingly interested in the Pacific to open foreign markets to trade and American business interests. In 1854, **COMMODORE MATTHEW PERRY** used a combination of gifts and threats to convince Japan to enter into trade relations with the U.S. Japan was beginning a period of major modernization, and trade was seen as lucrative.

In 1867, the U.S. annexed the **MIDWAY ISLANDS**, islands midway between America and Asia where American ships could stop en route. Still, the U.S. wanted even more of a presence in the Pacific.



HAWAII

Since about the beginning of the nineteenth century, the Hawaiian Islands, which were unified, had been a source of sugar for the U.S. Most of the sugar planters were Americans who had moved there and forced the king of Hawaii to grant them political power. In 1891, **QUEEN LILIUOKALANI** came to power and attempted to limit American influence. At about the same time, Congress imposed tariffs on imports of Hawaiian sugar, angering the planters.



In 1893, planters staged a revolt with the help of the U.S. Marines and the U.S. ambassador to Hawaii, forming their own government. The new government asked to be annexed by the U.S. President Benjamin Harrison agreed, but the treaty he signed was not ratified before he left office. President Cleveland, who succeeded him, opposed annexation without the support of the Hawaiian people. It wasn't until 1900, during President McKinley's administration, that Hawaii

became a territory of the U.S. In 1899, the U.S. annexed part of **SAMOA**, a group of islands 2,500 miles south of Hawaii.

The OPEN DOOR POLICY

In the second half of the 1800s, European nations and Japan convinced the weaker nation of China to grant them **SPHERES OF INFLUENCE**, or areas within China to control. Since the U.S. didn't have a sphere of influence there, in 1899, Secretary of State John Hay suggested an **OPEN DOOR POLICY** of equal access for multiple imperial powers, including the U.S., to trade with China. There wasn't any reason for the other nations to agree—until the **BOXER REBELLION** of 1900, in which an antiforeign secret society known as the Boxers killed a number of foreigners living in China.

Once the Boxers were defeated, the imperial powers agreed to Hay's policy and cooperated with one another.



However, Japan soon began ignoring the policy, which started the **RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR** with Russia. The **TREATY OF PORTSMOUTH** of 1905 ended the Russo-Japanese War, but Japan had become an even greater power, and U.S.-Japanese tensions began to rise.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What were the major arguments for imperialism in the U.S.?
2. What was Seward's Folly?
3. How did Commodore Perry convince Japan to enter into trade relations with the U.S.?
4. Why did the U.S. want territories in the Pacific in the late 1800s?
5. Who was Queen Liliuokalani?
6. Why did President Cleveland oppose President Harrison's plan to annex Hawaii?
7. What is a sphere of influence?
8. What convinced other nations to agree to an Open Door Policy with China?

ANSWERS

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



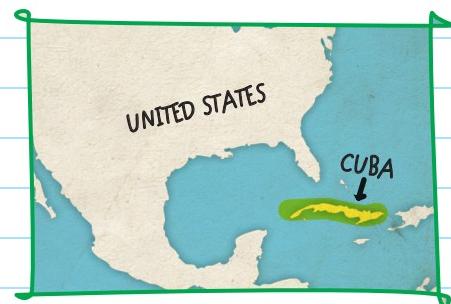
1. People wanted to spread Western ideals, open trade, and increase the prestige of the U.S.
2. Secretary of State William Seward purchased Alaska from Russia for \$7.2 million. Most people at the time thought there was nothing but cold up there, so they called the move "Seward's Folly."
3. Commodore Perry used a combination of gifts and threats to convince Japan to enter into trade relations with the U.S.
4. U.S. ships needed a place to stop on their way to trade with Japan.
5. Queen Liliuokalani was the queen of Hawaii who tried to limit American influence.
6. President Cleveland opposed annexation without the support of the Hawaiian people.
7. Area of control
8. The Boxer Rebellion of 1900 convinced other nations to agree to an Open Door Policy with China.

★ Chapter 30 ★

SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR

REBELLION in CUBA

While the U.S. was expanding, Spain—once the holder of a great empire in the Americas—was shrinking. Most Spanish holdings had declared independence, and those remaining were eager to be free of Spanish rule. In 1895, Cuban revolutionary **JOSÉ MARTÍ** returned from exile to lead the fight for Cuban independence. This worried many in the U.S., who were concerned about trade with Cuba and the island's proximity to Florida. However, neither President Cleveland, who was in his second term at the time, nor his successor, President McKinley, wanted to interfere.



YELLOW JOURNALISM

The fighting in Cuba became very violent, and Spanish troops treated Cuban prisoners terribly. The American public was shocked, but shock sold newspapers. In a tactic known as **YELLOW JOURNALISM**, Joseph Pulitzer and William Randolph Hearst exaggerated and sensationalized the stories, stirring up public fury. They were in competition with one another and scandals sold well.

REMEMBER the MAINE!

McKinley wished to avoid war. However, rioting in Havana, the capital of Cuba, put Americans in the area in danger. McKinley sent the ship **U.S.S. MAINE** to Havana in January of 1898 to protect them. With no warning, the ship exploded on February 15. Although evidence later suggested that it was an accident, Spain was blamed, and "**REMEMBER THE MAINE!**" became a rallying cry for war.

On April 20, Congress recognized Cuban independence and demanded that

Spanish troops leave the island. In the **TELLER AMENDMENT**, the U.S. stated that it had no interest in controlling Cuba.

On April 25, 1898, Congress declared war on Spain. The **SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR** had begun.



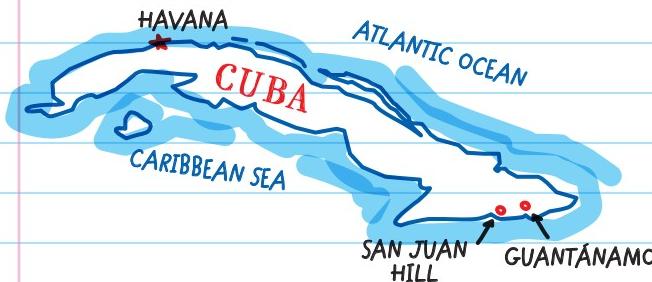
DEWEY in the PHILIPPINES

The Philippines were another holding of the Spanish empire, and like the Cubans, the **FILIPINOS** revolted in the 1890s.

When **COMMODORE GEORGE DEWEY** led an American fleet to the Philippines on April 30, 1898, he had the support of the people there. On May 1, in the first battle of the Spanish-American War, Dewey destroyed the Spanish ships in Manila Harbor and then, with the help of Filipino rebels led by their president, **EMILIO AGUINALDO**, took control of the city.

The ROUGH RIDERS and FIGHTING in the CARIBBEAN

Although the navy did much of the fighting, the army also played a role in the Spanish-American War. Many volunteers signed up to fight, including the **FIRST U.S. VOLUNTEER CAVALRY**, a diverse regiment of cowboys, students, and others organized by **THEODORE "TEDDY" ROOSEVELT** that became known as the **ROUGH RIDERS**. On July 1, 1898, the Rough Riders captured the hills around Santiago, Cuba. They helped the Americans win the **BATTLE OF SAN JUAN HILL**.

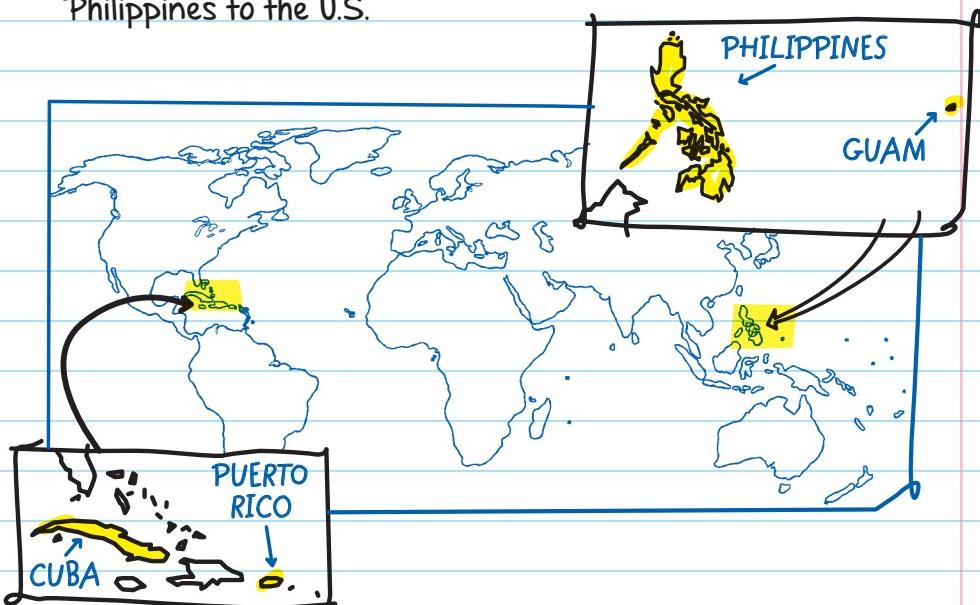


The TREATY of PARIS (AGAIN (AGAIN))

On August 12, only a few months after fighting had begun, **ARMISTICE** was declared. The Spanish empire was over, and the fighting had cost very few American lives. (In fact, many more Americans died of tropical diseases than of battle wounds.)

In the 1898 **TREATY OF PARIS**, signed on December 10, Spain ceded control of Cuba, Puerto Rico, Guam, and the Philippines to the U.S.

ARMISTICE
a temporary end to hostilities by warring parties; a truce



Remember: The 1763 **TREATY OF PARIS** ended the Seven Years' War, the 1783 **TREATY OF PARIS** ended the Revolutionary War, and the 1898 **TREATY OF PARIS** ended the Spanish-American War.

EXPANSIONISM EXPANDS

Once the Spanish left, Americans needed to decide what to do with their new lands. Many, including the founders of the **ANTI-IMPERIALIST LEAGUE**, thought that the islands should be given their independence—to do otherwise would be **ANATHEMA** to American democratic ideals and betray America's own history of fighting for independence from British colonialism. Others argued that colonies would provide the U.S. with markets, resources, naval stopovers, and places to spread those democratic ideals. Although each island nation was treated differently, in the end imperialist reasoning prevailed.

ANATHEMA
something hated

Puerto Rico and Guam became territories, meaning that they remained under U.S. control.

In 1917, Puerto Ricans gained citizenship.

Cuba became an American **PROTECTORATE**, an independent country with American oversight. When Cuba rewrote its constitution in 1901, the **PLATT AMENDMENT** specified that the U.S. still had a right to make decisions for the Cuban government and that the U.S. could maintain a military presence at **GUANTÁNAMO BAY**.

PROTECTORATE
a country that is protected and controlled by another, more powerful country

The Philippines became an American colony, prompting Aguinaldo to lead another fight for independence. This second struggle in the Philippines was much more challenging for the U.S., but the U.S. managed to capture Aguinaldo in 1901. In 1946, the Philippines became independent by allowing the U.S. to retain military bases there and agreeing to trade agreements favorable to the U.S.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why did the Cuban revolution worry many people in the U.S.?
2. Why did American newspapers sensationalize the conflict in Cuba?
3. Why were people supposed to remember the MAINE?
4. How did the Filipinos react to Commodore George Dewey's arrival in the Philippines?
5. Who were the Rough Riders?
6. What happened to the Spanish empire during the Spanish-American War?
7. Why did the Anti-Imperialist League oppose expansion?
8. What were some arguments for expansion?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Cuba is very close to Florida and many Americans traded with Cuba.
2. In order to sell papers
3. To remember why the U.S. needed to fight Spain
4. They welcomed him.
5. They were Teddy Roosevelt's First U.S. Volunteer Cavalry.
6. It fell apart after Spain's defeat.
7. They thought imperialism was opposed to American democratic values.
8. Colonies would provide the U.S. with markets for trade and allow the spread of democratic ideals.



Chapter 31



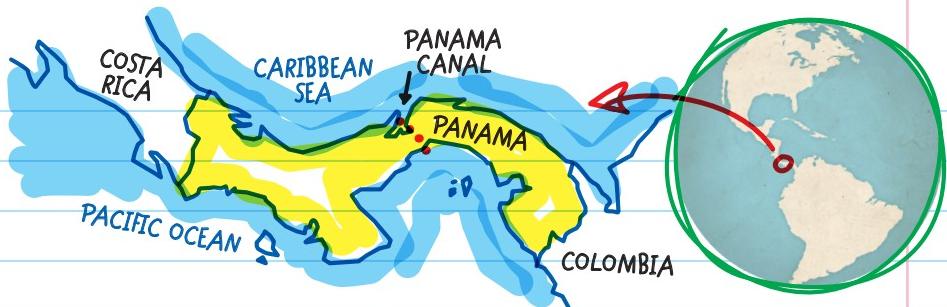
A MAN and HIS PLAN: MORE PROGRESSIVISM

Hero of the Spanish-American War **TEDDY ROOSEVELT** became governor of New York and vice president during **PRESIDENT MCKINLEY**'s second term. When McKinley was assassinated by an anarchist in 1901, Roosevelt, who was 42, became the youngest person to be a U.S. president.

Roosevelt became known as the first conservationist president, founding the U.S. Forest Service. For his work helping negotiate the Treaty of Portsmouth to end the Russo-Japanese War, Roosevelt also won the Nobel Peace Prize.



Roosevelt was the inspiration for the **TEDDY BEAR**. He loved to hunt, but during a hunting trip in 1902, he decided not to shoot a bear captured by others in his party. A toy maker heard this story and named the stuffed bear toy he was making after the president.



The PANAMA CANAL

The distance between U.S.-controlled land in the Pacific (the Philippines and Hawaii) and in the Atlantic/Caribbean (Cuba and Puerto Rico) made it difficult for U.S. ships to travel from place to place. The **ISTHMUS** of **PANAMA** seemed like the perfect place for a canal connecting the two oceans.

ISTHMUS

a narrow piece of land connecting two larger land masses

The narrow piece of land was owned by Colombia. Knowing that the people of Panama were planning a revolution against Colombia, Roosevelt sent a warship to block Colombian troops from reaching the uprising. The Panamanian revolution was successful. Roosevelt quickly recognized the new nation and negotiated a 99-year lease on the 10-mile-wide **CANAL ZONE**. The 1903 **HAG-BUNAU-VARILLA TREATY** established the canal zone and the right of the U.S. to protect it.

Construction of the **PANAMA CANAL** began in 1904. The work was dangerous, mostly due to malaria and yellow fever carried by mosquitoes, and many workers died before construction was completed ten years later. On August 15, 1914, the **ANCON** was the first ship to make the crossing.

SPEAK SOFTLY and CARRY a BIG STICK

Roosevelt believed that the U.S. had the right and the responsibility to act in Panama as it did.

Roosevelt was famous for saying that one ought to "**SPEAK SOFTLY AND CARRY A BIG STICK.**" That is, as the U.S. took greater charge of the western hemisphere, Roosevelt saw the nation's role as that of a police officer and reminded other nations of the power of the American military (the "big stick").



The ROOSEVELT COROLLARY

The Monroe Doctrine had warned European nations not to interfere in the western hemisphere. At that time, the U.S. didn't have the military power to support that warning.

By 1900, that was no longer the case. When several Latin American nations defaulted on debts to European countries, Roosevelt forced them to pay, to prevent European interests from getting involved.

This was the **ROOSEVELT COROLLARY** to the Monroe Doctrine: It barred Europe from interfering in Latin America and it gave the U.S. the right to intervene and settle disputes instead. The U.S. took charge of the Dominican economy in 1905 and stopped a revolt in Cuba in 1906 as well.

COROLLARY
a conclusion that follows naturally from another proposition

ROOSEVELT and the SQUARE DEAL

Roosevelt viewed the presidency as a "bully pulpit," or powerful platform, to advance his political agenda. He was the first president to enforce the Sherman Antitrust Act, fighting trusts that he singled out for working against the public good, a practice that earned him the name "trustbuster."

In 1902, during a **UNITED MINE WORKERS** strike, Roosevelt was the first president to threaten to use the army to break a strike on behalf of the union (he convinced the company to agree to **ARBITRATION**).

In his bid for reelection in 1904, Roosevelt ran on the platform that every American deserved a "Square Deal," and easily won. His Square Deal program included:

controlling corporations and fighting corruption

protecting consumers (He passed the Meat Inspection Act and the Pure Food and Drug Act of 1906.)

conserving natural resources

TAFT: A PROGRESSIVE?

Roosevelt wanted Republican **WILLIAM HOWARD TAFT** to succeed him as president. In 1908, Taft defeated the

ARBITRATION
deciding on a question by presenting it to an "arbitrator," a third party; usually used to avoid going to court or having a strike

Democratic nominee, William Jennings Bryan, and Eugene V. Debs, who ran on the Socialist ticket. Taft supported the **SIXTEENTH AMENDMENT** (to establish federal income taxes) and the **SEVENTEENTH AMENDMENT** (to establish the direct election of U.S. senators). However, Taft didn't lower tariffs or support conservation.

DOLLAR DIPLOMACY

While Roosevelt's big stick was the military, Taft preferred a big wallet. He encouraged **DOLLAR DIPLOMACY**, using business investments and international loans to increase American influence in Latin America and East Asia. Taft was reluctant to resort to violence, but did sometimes use the military to protect American investments, which led to resentment in South and Central America.

The PROGRESSIVE PARTY

A rift developed between Roosevelt and Taft, and Roosevelt chose to run again for president in 1912, even though the Republican Party still supported Taft. Roosevelt formed the **PROGRESSIVE PARTY** (also known as the **BULL MOOSE PARTY**) because of the strength Roosevelt attributed to it), but he succeeded only in splitting the Republican vote. As a result, the Democrat **WOODROW WILSON** was elected president.



A BULL MOOSE IS JUST A MALE MOOSE, NOT SOME WEIRD MUTANT BULL-MOOSE THING.

Don't forget that the priorities and values of the Democratic and Republican political parties have changed since these parties were established in the late 1700s.

PROGRESSIVISM UNDER WILSON

Except when it came to segregation, which he supported, Wilson was progressive in his policies. During his two terms, progressive advances included:

The **CLAYTON ANTITRUST ACT** of 1914, which further limited the ability of companies to form monopolies and increased government regulatory power

The **FEDERAL RESERVE ACT** of 1913, which created the **FEDERAL RESERVE BOARD** (the **FED**) to oversee the federal banks and control interest rates

The **UNDERWOOD TARIFF** of 1913, which decreased tariffs

The creation of the **FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION** in 1914, which enforced trade laws

The **KEATING-Owen ACT** of 1916, which limited child labor (though it was later struck down)

The MEXICAN REVOLUTION and PANCHO VILLA

President Wilson was more opposed to imperialism than his predecessor. His policy of **MORAL DIPLOMACY** involved doing business only with countries that were free and democratic.

However, when the Mexican Revolution began in 1910, Wilson decided to use military force. Because of the many economic ties between the U.S. and Mexico, the revolution affected the U.S.

1911:

The reformer Francisco Madero overthrew dictator Porfirio Díaz.



1913:

General Victoriano Huerta overthrew Madero.



1914:

Wilson refused to recognize Huerta's government and sold weaponry to Venustiano Carranza, his rival.

With help from the U.S., which granted him diplomatic recognition, Carranza took power.

Then, in January 1916, **FRANCISCO "PANCHO" VILLA**, a prominent Mexican Revolutionary general who had sought **DIPLOMATIC RECOGNITION** from the U.S. for years, protested Carranza's administration by killing 15 Americans in Chihuahua, Mexico. When this didn't provoke conflict, he crossed into New Mexico and killed about 20 people in Columbus, a border town.

DIPLOMATIC RECOGNITION

when a nation is acknowledged by other governments and other countries

Wilson sent **GENERAL JOHN J. PERSHING** and his troops, who chased Pancho Villa for a year, until World War I called them away. The Mexican Revolution ended in 1920.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How did Roosevelt intervene in Colombian politics in order to get the Canal Zone lease?
2. What did Roosevelt mean by "speak softly and carry a big stick"?
3. What is the Roosevelt Corollary?
4. How does dollar diplomacy work?
5. What did the Federal Reserve Act of 1913 do?
6. How did President Wilson's views about Latin America differ from those of Taft and Roosevelt?
7. Why did General Pershing stop chasing Pancho Villa?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. He blocked the Colombian army from reaching Panama.
2. Roosevelt meant that the U.S. should act like a police officer and remind other nations of America's military power.
3. The Roosevelt Corollary to the Monroe Doctrine allowed the U.S. to intervene in Latin American disputes.
4. Taft used business investments and loans, rather than the army, as his first tool to influence Latin America.
5. The Federal Reserve Act of 1913 created the Federal Reserve Board (the Fed) to oversee the federal banks and control interest rates.
6. Wilson wanted to spread democracy but did not want to control other nations.
7. World War I started and he was needed elsewhere.

Unit

7

World Wars and Modern America

1900s-1930s

It's impossible to separate American history from world history. George Washington instructed politicians to avoid foreign entanglements, and they tried and tried. The beginning of the twentieth century put an end to that. It was hard to hide on the other side of an ocean. The U.S. affected and was affected by the rest of the world.

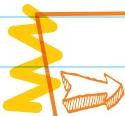
★ Chapter 32 ★

THE

GREAT WAR

WHAT THEY WERE FIGHTING ABOUT

The exact cause of World War I (WWI), initially called the Great War, is hard to pinpoint. Peace in Europe was so fragile that anything could have set off a conflict—it was a powder keg waiting for a spark from:



IMPERIALISM

Especially in Africa

MILITARIES



An arms race
was happening

NATIONALISM

- ➡ A reinvigorated sense of patriotism
- ➡ Countries wanted to prove their might
- ➡ Ethnic groups wanted to form their own nations

ALLIANCES

- ➡ THE TRIPLE ALLIANCE:
Germany, Austria-Hungary, and Italy
- ➡ THE TRIPLE ENTENTE:
Britain, France, and Russia

ENTENTE

an understanding or agreement

Remember the **MAIN** reasons for World War I using this mnemonic device:

MILITARIES
ALLIANCES
IMPERIALISM
NATIONALISM

Millions of Slavic people who lived under the **AUSTRO-HUNGARIAN EMPIRE** wanted to become part of Serbia. On June 28, 1914, a Serbian nationalist named **GAVRILO PRINCIP** assassinated **ARCHDUKE FRANZ FERDINAND** (heir to the throne of the Austro-Hungarian Empire) and his wife, Sophie, in **SARAJEVO**. A month later, on July 28, 1914, Austria declared war on Serbia.

ALLIANCES

People defended their allies.

Germany, an Austro-Hungarian ally, declared war on Russia, which supported Serbia.

Germany also declared war on France, a Russian ally.

When Germany invaded Belgium, a neutral country between Germany and France, Britain, an ally of France and Belgium, declared war on Germany.

By early August 1914, a full-scale war had developed in Europe. The two sides were:

The CENTRAL POWERS

Austria-Hungary
Germany
The Ottoman Empire
Bulgaria

The ALLIED POWERS, or the ALLIES

Serbia
Russia
France
Great Britain
Later, Japan and Italy



AMERICAN NEUTRALITY

President Wilson was determined to follow George Washington's advice to steer clear of foreign conflicts. America planned to continue trading with both the Allies and the Central Powers.

The FIRST BATTLE of the MARNE

Germany was fighting a war on two fronts—Russia in the east and France and England in the west. The Germans tried to advance into France to knock France out of the war quickly, so they could focus on Russia. However, the small Belgian army held them off for nearly three weeks, giving France and Britain time to prepare to fight. The French and British stopped the Germans at the Marne River near Paris and declared victory in the **FIRST BATTLE OF THE MARNE** (September 6 through 12, 1914).

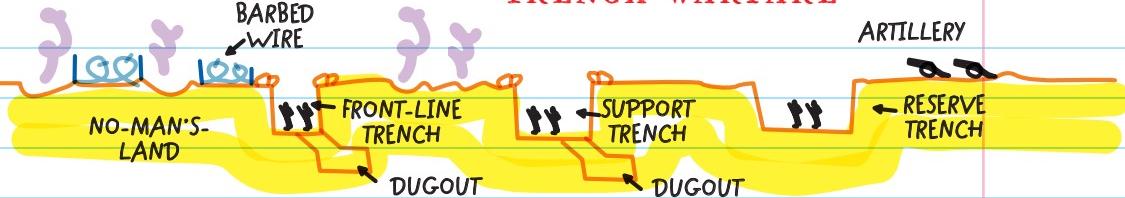
TRENCH WARFARE

The First Battle of the Marne proved that neither side would have an easy victory. The armies used a new style of fighting, **TRENCH WARFARE**: Soldiers stayed in dug-out trenches for long stretches of time, with a **NO-MAN'S-LAND** in between them. The soldiers would sometimes fire at one another, but there were few gains for either side, causing a **STALEMATE**.

STALEMATE

a situation in which nothing can be done or won by either side; also called an impasse

TRENCH WARFARE



In 1916, Allied and Central powers tried to end the impasse on the **WESTERN FRONT**. In February, the Germans incited the Battle of Verdun. In July, the Allies instigated the Battle of the Somme. The battles caused high casualties.

MORE NEW WAYS of FIGHTING

Modern weapons caused far more casualties at a faster rate than ever before. The slaughter on the battlefields led to despair and the destruction of an entire generation of men.

MACHINE GUNS AND ARTILLERY



GAS MASK

POISON GAS

SUBMARINES

ARMORED TANKS

(first used by the British in 1916)

ARTILLERY

guns too big to carry, such as cannons or rocket launchers

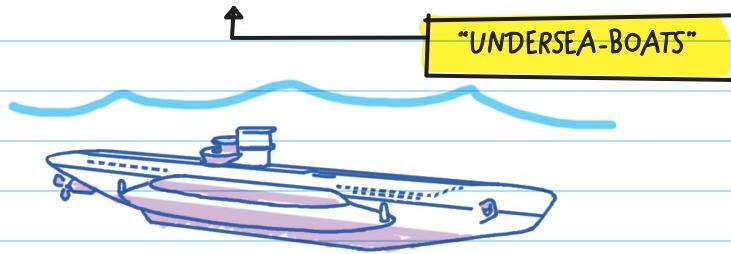
AIRPLANES



Pilots who shot down lots of enemy planes were called ACES. The most famous German ace was Manfred von Richthofen, also called the Red Baron. The most famous American ace was Eddie Rickenbacker.

The LUSITANIA

Naval warfare also changed. The Allies blocked off German ports. The Germans retaliated by targeting Allied ships with submarines called UNTERSEEBOOTS, or U-BOATS.



On May 7, 1915, a U-boat sank the British ship LUSITANIA, killing 1,000 people, including over 100 Americans. There were ammunition and unlawful goods in the cargo, but the LUSITANIA was a passenger ship, and the civilian deaths seemed inhumane. Still determined to remain neutral, Wilson convinced Germany to make the SUSSEX PLEDGE (named after another ship torpedoed by U-boats) and promise not to target ships that didn't carry weapons.

The war had cost the lives of millions of Europeans. Wilson was reelected president in 1916 on the slogan "HE KEPT US OUT OF WAR."

The next year, the Germans went back to attacking all Allied ships, using a policy of "unrestricted submarine warfare." They intended to cut off the British Isles from supplies, forcing an end to the war before American intervention. It almost worked.

The ZIMMERMANN NOTE

In early 1917, British intelligence intercepted a telegram from a German official named Arthur Zimmermann. The **ZIMMERMANN NOTE** proposed an alliance between Germany and Mexico against the U.S. In exchange, Germany would help Mexico get back Texas and other lost territories. Mexico declined, but the telegram was published by American newspapers, and anti-German sentiment boiled over. On April 2, 1917, Wilson asked Congress to declare war. After three days of debate, the U.S. entered the Great War (they didn't know there'd be a World War II yet, so nobody called it World War I).

CONVOY

The U.S. helped the Allies by introducing the **CONVOY** system, sending cargo ships across the Atlantic accompanied by warships to protect them from U-boat attacks.

CONVOY
a group traveling together, often for safety

OVER THERE: The AMERICAN EXPEDITIONARY FORCES

When the American army, called the **AMERICAN EXPEDITIONARY FORCES (AEF)**, led by **GENERAL JOHN PERSHING**, arrived in France, it provided an influx of energy to the Allies. French and British troops were exhausted and running out of supplies.

Many believe that the AEF soldiers were called **DOUGHBOYS** because the buttons on their uniforms looked like dough.

READY to FIGHT

Even with a large number of volunteers—including women and African Americans—the U.S. military wasn't ready to handle such a big war. In May of 1917, the **SELECTIVE SERVICE ACT** started a **DRAFT** for all men between the ages of 21 and 30. Black draftees were segregated from whites in the American forces, but some fought with the French army, which was less discriminatory. Some were awarded the French Croix de Guerre (Cross of War) medal for their bravery.

The government got supplies and funding by:

Selling Liberty **BONDS**, which basically means individual citizens lending money to the government

BOND

an agreement to lend money to be paid back, with interest, after a set amount of time

Setting up the WAR INDUSTRIES BOARD to manage the distribution and production of supplies, and the NATIONAL WAR LABOR BOARD to settle conflicts with unions without strikes

Urging people to save resources
(through the FUEL ADMINISTRATION) and food
(through the FOOD ADMINISTRATION)

Encouraging citizens to plant VICTORY GARDENS so that a higher percentage of the food from larger farms could go to soldiers



The U.S. had to work hard to produce enough supplies for its own army and its allies.

The HOME FRONT

The U.S. government had to deal with:

A LABOR SHORTAGE: With young men away fighting, women, immigrants, and African Americans got access to jobs they couldn't get before.

PUBLIC OPINION: The COMMITTEE ON PUBLIC INFORMATION created propaganda about German atrocities to keep people riled up. It worked, but it encouraged anti-German-American discrimination.

LIMITING CRITICISM: President Wilson signed into law the **ESPIONAGE** Act (specific penalties for spies) and the SEDITION ACT (making it illegal to express negative thoughts about the government).

ESPIONAGE
spying

Many pacifists and Socialists were jailed, including Eugene V. Debs. In the 1919 Supreme Court case of *SCHENCK v. UNITED STATES*, the Court ruled that limitations on free speech were valid in a time of war.

The SEDITION ACT was passed during World War I. The ALIEN AND SEDITION ACTS were passed in 1798. Both made SEDITION, or going against the government, illegal.

The FOURTEEN POINTS

On January 8, 1918, well before the war ended, President Wilson justified why the U.S. was going to war and gave a set of goals. He also informed Congress that this was "the war to end all wars" and he had made a plan to prevent another major war. The plan became known as the **FOURTEEN POINTS**, which stipulated:

1. No secret treaties/alliances
2. Freedom of navigation on the seas
3. Equality of trade
4. Smaller militaries
5. An adjustment of colonial claims
6. The evacuation and restoration of Russian territory
7. The evacuation and restoration of Belgian territory
8. The evacuation and restoration of French territory
9. A readjustment of Italian borders
10. **AUTONOMY** for the people of the former Austro-Hungarian Empire
11. The evacuation and restoration of the Balkan Peninsula (Romania, Serbia, and Montenegro)
12. Autonomy for Ottoman territory
13. The establishment of an independent Poland
14. **A LEAGUE OF NATIONS**—an organization of countries working together to resolve disputes

AUTONOMY
self-government

The RUSSIAN REVOLUTION

The Russians had taken huge casualties and the country was struggling. In March 1917, the Russian Revolution began. CZAR NICHOLAS II was forced to step down. The interim democratic government that replaced him failed to help with food shortages and low morale. In November 1917, a group called the **BOLSHEVIKS**, led by Vladimir Ilich Lenin, seized power and set up a **COMMUNIST** government. He promised "Land, Peace, Bread," which was a powerful message to a war-weary people.

BOLSHEVIK

a member of the movement that led the Russian Revolution in November 1917 and later became the Communist Party of the Soviet Union

COMMUNISM

a political/social system in which the people own and control everything

Russia was stretched too thin. It signed the **TREATY OF BREST-LITOVSK** with Germany in March 1918 to get out of the war. The treaty forced Russia to cede much of its territory to Germany. Germany was certain the war would end soon.



The SECOND BATTLE of the MARNE

On March 21 of 1918, in the SPRING OFFENSIVE, Germans marched nearly all the way to Paris hoping to end the war before the rest of the American forces arrived. In May and June, American forces stopped them at the battles of CHÂTEAU-THIERRY and BELLEAU WOOD. In July, the Spring Offensive ended with a turning-point battle: the SECOND BATTLE OF THE MARNE. The Germans lost the territory they had gained that spring, and the Allies went on the offensive.

BATTLE of the ARGONNE FOREST

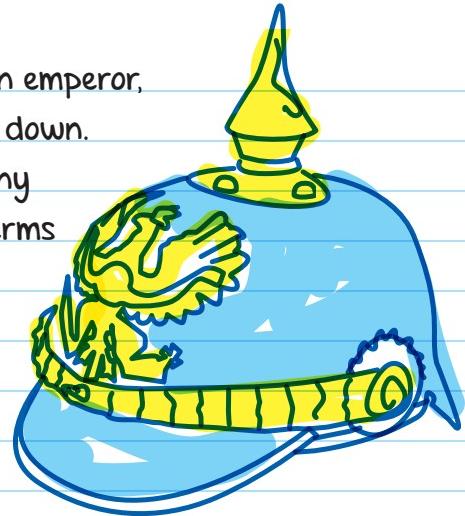
That September, the Allies continued to push the Germans back toward Germany. The AEF defeated them at the battle of SAINT-MIHIEL and then joined Allied troops for the BATTLE OF THE ARGONNE FOREST (also known as the MEUSE-ARGONNE OFFENSIVE) on September 26, 1918. Both sides took massive losses.

ARMISTICE

Germany had underestimated the American forces. Its navy was close to mutiny. The Central Powers were falling apart. Bulgaria and the Ottoman Empire withdrew from the war in early fall 1918, and the Austro-Hungarian Empire soon after. Parts of these empires, such as Poland, Czechoslovakia, and Hungary, declared themselves independent nations. Germany was experiencing a severe food shortage.

On November 9, 1918, the German emperor, **KAISER WILHELM II**, stepped down.

The new government of Germany agreed to President Wilson's terms for armistice. The cease fire became official at 11 a.m. on November 11, 1918: the eleventh hour of the eleventh day of the eleventh month.



The COST of WAR

The war had ravaged Europe and devastated an entire generation of European men. Historians' best guess is 37 million were killed or wounded in four years of fighting. With no working farms or factories, the European economy was devastated as well. And a flu **PANDEMIC** in 1918 killed more people than had died during the war. The world was ready for peace.

PANDEMIC

an epidemic, or widespread disease, that affects an entire country or continent, or even the entire world

3%–5% OF THE ENTIRE WORLD'S POPULATION

The TREATY of VERSAILLES

In 1919, the **BIG FOUR**—President Wilson, Prime Minister David Lloyd George of England, Premier Georges Clemenceau of France, and Prime Minister Vittorio Orlando of Italy—met at Versailles, near Paris. (No Central Powers were invited.) Wilson wanted to end the war with minimal animosity.

The European nations wanted Germany to take full blame, lose its colonies, lose its military, and pay **REPARATIONS**.

REPARATIONS

financial compensation paid to someone who has been wronged

On June 28, 1919, exactly five years after the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand and his wife, the Allies and Germany signed the **TREATY OF VERSAILLES**. It harshly punished Germany, split up the Austro-Hungarian and Ottoman Empires, and established the League of Nations. The treaty radically redrew the boundaries of Europe and the Middle East. The goal was to solve ethnic divisions, but the treaty led to more conflicts. (It is still a source of tension in the Middle East, where countries were literally created by drawing lines in the sand.)

The treaty did overlap with some of Wilson's Fourteen Points—but not all. Wilson returned to the U.S. and campaigned for the Treaty of Versailles, but Congress rejected it. They worried that the League of Nations would rob Congress of power by deciding when and where the American military would fight. Although Wilson had come up with the idea of the League of Nations, the U.S. never joined. Americans wanted to return to **ISOLATIONISM**.

Wilson suffered a massive stroke while campaigning for support of the League of Nations.

ISOLATIONISM

the policy of isolating one's country from the affairs of other nations by declining to enter into alliances or other international agreements



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Which country was the first to declare war in the conflict that would become World War I?
2. Why was the attack on the *LUSITANIA* significant?
3. Why were there far more casualties than in previous wars?
4. What was the motivation behind the Spring Offensive?
5. How was the Second Battle of the Marne a turning point in the Great War?
6. What was the point of the League of Nations?
7. Why did Congress reject the Treaty of Versailles?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Austria (against Serbia)
2. American civilians were killed, and anti-German feeling in the U.S. increased.
3. Modern weapons like machine guns and poison gas caused more deaths at a faster rate.
4. Germany wanted to end the war before the rest of the American forces arrived.
5. The Allies went on the offensive after the battle, rather than just defending their territory. Also, the Germans lost territory.
6. To use diplomacy to prevent another global war
7. They believed the League of Nations would take power away from them.

★ Chapter 33 ★

The ROARING TWENTIES

BACK to NORMAL... OR NOT

World War I left a scar on American life.

1. THE ECONOMY:

When soldiers returned home, the government didn't need extra workers to make supplies for them anymore; this led to high unemployment.

2. LABOR:

Wages and prices had been kept down during the war; after the war, prices went up, but not wages, leading to strikes.

3. NATIVISM AND RACISM:

With the lack of jobs, racism and anti-immigrant feelings increased ("They're taking our jobs!").

The RED SCARE

Americans were afraid the Communist takeover in Russia would repeat itself in the U.S. and put an end to capitalism.

This led to the **RED SCARE**, a fear of Communists, or **REDS**, and other "radicals." When bombings took place across the country, Reds were blamed, and **ATTORNEY GENERAL A.**

MITCHELL PALMER led the **PALMER RAIDS** ←
on suspected Communists, **SOCIALISTS**, and
anarchists, often without warrants.

Labor unions were deemed Communist organizations, and when workers began to strike, violent government intervention was seen as justified.

BUT NO MAJOR DISCOVERIES WERE EVER MADE

SOCIALISM

a system in which property and the means of production are owned and controlled by the state

The trial and execution of **NICOLA SACCO** and **BARTOLOMEO VANZETTI** suggested that the Red Scare had a nativist foundation: The two Italian-born anarchists were sentenced to death for killing two men during a robbery. They probably didn't get a fair trial.

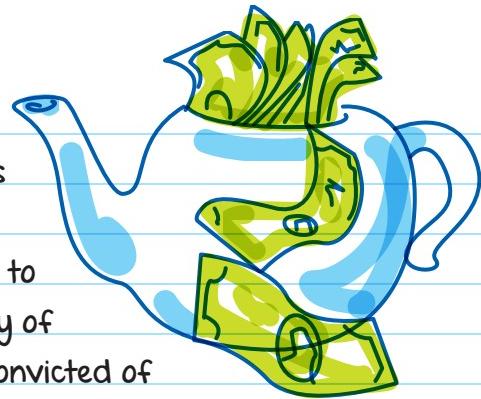
HARDING'S REPUBLICANISM

Americans wanted to return to the "normal" way of life before the war. During the 1920 presidential election,

WARREN G. HARDING, a Republican senator from Ohio, made this idea his campaign promise. A strong believer in small government, as president he instituted income tax reductions, especially for the wealthy, and high tariffs.

TEAPOT DOME

Harding appointed his friends from Ohio, many of whom were unqualified and corrupt, to important positions. Secretary of the Interior Albert Fall was convicted of accepting bribes from oil executives for rights to drill on government land in Teapot Dome, Wyoming, which became known as the **TEAPOT DOME SCANDAL**. When Harding died of a heart attack on August 2, 1923, his vice president, **CALVIN COOLIDGE**, became president.



CALVIN COOLIDGE

Coolidge was seen as quiet and honest. He believed in laissez-faire economics and tried to keep the government out of the economy. He was reelected in 1924 on the strengths of his beliefs in minimal government, high tariffs, and low taxes. Coolidge is known for the **KELLOGG-BRIAND PACT** of 1928, which made war illegal. More than 60 nations signed the agreement (but think about it: How do you enforce something that says you can't fight?).

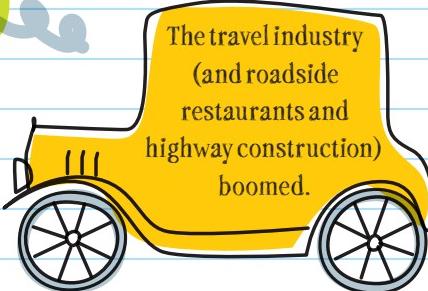
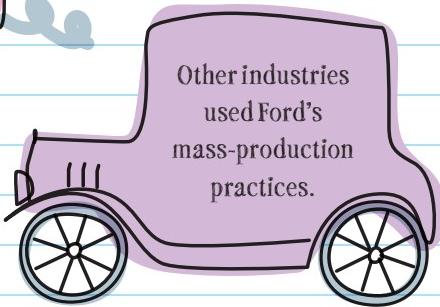
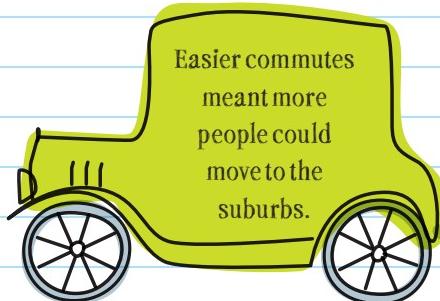
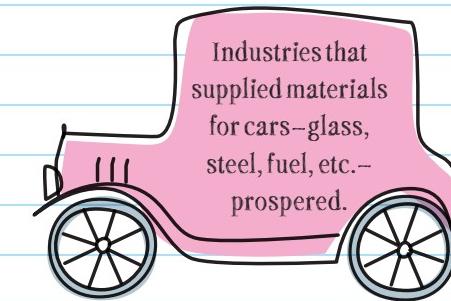
In 1924, the year Coolidge was reelected, **NELLIE T. ROSS** of Wyoming and **MIRIAM A. FERGUSON** of Texas were elected the nation's first female governors.

In 1916, **JEANNETTE RANKIN** had become the first woman elected to the U.S. Congress.

AUTOMOBILES

By the 1920s, prosperity was on the rise again, which meant Americans wanted to own fancy new things—like Henry Ford's **MODEL T** automobile (the "Tin Lizzie"). Ford made the price of his car affordable using the assembly line system and let customers pay on an **INSTALLMENT PLAN**.

HOW AUTOMOBILES AFFECTED AMERICAN LIFE:



ALL THAT JAZZ

People had shorter workdays, more leisure time, and a live-for-today attitude. Young people moved to the cities.

The excitement and modernity of this time period gave it the nickname the **ROARING TWENTIES**.

RADIOS became a part of every home, and radio networks like NBC and CBS made sure that Americans from coast to coast listened to the same programs (and ads).

The FILM INDUSTRY grew. Hollywood became the center of a major industry. "Talkies"—as opposed to silent movies—were introduced.

Americans followed the lives of celebrities, from sports stars (like **BABE RUTH**) to pilots (like **CHARLES LINDBERGH** and **AMELIA EARHART**).

Women were voting, were better educated, and were working (still mostly as nurses, teachers, secretaries, and clerks).

Women called FLAPPERS wore their hair and skirts short to rebel against traditional ideas of ladylike behavior.

Other new aspects of popular culture were ART DECO architecture, crossword puzzles, and dances like the Charleston.

MUSIC was a big part of pop culture, specifically JAZZ. Jazz originated in New Orleans. It was influenced by African American music and is a truly American art form. This decade is also called the JAZZ AGE.

The HARLEM RENAISSANCE

During World War I, many African Americans moved from the South to the North to work in factories in the **GREAT MIGRATION**.

African Americans brought jazz and the blues with them to the North.

The Great Migration was met with resistance, especially by the KKK, which was no longer limited to the South. To fight back, organizations like the NAACP worked to secure civil rights. A reformer,

MARCUS GARVEY, founded the **UNIVERSAL NEGRO IMPROVEMENT ASSOCIATION (UNIA)** and advocated a large-scale return to Africa. The plans fell short, but he did encourage **BLACK NATIONALISM** and a sense of African American racial dignity.

African American communities thrived in New York City's **HARLEM**, a neighborhood where overdevelopment had driven down the price of real estate. Harlem became home to many artists and gave rise

DON'T CONFUSE WITH THE GREAT MIGRATION FROM ENGLAND TO THE PRESENT-DAY U.S. FROM 1629 TO 1640.

The KKK was virtually wiped out after the Force Acts under the Grant administration. It returned after D. W. Griffith released his film *The Birth of a Nation*, which portrayed the KKK as heroic.



to the **HARLEM RENAISSANCE**—a movement of vibrant intellectual and artistic development. Prominent names of this movement include writers like **LANGSTON HUGHES** and **ZORA NEALE HURSTON** and jazz artists such as **DUKE ELLINGTON**.

African Americans weren't the only minority group fighting for their civil rights in the 1920s. The **LEAGUE OF UNITED LATIN AMERICAN CITIZENS** (LULAC) was founded, and the **INDIAN CITIZENSHIP ACT**, granting full citizenship to Native Americans, was passed.

BACKLASH

Rapid modernization also created a backlash, especially in rural areas:

More NATIVISM:

The **EMERGENCY QUOTA ACT** of 1921 and the **NATIONAL ORIGINS ACT** of 1924 set limits on the number of immigrants who could come to the U.S.

FUNDAMENTALISM:

This religious movement centered on the belief in a literal interpretation of the Bible, particularly regarding **CREATIONISM**.

CREATIONISM

the belief that man was created by God exactly as described in the Judeo-Christian Bible

In 1925, a teacher named JOHN SCOPES broke Tennessee law by teaching his students about evolution. During his trial (the "Scopes Monkey Trial"), WILLIAM JENNINGS BRYAN represented the prosecution and CLARENCE DARROW (and the American Civil Liberties Union) defended Scopes. Scopes was originally found guilty of violating the law, but the state supreme court overturned the ruling on a technicality. The law itself was eventually ruled unconstitutional. However, it was not repealed until 1967.

PROHIBITION:

Prohibition (a ban on alcohol) began in 1920. It was hard to enforce because people could make their own alcohol or buy it in underground bars called SPEAKEASIES. Outlaws known as BOOTLEGGERS also smuggled alcohol. Some worked with gangsters like AL CAPONE. Prohibition made organized crime worse. It was repealed by the TWENTY-FIRST AMENDMENT in 1933.

The LOST GENERATION:

Many well-educated and creative people—including writers like ERNEST HEMINGWAY and F. SCOTT FITZGERALD—grew disenchanted with the violence of World War I, consumerism, and the U.S. in general.

Many lived as EXPATRIATES.

EXPATRIATE
someone who chooses
not to live in his
home country



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What caused unemployment after WWI?
2. What were the Palmer Raids meant to uncover?
3. Why were the twenties "roaring"?
4. What were the musical origins of jazz?
5. How did Harlem become a thriving neighborhood of African American artists?
6. What was the verdict in the Scopes Monkey Trial?
7. How did Prohibition support the spread of organized crime?
8. Which parts of American culture were members of the "Lost Generation" upset about?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Soldiers returning home meant an excess of labor.
2. They were meant to uncover Communists, Socialists, and anarchists, but no major discoveries were made.
3. The economy was doing better and American culture was experiencing a period of excitement and leisure.
4. Jazz originated with African American music in New Orleans.
5. Affordable real estate attracted many artists to settle in the area.
6. The state supreme court of Tennessee overruled the original guilty verdict on a technicality, but the law itself was eventually ruled unconstitutional.
7. With alcohol illegal, people who wanted to drink depended on bootleggers and mobsters to smuggle it in.
8. They were disillusioned by consumerism and war.



★ Chapter 34 ★

The GREAT DEPRESSION

STOCK
MARKET

CRASH

During the boom of the 1920s, many people hoped to grow their wealth by speculating in the STOCK EXCHANGE, a market for shares of companies. If a company does well, the value of the stock increases and the owner can then sell the stock for a profit.

During the BULL MARKET of the 1920s, people bought stocks eagerly, because their



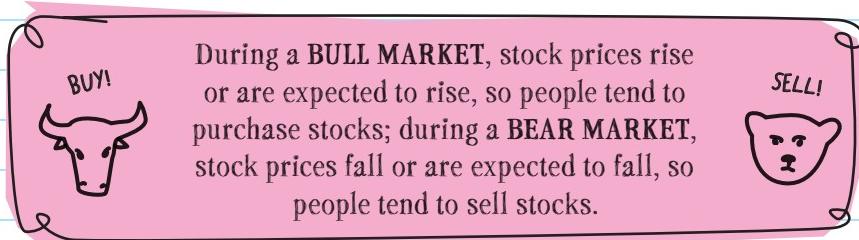
values were increasing, even though the companies were not worth any more than they had been. Some people bought stocks using borrowed money, which they hoped to pay back with the profit from their stock. People were also "buying on margin," which meant they only paid 10 percent of the stock price initially. They hoped the price would rise quickly so they could resell for a profit.

In the middle of 1929, the value of stocks reached a high point, and some people decided to sell their shares.

The more people sold, the fewer people wanted to buy, decreasing and decreasing the value of the stocks.

On October 29, 1929, a day known as **BLACK TUESDAY**, the stock market **CRASHED** to almost zero value.

Many people lost all their money in a single day.



The GREAT DEPRESSION

Black Tuesday was the beginning of the **GREAT DEPRESSION**, the worst economic crisis in American history. Many people had bought stocks on the **EASY CREDIT** of the 1920s, but when they **DEFAULTED** on their loans, banks and stockbrokers lost

DEFAULT
to fail to pay a debt

money too. However, the stock market crash was only a small part of the cause of the Great Depression:

The illusion of wealth that swept the country in the previous decade had led to overproduction in factories and agriculture.

In reality, few people could afford to purchase the goods produced. The surplus (an excess) caused prices to fall, which caused profits to fall, which led companies to lay off their workers. Due to high unemployment, even fewer people could afford the goods, causing the cycle to **SNOWBALL**.

SNOWBALL
to grow or become larger or more intense at an accelerating rate

Anyone who deposited money into a bank account lost it if the bank went out of business. When people with savings in banks saw that loans were being defaulted on, they panicked and withdrew as much money as possible, causing a “run” on the banks. This put more banks out of business, making it impossible for other businesses to take out loans; layoffs followed, and this process snowballed, too.

Tough economic times in other countries reduced the market for exports.

HOOVER'S ECONOMICS

The president at the start of the Great Depression was **HERBERT HOOVER**. During the election of 1928, the Republican Party was credited with the perceived prosperity of the time, so when the Republican Party nominated Hoover, he was virtually assured a victory.

Hoover was a strong believer in laissez-faire economics and small government. Hoover's stance on the Depression was that it was not the job of the federal government to take care of people; instead, the crisis would take care of itself as part of what many thought was a normal cycle of the economy.

→ 24 PERCENT OF AMERICANS (12 MILLION PEOPLE) WERE UNEMPLOYED.

High unemployment, hunger, and homelessness were on the rise across the country. Children left school to work or ran away because they felt they were a burden on their parents. Families fell apart. Even when the nation pleaded with the government to act, Hoover refused. The **SHANTYTOWNS** that sprang up to house people evicted from their homes became known as **HOOVERVILLES**.

SHANTYTOWN
a neighborhood of informal houses, usually made from discarded materials

Eventually, Hoover gave in.

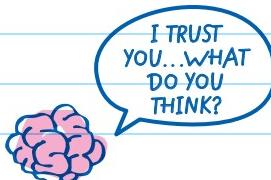
In 1931, he authorized spending on public works (such as the Boulder Dam, now the **HOOVER DAM**) to create jobs, and in 1932, he agreed to the creation of the Reconstruction Finance Corporation, which made loans to banks and businesses.

The BONUS ARMY

Hoover's reputation was damaged even more when, in the summer of 1932, World War I veterans who were due to receive bonus pay in 1945 marched on Washington to demand early payment. When Hoover and the Congress refused, some of the protestors stayed in a D.C.-area Hooverville. Under Hoover's direction, **GENERAL DOUGLAS MacARTHUR** led the military to drive out the "**BONUS ARMY**" using tanks and tear gas. Several Great War veterans were killed, and the public was shocked.

FRANKLIN DELANO ROOSEVELT

Hoover ran for president again in 1932, even though he knew that his chances of winning were slim. His Democratic rival, **FRANKLIN DELANO ROOSEVELT (FDR)**, was a distant cousin of Teddy Roosevelt, and he was paralyzed from the waist down from polio. Roosevelt had an excellent record of helping the people of New York, where he was governor, and a strong group of advisers known as the **BRAIN TRUST** helped him with policy. His campaign promised a "**NEW DEAL**" for Americans, and he won the election easily.



The FIRST NEW DEAL

In his first inaugural address, FDR famously told the nation that "**THE ONLY THING WE HAVE TO FEAR IS FEAR ITSELF.**" and he quickly set out to destroy that fear. Roosevelt became president on March 4, 1933, and he called a special session of Congress that is known as the **HUNDRED DAYS**. He instituted a **BANK HOLIDAY**, closing all banks in the nation for a few days while the **EMERGENCY BANKING RELIEF ACT** was passed, and only reopened the ones that were stable. He then gave the first of his many radio addresses to the nation—a **FIRESIDE CHAT**—in which he explained the new banking policy and eased fears. Beginning during the Hundred Days and continuing until 1935, President Roosevelt instituted the programs that comprised the **FIRST NEW DEAL**, which included the founding of these agencies:

CALLED THE "ALPHABET AGENCIES"
FOR ALL THE ACRONYMS

FEDERAL EMERGENCY RELIEF ADMINISTRATION (FERA),
which helped the unemployed

AGRICULTURAL ADJUSTMENT ADMINISTRATION (AAA),
which **SUBSIDIZED** farmers for occasionally destroying their crops. This kept food supplies low and prices high (this policy was controversial, as hunger remained a problem for many people and yet food was being thrown away).

SUBSIDY
money given by the government to help an industry or business to achieve a public goal

PUBLIC WORKS

ADMINISTRATION (PWA), which sponsored public works and created jobs

PUBLIC WORKS

work like building roads, schools, and infrastructure that is done by the government for the public

CIVILIAN CONSERVATION CORPS (CCC), which was similar to the PWA but focused on conservation projects

FEDERAL DEPOSIT INSURANCE CORPORATION (FDIC), which insured bank deposits so people would not lose their money if banks failed

TENNESSEE VALLEY AUTHORITY (TVA), which brought electricity to the Tennessee Valley through new dams and created jobs in the area

NATIONAL INDUSTRIAL RECOVERY ACT (NIRA), which set labor standards (such as minimum wage and a ban on child labor)

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION (SEC), which regulated the stock market

The SECOND NEW DEAL

In the 1934 midterm elections, and then during the 1936 presidential election, the nation showed strong support for the Democratic Party and Roosevelt, who won in a landslide victory. Although some conservatives thought the New Deal was a Socialist abuse of presidential power, and some liberals (notably Senator Huey Long of Louisiana) thought it didn't go far enough toward redistribution of wealth, most people needed more assistance. The Depression was still in full force.

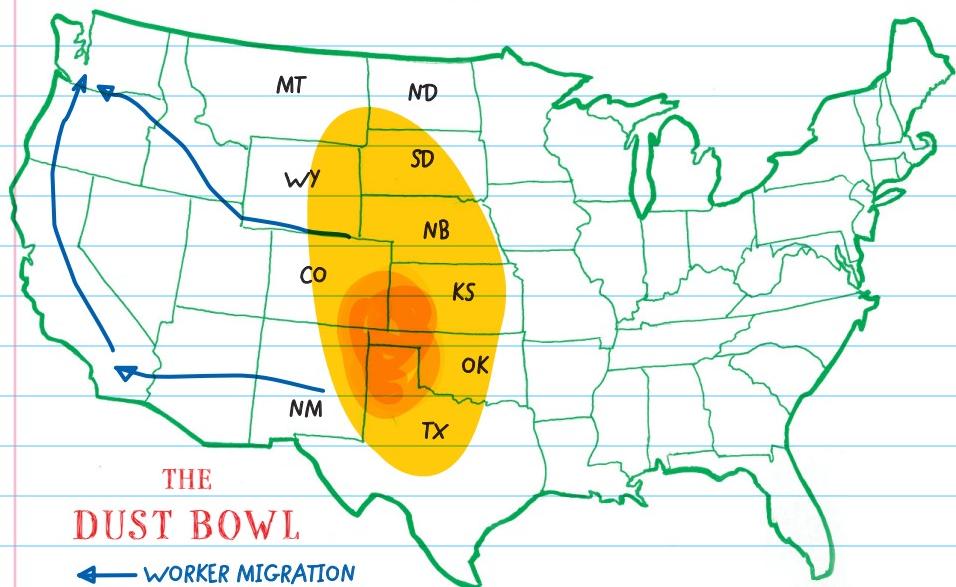
So when the New Deal began to expire, Roosevelt instituted a **SECOND NEW DEAL**. More than the first set of programs, these initiatives attempted to instigate true social change rather than simply help people get by. The new **WORKS PROGRESS ADMINISTRATION (WPA)** was much like the PWA but went further to employ artists and young people. The **REVENUE ACT OF 1935** raised taxes on the rich, and the **WAGNER ACT** made sure that labor unions had the right to fair negotiations. Perhaps most importantly, the **SOCIAL SECURITY ACT** (August 1935) gave birth to the modern system of **WELFARE** in America: People pay Social Security taxes throughout their working lives and, in return, receive payment back when they retire or if they are unable to work.

WELFARE
assistance from the government, usually in the form of money

The DUST BOWL

In addition to the Depression, Americans were hit with another misfortune during the 1930s: In 1931, a severe drought struck the Great Plains, which turned the area into a **DUST BOWL** that lasted more than a decade. For years before, farmers had cleared land in such a way that the natural grass lost the roots that would connect it to topsoil. When winds came through, the dry dirt, unanchored by grass, was swept into dust storms. Farmers from Oklahoma in particular left the area to become **MIGRANT WORKERS** in California. The poverty-stricken Oklahoma natives were known as **OKIES**.

John Steinbeck's Great Depression-era novel *THE GRAPES OF WRATH* is about this experience.



LABOR STRENGTH

The Supreme Court struck down the NIRA as an unconstitutional restriction of commerce. Congress responded by passing the **NATIONAL LABOR RELATIONS ACT**, also known as the **WAGNER ACT**, in 1935, guaranteeing certain rights to unions. The AFL remained strong, and the newly founded **CONGRESS OF INDUSTRIAL ORGANIZATIONS (CIO)** increased its membership by welcoming women, minorities, and unskilled laborers. Unions began using **SIT-DOWN STRIKES**, which were strikes that took place within the factories. Remarkably, unions and labor organizations grew at a time when America had a surplus of labor.

The Supreme Court struck down key pieces of FDR's New Deal legislation. In response, in February 1937, Roosevelt proposed adding more justices, which would ensure a liberal majority in the court. However, Democrats and Republicans in Congress opposed the so-called court-packing scheme.

UNIONS' UPS AND DOWNS

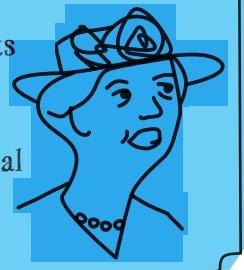
When people are worried about their jobs (low demand for labor), they are more motivated to protect themselves with unions but also don't want to make waves. On the other hand, when more workers are needed (high demand for labor), people have less of a need for unions, but the unions feel more free to make demands.

DISCRIMINATION

Another aspect of Roosevelt's presidency was his stance on civil rights. Especially during the 1936 presidential elections, many African Americans switched over to the Democratic Party thanks to FDR's policies. It was the first time, as a demographic group, that they stepped away from the "Party of Lincoln" (from which the current Republican Party developed). Roosevelt relied on his wife, **ELEANOR ROOSEVELT**, and a "**BLACK CABINET**" to advise him on matters affecting the black population.

At the same time, Eleanor Roosevelt rose to prominence in national life and became a sign of the advancement of women's rights. FDR appointed the first female cabinet member, **FRANCES PERKINS**, as secretary of labor.

Eleanor Roosevelt was a controversial first lady and an American politician, diplomat, and activist in her own right. She was outspoken and active in fighting for the rights of women, African and Asian Americans, and war refugees. She famously arranged a concert by the black singer Marian Anderson at the Lincoln Memorial after the Daughters of the American Revolution banned her from singing at Constitution Hall.



ESCAPISM

Although some art that emerged during the Great Depression took a serious look at American life (like *THE GRAPES OF WRATH* and Woody Guthrie's folk music), the 1930s were also the height of **ESCAPISM**. People watched movies

and listened to music and radio to get away from daily life. Soap operas, radio dramas, big band and swing music, and movies such as **THE WIZARD OF OZ**, **KING KONG**, and **GONE WITH THE WIND** helped many Americans make it through the decade.



ESCAPISM

escaping from daily life, usually through entertainment

The END of the DEPRESSION

In 1937, it seemed as though the New Deal was working.

Roosevelt decided that it was time to cut the **DEFICIT**, which had grown during the Depression. However, to do so, he needed to decrease spending on recovery programs—and when he did this, he miscalculated the stability of the economy.

DEFICIT

the amount by which more money is spent than is coming in

Roosevelt's decision to decrease spending, combined with the tight credit, led to another dip in the nation's economy, known as the **ROOSEVELT RECESSION**. Full recovery did not occur until World War II began. Most of the New Deal programs expired or were canceled as the economy improved, but some of them—such as Social Security, the FDIC, and the SEC—remain central aspects of the relationship between American citizens and the federal government.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why was there a large surplus in manufactured goods at the start of the Depression?
2. What caused the runs on the banks at the start of the Depression?
3. How did Hoover think the Depression would end?
4. How did President Roosevelt's approach to the economy differ from Hoover's?
5. How did public works projects help the economy?
6. How does Social Security work?
7. Why did movies like THE WIZARD OF OZ appeal to audiences in the 1930s?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Most people were not actually rich in the 1920s, despite the economic boom. However, the commonly held belief that the whole country was wealthy led to overproduction of goods.
2. Defaults caused banks to go out of business.
3. He thought it would be resolved as part of the cyclical nature of the economy.
4. FDR actively intervened to end the Depression.
5. They created jobs.
6. People pay a tax on their salaries when they are working, and receive a share back when they retire or become otherwise unable to work.
7. People were looking for an escape from their daily lives.



Unit 8

World War II 1930s–1945



Once again, the world would split into two warring sides:

The AXIS POWERS

Germany
Italy
Japan

The ALLIED POWERS

Great Britain
France ← UNTIL GERMANY
INVADED
The Soviet Union
The U.S. ← AFTER
1941
China
(and many more countries)

Like any war, World War II had its causes and effects, its heroes and victims, and it led to destruction. Only, in this war, the destruction was more extreme.



Chapter 35



WORLD WAR II BEGINS



TOTALITARIANISM

After World War I, poverty, instability, and dissatisfaction in Europe led to the rise of **TOTALITARIAN** dictators, who promised they could create change if only they had complete control of **EVERYTHING**.

Totalitarian leaders did bring stability to their countries—at the cost of individual liberty.

TOTALITARIANISM

a system in which the government acts as absolute ruler with complete control over every element of life

Italy had been one of the Big Four nations to negotiate the Treaty of Versailles, but economic failure led to chaos. In

FASCISM

a form of totalitarianism that emphasizes nationalism and conformity

1922, **BENITO MUSSOLINI**, the leader of a **FASCIST** totalitarian movement, forced the king of Italy to grant him power. He named himself dictator under the title *IL DUCE* (the leader).

The USSR formed in 1922 when the Russian Socialist Federative Soviet Republic (RSFSR) united with three smaller Soviet republics.

"USSR" OR
"SOVIET UNION"

In the UNION OF SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLICS, after the death of Lenin in 1924, JOSEPH STALIN took control. He began to **EXTERMINATE** any Soviet citizen he thought was an enemy.

EXTERMINATE
put to death

In Germany, the debt from reparation payments for World War I and from having to shut down its military had pretty much brought about an economic collapse and destroyed the nation. ADOLF HITLER and the NATIONAL SOCIALIST GERMAN WORKERS' PARTY—the NAZIS (from the German word NATIONALSOZIALISTISCHE)—won the 1932 German elections, and Hitler was appointed CHANCELLOR. He promoted the idea of ARYAN superiority and gave Germans someone to blame for their problems: the Jewish population. Hitler named himself FÜHRER and took control.

ARYAN
of Northern European heritage; non-Jewish

FÜHRER
German for "leader"

TOTALITARIAN EXPANSIONISM

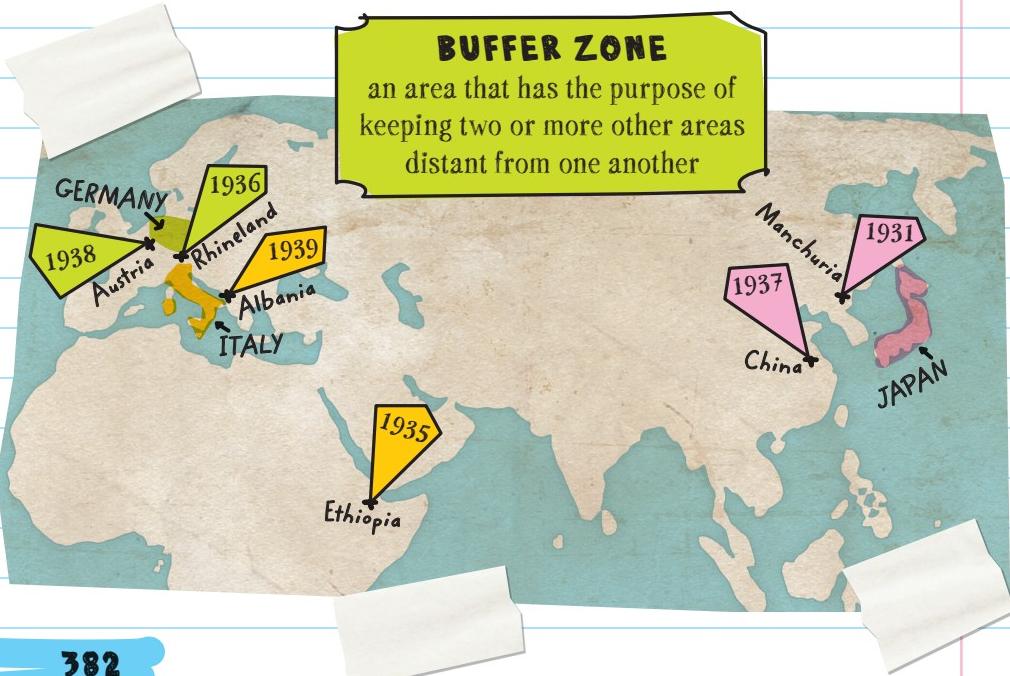
Each totalitarian leader believed that his country was superior to all others and had the right to conquer.

JAPAN NEEDED COLONIES
WITH NATURAL
RESOURCES TO EXPAND.

In 1931, Japan invaded Manchuria; in 1937, Japan invaded China, where it perpetrated the **NANJING MASSACRE**, which was a violent attack on the city of Nanjing and its people.

In 1935, Italy conquered Ethiopia and left the League of Nations. In 1939, Italy conquered Albania.

In 1936, Germany annexed the **RHINELAND**, a coal-rich area that the Treaty of Versailles had declared a neutral **BUFFER ZONE**. In 1938, Germany conquered Austria.



APPEASEMENT at MUNICH

APPEASEMENT

compromise; giving something up in order to maintain peace

Hitler's next target was the

SUDETENLAND, an area of Czechoslovakia with a large German population. Czechoslovakia turned to France and England for help. In September 1938, British Prime Minister **NEVILLE CHAMBERLAIN** proposed that Hitler could have the Sudetenland if he promised not to invade anywhere else.

This **APPEASEMENT** was supposed to prevent another war. In March of 1939, Hitler went ahead and conquered Czechoslovakia. England and France warned that they'd defend Poland, which seemed to be Hitler's next target.

The AXIS

With their similar philosophies, these dictators formed alliances. In 1936, Hitler and Mussolini formed the Rome-Berlin Axis, aka **THE AXIS**. Japan joined the pact in 1940. Stalin didn't join the Axis, but signed a **NON-AGGRESSION PACT** with Germany. The two countries agreed not to attack each other and secretly agreed to grab Poland and divide it between them.

WORLD WAR... AGAIN



On September 1, 1939, Germany invaded Poland. On September 3, Britain and France declared war on Germany, as promised. World War II had begun. Hitler used a **BLITZKRIEG** ("lightning war")—a tactic that combined speed and surprise—to conquer Poland in only a few weeks.



The USSR also attacked Poland and then moved on to the Baltic Peninsula and Finland. Hitler moved north, conquering Denmark and Norway in April 1940, then Belgium, the Netherlands, and Luxembourg.

WAR in WESTERN EUROPE

France was the next target. Allied troops had set up along the **MAGINOT LINE** at the German border, but they were forced to retreat to **DUNKIRK**, a French town on the English Channel, where they were trapped as the Germans invaded from the north and Italy attacked from the south. On June 14, 1940, the

Germans seized Paris, and France surrendered on June 22. Thousands of French and British soldiers at Dunkirk escaped on fishing boats and went to England, where they joined the Free French Forces led by **GENERAL CHARLES DE GAULLE**. It was far easier to replace military equipment than men, so it was important that they live to fight another day.

FUTURE PRESIDENT OF FRANCE

The BATTLE of BRITAIN

In the summer of 1940, Hitler began his air attack on England. During the **BATTLE OF BRITAIN**, the **LUFTWAFFE** (Germany's air force) heavily bombed London and other parts of England. Britain, led by **PRIME MINISTER WINSTON CHURCHILL**, refused to surrender. The **ROYAL AIR FORCE (RAF)** fought the **LUFTWAFFE** until the Germans retreated.



MEANS "AIR WEAPONS"

Hitler decided to change directions. Needing the resources and manpower of the Soviet Union, but worried about competition from Stalin, he decided to attack Russia in June 1941, breaking the pact the two countries had formed. The Soviets were forced to retreat, losing thousands of troops who were captured or killed. Stalin changed course as well: Stalin joined the Allies and ordered his people to destroy their own resources and burn their own cities before the Germans could get them. This is the **SCORCHED EARTH** tactic.

A lot of children were evacuated from London during the bombings. This event even appears in the Chronicles of Narnia books: The main characters are sent away to live in the English countryside.

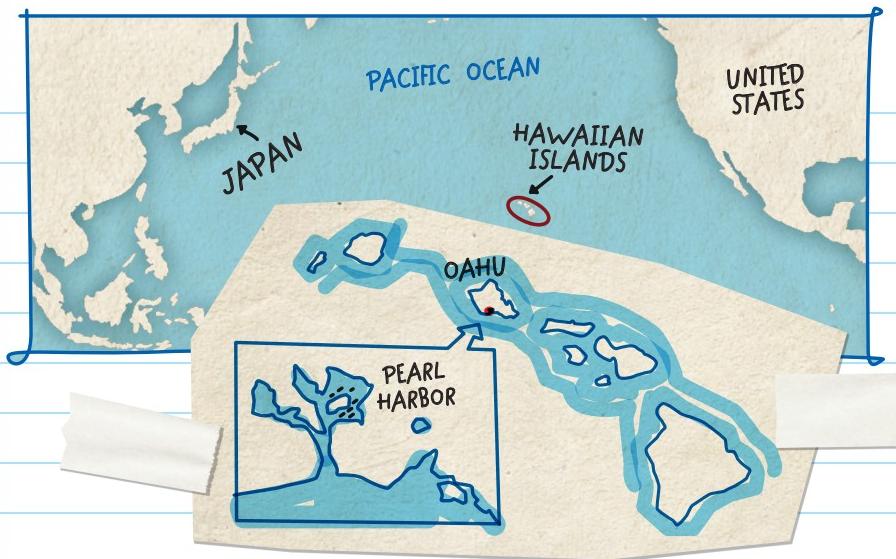
ISOLATIONISM v. REALITY

The U.S. tried to stay neutral. Between 1935 and 1937, Congress passed the **NEUTRALITY ACTS**, making it illegal for Americans to sell weapons or loan money to foreign nations. When FDR was elected for a third term (the first time any president had served more than twice) in 1940, he knew the nation was on the brink of war.

Congress had expanded the American military at FDR's request, and in 1940, it passed the **SELECTIVE TRAINING AND SERVICE ACT**, the first **PEACETIME DRAFT** in American history. In March 1941, the **LEND-LEASE ACT** made it legal to sell or lend weapons and supplies to the Allies. That August, after German attacks on American destroyers, FDR and Churchill issued the **ATLANTIC CHARTER**. It stated that neither country had any territorial ambitions in the war and that all people had the right to determine and live under a government of their own choosing.

PEARL HARBOR

Meanwhile, in Japan, **HIDEKI TŌJŌ**, a military leader, was elected prime minister in 1941. Tōjō became a dictator and soon had more influence than the emperor of Japan. After



successful invasions in mainland Asia, Tōjō set his sights on islands like the Philippines (then controlled by the U.S.).

To destroy the American navy, on **DECEMBER 7, 1941**—the day President Roosevelt called "**A DATE WHICH WILL LIVE IN INFAMY**"—Japan launched a surprise attack on the naval base at **PEARL HARBOR**, Hawaii. It was a devastating attack that sank or heavily damaged eight U.S. battleships along with three cruisers and several other ships. A total of 2,403 American civilians and servicemen were killed, and 1,178 were wounded. The only thing that spared even more U.S. lives was the fact that the U.S. carrier fleet was not in port and thus was undamaged.

The next day, FDR asked Congress to declare war on Japan. Three days later, Germany and Italy declared war on the U.S., so Congress declared war back.

MOBILIZATION on the HOMEFRONT

Industries produced tanks, ammunition, and other war-related products under the direction of the government. All that work ended the Great Depression, creating an employment rate of almost 100 percent. New government agencies formed, just like in World War I:

The **WAR PRODUCTION BOARD** decided which goods factories would produce. Americans were encouraged to **RATION** food and grow victory gardens.

The **OFFICE OF PRICE ADMINISTRATION** controlled inflation.

The **NATIONAL WAR LABOR BOARD** resolved labor conflicts.

The **REVENUE ACT OF 1942** raised taxes; the government also raised money by selling **WAR BONDS**.

OPPORTUNITIES and DISCRIMINATION

World War II provided opportunities for women and minorities:

Posters of **ROSIE THE RIVETER** were used to encourage women to work in factories and the defense industry.

RATIONING

control of how much of something is available to each individual in a group



Women enlisted in high numbers as **WACs** (Women's Army Corps), **WAVES** (Women Appointed for Volunteer Emergency Service) in the navy, or **WASPs** (Women's Airforce Service Pilots), but as noncombatants.

Threats by black labor leader A. **PHILIP RANDOLPH** to protest in Washington, D.C., led Roosevelt to sign **EXECUTIVE ORDER 8802** (the **FAIR EMPLOYMENT ACT**), prohibiting discrimination in factories supplying the war effort.

African Americans worked in defense factories in the North.

Army units were segregated at the beginning of the war, but there was integration over the course of the fighting. Famous black units included the **TUSKEGEE AIRMEN**.

Native Americans fought, and they also created unbreakable secret codes based on the Navajo language.

The government recruited Mexican American laborers called **BRACEROS** to work in agriculture.

ON THE FLIP SIDE:

Women were still paid much less than men.

Greater African American and Mexican American presence in cities led to tension and riots, including the 1943 "ZOOT SUIT RIOTS" in LA, named after the clothing style worn by many young Latino men at the time.

Minorities were paid less than white workers.

JAPANESE INTERNMENT

Japanese immigrants (*ISSEI* in Japanese) and Americans of Japanese descent (*NISEI*) faced discrimination.

Even people born in the U.S. were suspected of being spies.

In February 1942, Roosevelt issued **EXECUTIVE ORDER 9066**, forcing Japanese Americans to leave their homes and move to **INTERNMENT CAMPS**. In 1944, in the case of **KOREMATSU V. UNITED STATES**, the Supreme Court upheld this as necessary.

In 1942, the 442 Regimental Combat Team was created and composed of Japanese Americans. They served heroically during the war in Europe but were not allowed to fight in the Pacific.

Over forty years later, Congress admitted that the internment had been wrong and made a formal apology.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Which conditions in Europe contributed to the rise of totalitarianism?
2. What is fascism?
3. Why did Neville Chamberlain agree to give Hitler the Sudetenland?
4. What did Stalin instruct his people to do when Germany invaded Russia?
5. How did America help the Allies before Pearl Harbor?
6. How did World War II contribute to the end of the Great Depression?
7. What were Japanese Americans suspected of that led to Executive Order 9066?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Instability, low morale, and economic trouble
2. Fascism is nationalistic totalitarianism that was practiced by Mussolini.
3. He thought that appeasement would prevent further German invasions.
4. He told them to destroy their resources so the Germans couldn't get them.
5. The Lend-Lease Act allowed weapons and supplies to be leased to the Allies.
6. The economy was improved by the high demand for war supplies and labor.
7. Espionage, or spying

★ Chapter 36 ★

AMERICA ENTERS the WAR in EUROPE

ALLIED STRATEGY

With a draft and volunteers, the American military was ready to fight with the Allies. But where? The U.S. had to fight in the Atlantic and Pacific. Stalin wanted continental Europe to be the first target. Churchill thought the inexperienced American troops would be easily defeated and stretched too thin. He suggested that Americans head to German-occupied North Africa. In December of 1941, FDR agreed to Churchill's plan, leaving Stalin to handle Europe.

FIRST, NORTH AFRICA

The fighting in North Africa stretched throughout several countries. In June 1942, the German **AFRIKA KORPS**, led by the "DESERT FOX," **GENERAL ERWIN ROMMEL**, pushed into Egypt. In the **BATTLE OF EL ALAMEIN**, the British stopped the German advance, preventing them from capturing the

ANOTHER REASON WHY CHURCHILL
WANTED AMERICAN TROOPS IN AFRICA

strategically located **SUEZ CANAL**, the British-controlled water route between the Mediterranean and Red Seas.

Later that year, **GENERAL DWIGHT D. EISENHOWER** set up headquarters in Gibraltar, and in 1943, the Allies helped drive the Afrika Korps out of North Africa.



THEN, ITALY

The Allies reentered Europe from the south. In July 1943, they landed on Sicily, an Italian island. Led by **GENERAL GEORGE S. PATTON**, they moved on to mainland Italy. By then, after losses in Africa and shortages in Italy, Italian leaders had overthrown Mussolini, and the new government surrendered to the Allies. Hitler didn't accept defeat. He sent more Axis troops. In January 1944, the Allies surprised German troops at Anzio, a city on the western coast of Italy, and, after several months, defeated them. By June 1944, Rome was liberated.

MEANWHILE, in RUSSIA

After their invasion of Russia in September 1942, German troops advanced to the industrial city of **STALINGRAD**. But when winter came, the cold was so severe that much of the German army starved or froze to death. Still, Hitler refused to withdraw. In January of 1943, German commander General von Paulus defied the Führer's wishes and retreated. The Soviets suffered massive losses, but their victory was a turning point in the war because it showed Hitler's totalitarianism was weakening. The Germans tried to seize Leningrad (modern-day St. Petersburg), but the Russians pushed them west.

Just as harsh weather conditions in Russia stymied the German army, weather was a factor in the defeat of Napoleon's army in 1812. Russia has been a challenging country to conquer because of its natural safeguards.

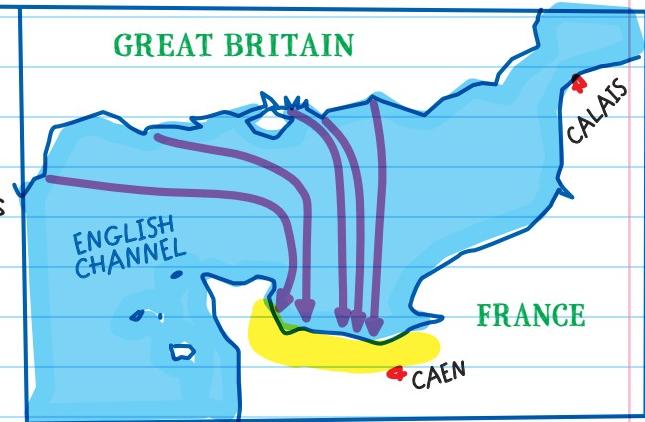
D-DAY

After freeing Italy, the Allied forces were finally ready to enter German-occupied France. In June 1944, General Eisenhower, who was then the Supreme Allied Commander in Europe, started **OPERATION OVERLORD**. Hitler expected any invasion to be near the town of Calais.



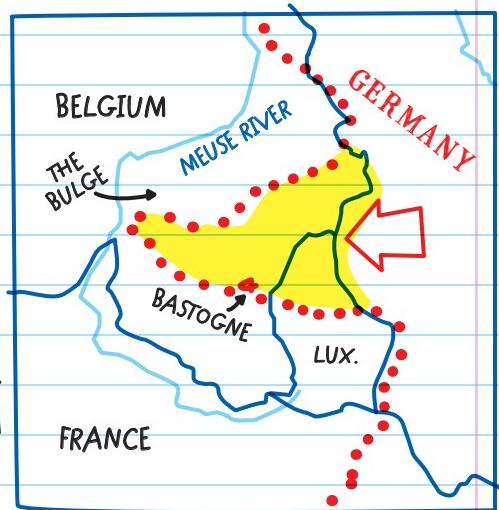
Early on June 6, 1944—which came to be known as D-DAY—Allied forces landed, but not at Calais. **PARATROOPERS** (who arrived by parachutes) and **AMPHIBIOUS** troops (trained to operate on both land and sea) arrived in **NORMANDY** in France. There were thousands of casualties, but the invasion was successful.

American General Omar Bradley led the troops inland. On August 25, Paris was liberated. Other Western European nations soon followed.



BATTLE of the BULGE

Hitler made a final attempt to turn the tide. On December 16, 1944, he attacked the Belgian region of **ARDENNES**. The attack forced Allied lines to move back in one spot, turning their line into a bubble shape (a bulge, which is how this attack came to be known as the **BATTLE OF THE BULGE**). By January, the Allies stopped the German advance.





The HOLOCAUST



Hitler rose to power by convincing his people that Jews were to blame for Germany's hardships.

In September 1935, Germany passed the **NUREMBERG LAWS**, stripping Jews of citizenship. On November 9, 1938—**KRISTALLNACHT** (the "night of the broken glass")—Jewish businesses, synagogues, and other property were destroyed in riots. The **HOLOCAUST** (literally, "destruction") had begun. Jews were moved into **GHETTOS** and forced to wear identifying yellow labels in the shape of the Star of David, a Jewish symbol. **ANTI-SEMITISM** became the law in Germany.

In January of 1942, Hitler and the Nazis came up with a plan they called the **FINAL SOLUTION**: They planned to kill every Jew in a **GENOCIDE** in concentration camps. The young and healthy were forced to work in camps until they died; others were killed immediately in gas chambers. Six million Jewish people were killed, along with about five million others who didn't fit in with Hitler's idea of a perfect Aryan society—homosexuals, Gypsies (Roma), people with disabilities, and anyone who opposed the Nazis.

Although Allied leaders heard rumors of these horrors, they didn't make the rumors public. When they freed camp prisoners later, Allied soldiers were shocked to see the hugeness of Nazi brutality.

GHETTO

a section of a city that is occupied by only one group of people, usually because they cannot live elsewhere as a result of economic hardships

GENOCIDE

a killing of a race, ethnicity, or religious group of people

PRESIDENT TRUMAN

In the election of 1944, Roosevelt became the only person to be elected president for the fourth time in a row. But his health was fading. On April 12, 1945, FDR died, and Vice President **HARRY S. TRUMAN** took charge.

The “S” wasn’t short for a middle name. It stood for his two grandfathers, who both had S names. Apparently that wasn’t such an odd thing to do with a middle initial in some places. And Harry was his full first name.

VICTORY in EUROPE

After other air raids on German cities, the Allied forces launched a major attack on Dresden in February 1945. As Soviet troops entered Berlin, Hitler went into hiding. On April 30, 1945—two days after Mussolini was killed by Italian partisans—Hitler committed suicide so he wouldn’t have to face Germany’s defeat. On May 7, after the Soviet army captured Berlin, the Germans surrendered to the Allied forces. May 8 was declared **V-E DAY** in honor of the victory in Europe. But World War II wasn’t over yet.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why did Churchill think the Allies ought to focus on North Africa before Europe?
2. How did Hitler react to the surrender of Italy?
3. How was the siege of Stalingrad a turning point in the war?
4. Whom did Hitler blame for Germany's problems in the 1930s?
5. Which groups other than Jews were to be exterminated as part of the Final Solution?
6. Did the Allies know about the Holocaust during the war?
7. Where did Allied forces land to commence Operation Overlord?
8. How did the Battle of the Bulge get its name?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



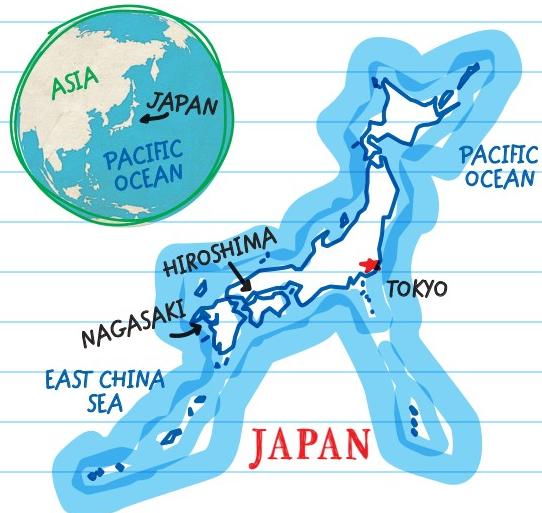
1. He thought the troops were not ready for Europe yet and would be stretched too thin.
2. He did not accept it and sent his soldiers to fight for Italy. (They lost.)
3. Hitler's officers disobeyed his command not to retreat, showing that totalitarianism was weakening.
4. Jews
5. People with disabilities, homosexuals, Gypsies (Roma), and anyone who opposed the Nazis
6. The leaders had heard about it, but many people did not know.
7. Normandy
8. It is named after the bulge shape created in the Allied line when the Axis attacked at one point.

★ Chapter 37 ★

WAR in the PACIFIC

The OTHER FRONT

It was time to defeat Japan and end the war.



JAPANESE VICTORIES

On the same day the Japanese bombed Pearl Harbor, they also attacked American bases in Guam, Wake Island, and the Philippines.

They invaded Thailand, Hong Kong, Malaya, and Burma.

Japan took over NOW PART OF MALAYSIA →
Manila, the capital of the Philippines.

↔ MYANMAR TODAY



After months of conflict, American General Douglas MacArthur, his family, and some key aides were ordered to leave the Philippines to defend Australia. The Philippines surrendered to Japan. The troops still in the Bataan province of the Philippines were captured and forced on a brutal walk of over 60 miles to the Bataan Peninsula prison camps, where hundreds of Americans and thousands of Filipinos were killed; the event came to be known as the **BATAAN DEATH MARCH**.



TURNING the TIDE

In April 1942, Americans launched air raids on Tokyo, which wasn't militarily significant but did boost American morale.

In the **BATTLE OF THE CORAL SEA**, they blocked Japan from reaching Australia, helped by **ADMIRAL CHESTER NIMITZ** of the U.S. Pacific Fleet intercepting Japanese communications. Code cracking also helped the Allies prepare for the **BATTLE OF MIDWAY** on June 4, 1942. In a major American victory and turning point, the American navy destroyed four Japanese aircraft carriers.

The U.S. used Navajo **CODE TALKERS**—Navajo soldiers who communicated in codes based on their tribal language. It was impossible for the Japanese or other outsiders to figure out the codes and was an invaluable contribution to the war.

MacArthur and Nimitz adopted a strategy called **ISLAND HOPPING** to secure air bases in order to launch larger attacks on Japan: capture small islands, use each as a base to capture other islands, hop closer to the Philippines and Japan. It was time-consuming but effective. From August 1942 to February 1943, the marines fought to capture the island of **GUADALCANAL**. In the October 1944 **BATTLE OF LEYTE GULF**, the Allies destroyed almost the entire Japanese navy. Allied forces liberated Manila in March 1945 and headed for Japan.



REACHING JAPAN

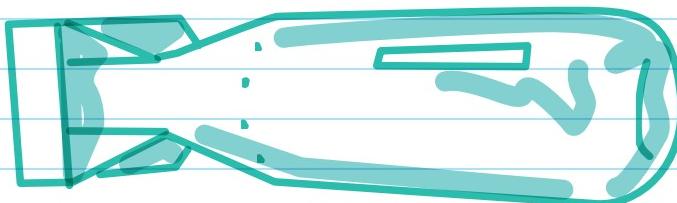
The Allied forces targeted two Japanese islands:

IWO JIMA in February 1945 and OKINAWA in April.

In a desperate attempt to gain the upper hand, the Japanese used KAMIKAZES—suicide pilots—to attack Allied ships, but the Allied forces still advanced.

The A-BOMB

Japan was unwilling to surrender, and the Allies considered a full-scale invasion. However, the U.S. had also conducted the first successful test of an ATOMIC BOMB on July 16, 1945, after three years of work on the "MANHATTAN PROJECT," led by scientist J. ROBERT OPPENHEIMER. (FDR founded the Manhattan Project after Albert Einstein and other scientists had warned him that an atomic weapon was being developed by Germany.) Even though he knew that a single atomic bomb could cost thousands of civilian lives, President Truman saw it as a justifiable way to end the war and to save countless Americans. Truman issued the POTSDAM DECLARATION: If Japan did not surrender, the U.S. would inflict "prompt and utter destruction."



This seemed like just another threat, so Japan did not surrender. On August 6, 1945, the bomber ENOLA GAY dropped an atomic bomb on the city of **HIROSHIMA**. At least 75,000 people were killed in a single instant. Japan remained firm.

On August 9, the U.S. dropped another atomic bomb on the city of **NAGASAKI**, killing over 20,000 civilians. Many of those who survived the bombings later died from radiation and horrific burns or lived with severe health problems and disabilities.

PEACE

On August 15, 1945, Japan surrendered. August 15 was Victory over Japan Day, or **V-J DAY**. (Some consider August 14 to be V-J Day because of time differences between the U.S. and Asia.) On September 2, Japan signed the surrender documents. World War II was finally over.

WHAT MAKES A NUCLEAR WEAPON NUCLEAR?

The power comes from reactions in the NUCLEI of atoms of RADIOACTIVE elements, which emit energy. When the particles collide, the result is so strong that a tiny amount of material can create a huge explosion. Atomic bombs, or "A-bombs," get their power by splitting the nucleus. Even more powerful hydrogen bombs, or "H-bombs," invented in the 1950s, fuse multiple nuclei together.



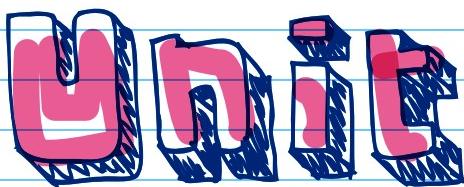
CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What happened to the Allied troops who stayed in the Philippines when MacArthur left?
2. What was a major communications advantage the Allies had over the Japanese?
3. What is "island hopping" and how does it work?
4. What were the first two Allied targets within Japan?
5. What inspired FDR to found the Manhattan Project?
6. What did President Truman think about the morality of using an atomic weapon?
7. What was the name of the plane that dropped the bomb on Hiroshima?
8. What happened to many people in Hiroshima and Nagasaki who survived the initial blast of the atomic weapons?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. They were forced to make the Bataan Death March.
2. Japanese codes had been broken, but the Navajo-based American codes had not.
3. "Island hopping" is the strategy of taking one island at a time and using it as a base to attack the next.
4. Iwo Jima and Okinawa
5. Einstein alerted him to the possibility that the Germans could develop the technology first.
6. He thought it was okay if it would save American lives.
7. ENOLA GAY
8. Many later died from burns and radiation or lived with severe disabilities.



Unit 9

Post-World War II Era 1945–1980

The post-World War II era was full of exciting change. Television became the main form of entertainment. Rock and roll swept the nation. African Americans and women fought for equal rights. Also significant: America entered the Korean and Vietnam Wars; the Cold War began; and everyone was afraid of Communism and nukes.



Chapter 38



AMERICA AFTER the WAR

The WORLD AFTER the WAR

The only major world power to have had minimal fighting on the home front, the U.S. came out of the war better off than its allies and enemies in almost every way. (The only fighting that took place on U.S. soil was the attack on Pearl Harbor.) The economy had been helped by the war and continued to grow.

YALTA and POTSDAM

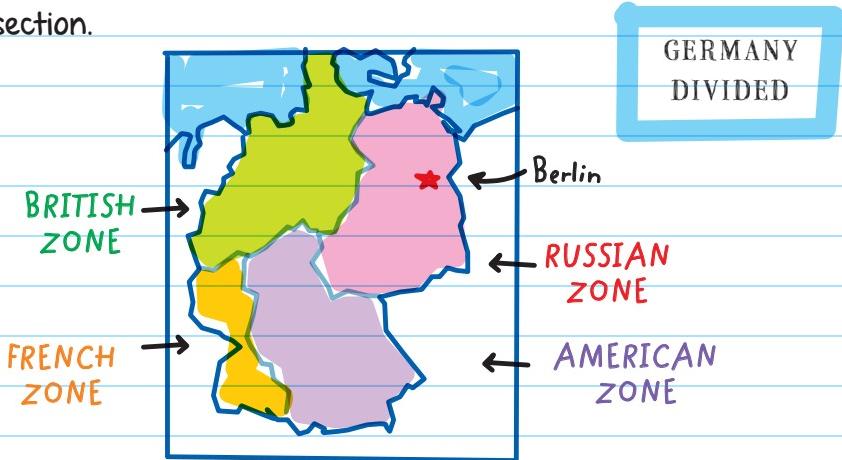
When it was clear that the Allies would win, the Allied leaders discussed ways to prevent another world war.

In February 1945, the **BIG THREE**—Churchill, FDR, and Stalin—met at the **YALTA CONFERENCE** and decided they needed a better peacekeeping group than the League of Nations to prevent war. Even Stalin agreed that nations

The BIG THREE



should have the right to autonomy and democracy (though he later forced nations into Communism, so there's that). Stalin also agreed to fight against Japan after Germany was defeated. The leaders decided to divide Germany into four parts. The city of Berlin would also be divided in four. The U.S., the U.K., France, and the Soviet Union would each control a section.



In July, President Truman also met with Churchill, Clement Attlee (also from Great Britain), and Stalin at the **POTSDAM CONFERENCE**. There they focused on the prosecution of Japan and confirmed Soviet involvement in the war in the Pacific.

The UNITED NATIONS

The **UNITED NATIONS** (or **UN**) formed on June 26, 1945, when fifty countries signed its charter in San Francisco. The UN's goal is to preserve world peace through diplomacy.

One of the UN's first tasks was to create Arab and Jewish states from a British-controlled area in the Middle East called Palestine. After the Holocaust, many Jews sought a homeland to call their own. In 1948, by UN mandate, the state of ISRAEL was officially formed. The region that was formerly called Palestine had a mainly Muslim Arab population that was not happy with a new Jewish state taking control.

Neighboring Arab countries attacked the newly formed Israel in 1948, but Israel fought back hard. Thousands of Palestinian Arabs fled the area and sought refuge in the West Bank and the Gaza Strip, two Arab-controlled lands. Arab forces attacked again in 1967, and this time Israel gained control of the West Bank, the Gaza Strip, and parts of Syria and Egypt.

The conflict between Palestine and Israel continues to this day.

The NUREMBERG TRIALS

In November 1945, in Nuremberg, Germany, the **NUREMBERG TRIALS** began, trying Nazis for **CRIMES AGAINST HUMANITY** and war crimes. In the first round of trials, nineteen Nazis were found guilty and twelve were sentenced to death. Over a hundred more were found guilty before the process ended. A similar **TRIBUNAL** (the International Military Tribunal for the Far East) was held in Tokyo, where General Hideki Tōjō and six other Japanese leaders were convicted and executed.

TRIBUNAL

a court



The IRON CURTAIN

Even though the U.S. and the Soviet Union fought on the same side during World War II, their political differences were clear. Without a common enemy, they became enemies of each other. Although Stalin had promised free, democratic elections in the Eastern European nations, he set up Communist **SATELLITE** governments there under his control.

Each side thought the other was trying to take over the world.

SATELLITE describes something that is subordinate to another authority

The tension between Communist (USSR and Eastern Europe) and capitalist (U.S. and Western Europe) governments became known as the **COLD WAR**, which consisted of threats and intimidation, as opposed to a "hot" war with actual fighting. In a speech in 1946, Winston Churchill stated that an **IRON CURTAIN** had descended on Eastern Europe, separating it from the rest of the world.

The TRUMAN DOCTRINE

President Truman decided that the U.S. would fight the Cold War through **CONTAINMENT**. Truman convinced Congress to allocate money to help defeat Communist rebels in Greece and Turkey to prevent the spread of Communism to two more countries. Holding back Communism through containment and giving assistance to groups committed to fighting Communism was the **TRUMAN DOCTRINE**.

The MARSHALL PLAN

In June of 1947, Secretary of State **GEORGE MARSHALL** came up with his **MARSHALL PLAN** to rebuild Europe. The U.S. hoped to contain Communism, boost European economies, and continue U.S. trade with Europe. The U.S. gave about \$13 billion in aid to Western European nations between 1948 and 1951. Economic aid was supposed to protect countries that were unstable and poor and prevent radicals from taking over. The U.S. also provided economic assistance to Asian countries, including Japan, which it continued to occupy.

The BERLIN AIRLIFT

The U.S., the U.K., and France announced that they would combine their shares of Germany and Berlin into a single democratic nation. Truman believed that a unified Germany was the key to Europe's recovery. Stalin saw this as a threat, not only to the Soviet-controlled part of Germany, but also to Europe in general if the Germans regained power.

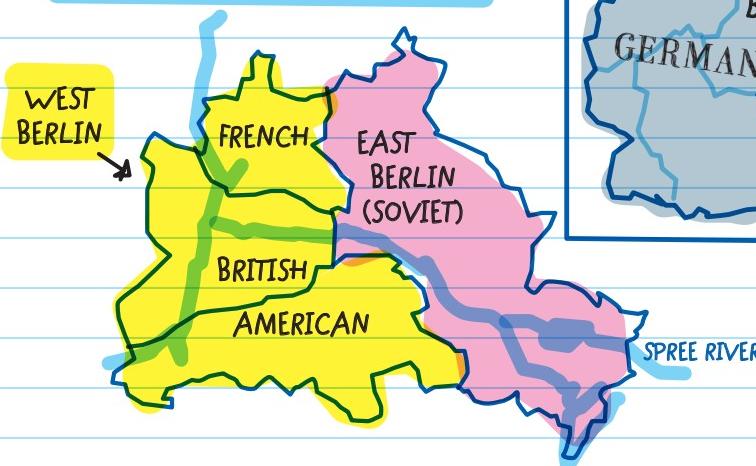
Stalin began the **BERLIN BLOCKADE**—a strategy to cut off the city's access to the West. Truman organized the

BERLIN AIRLIFT: U.S. and British

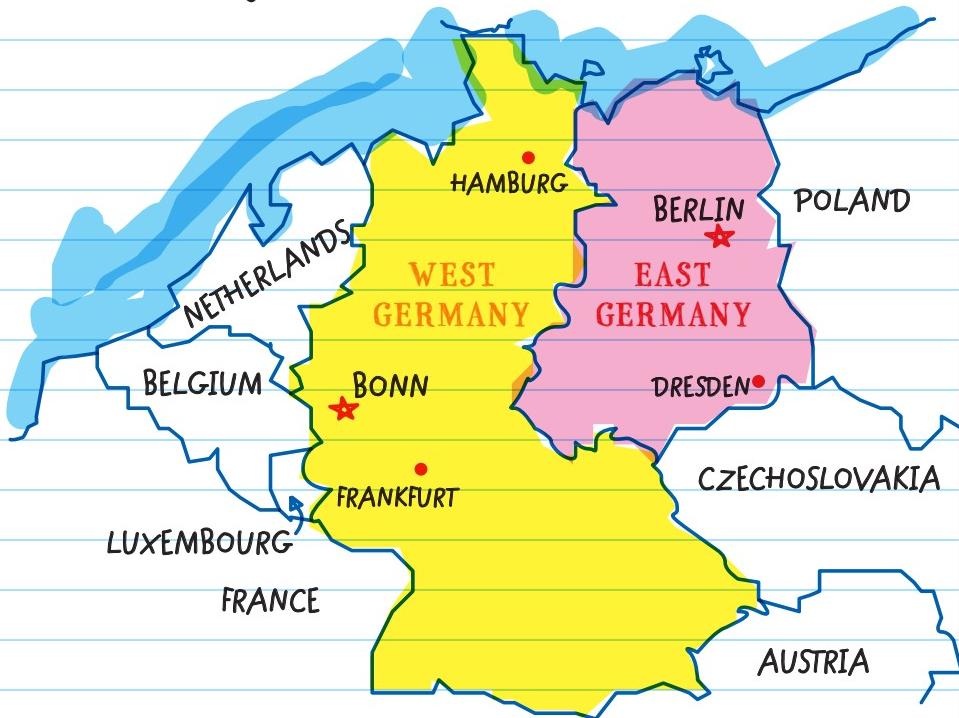
planes brought food and supplies to West Berlin until Stalin ended the blockade. Still, Berlin remained divided into East and West Berlin.

BLOCKADE
the blocking of something (can also be used as a verb)

BERLIN DIVIDED



By the end of 1949, Germany was also divided into two nations: The Federal Republic of Germany (democratic, West Germany) and the German Democratic Republic (Communist, East Germany).



NATO and the WARSAW PACT

In 1949, the U.S. and Canada joined with Western Europe to form an alliance, the **NORTH ATLANTIC TREATY ORGANIZATION (NATO)**. It was a defensive alliance meant to prevent a Soviet assault on Western Europe. In 1955, the Communists established their own alliance, the **WARSAW PACT**.

FIRST PEACETIME
MILITARY ALLIANCE

In spite of NATO, the U.S. decided it shouldn't rely on other countries to protect the world against Communism. America would lead the world.

The FAIR DEAL

Truman began preparing a slate of domestic reforms in 1945. This extension of the New Deal was called the **FAIR DEAL** and promised:

a higher minimum wage

better Social Security

job creation

better public housing

national health insurance

WHAT'S THE DEAL?

Remember: The **SQUARE DEAL** was Teddy Roosevelt's domestic program that focused on conservation, control of corporations, and consumer protection.

The **NEW DEAL** was a series of economic programs enacted by FDR during his first term in office.

The **FAIR DEAL** was a series of domestic reforms proposed by Harry Truman.

Truman established a Committee on Civil Rights in 1946.

When his Fair Deal bills didn't pass in Congress, Truman took other steps. For example, he issued an executive order that desegregated the army.

The ELECTION of 1948

The Republican Party was sure they'd win. Truman hadn't succeeded with the Fair Deal, and the Democratic Party was divided: Some Southern Democrats, angry about Truman's support of civil rights, formed a new party, called the States' Rights Democratic Party, or the **DIXIECRATS**. Other Democrats formed a new **PROGRESSIVE PARTY** to try to reconcile with the Soviets.

The Republican candidate, **THOMAS DEWEY**, was so far ahead in the polls that the **CHICAGO DAILY TRIBUNE** newspaper released a special edition with a huge "DEWEY DEFEATS TRUMAN" on the front page before the votes were tallied. But Truman had gone on a **WHISTLE-STOP TOUR**, convincing Americans that the failure of the Fair Deal was the fault of the Republican Congress. Truman won a second term.

WHISTLE-STOP TOUR

a campaign trip from town to town, referring to the train stations where candidates would make a quick stop before continuing on



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why was the U.S. in a better position after World War II than its allies were?
2. What did the Allies decide when they met at the Yalta Conference?
3. What is the goal of the United Nations?
4. The defendants at the Nuremberg Trials were accused of what?
5. What made the Cold War "cold"?
6. What was the thinking behind the policy of containment?
7. Why did Stalin think a unified Germany was a threat? And to whom?
8. What were the components of Truman's Fair Deal?
9. What inspired the Dixiecrats to break away from the Democrats?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. There had been no fighting on U.S. soil, other than Pearl Harbor, and the U.S. economy was thriving.
2. They decided they needed a better peacekeeping group, they would fight against Japan, and they would divide Germany into occupied zones.
3. To preserve peace through diplomacy
4. Crimes against humanity and war crimes
5. There were no active armed conflicts between the U.S. and the USSR.
6. Truman believed that it was best to prevent Communism from spreading.
7. He thought a unified Germany would become powerful and pose a threat to the rest of Europe.
8. The Fair Deal promised a higher minimum wage, job creation, health insurance, Social Security, and better housing.
9. They were opposed to Truman's civil rights programs.



★ Chapter 39 ★

The KOREAN WAR

COMMUNISM in ASIA

In China, in 1949, **MAO ZEDONG** led the Communist Party to drive **CHIANG KAI-SHEK's NATIONALISTS** out of power. The Nationalists fled to **TAIWAN**, where they set up a government that the West recognized as the legitimate Chinese ruling body. On the mainland, the **PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF CHINA** was established on October 1, 1949. Many Americans felt that their government should have done more to stop a Communist nation and ally of the USSR from forming.



In 1949, the Soviets detonated an atomic bomb, which meant that the U.S. no longer had a nuclear monopoly.

The 38th PARALLEL

After World War II, a lot of colonized nations gained independence. In some cases, the imperial nations had to be forced to grant independence and the process turned violent.

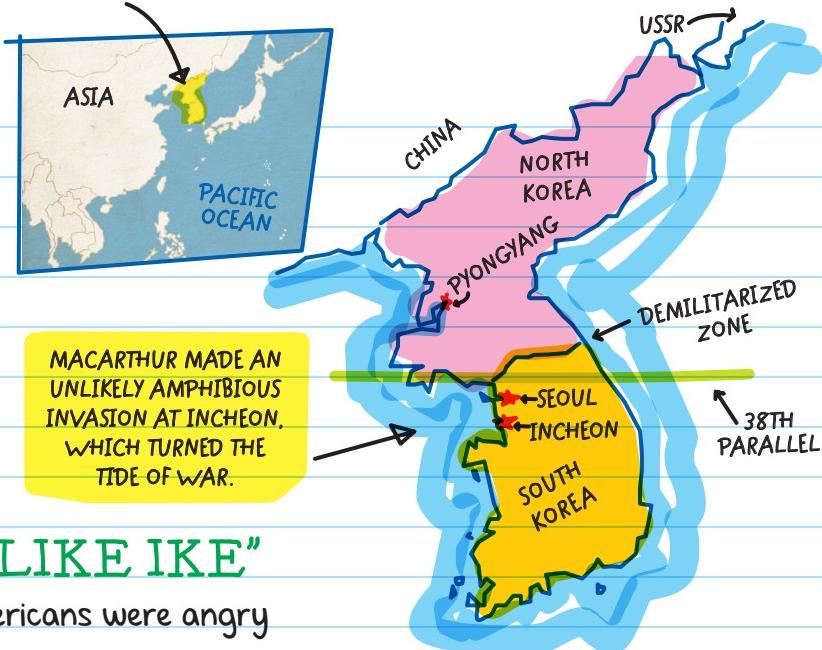
KOREA had been an occupied Japanese colony. The U.S. proposed dividing Korea on the 38th PARALLEL. The Soviets helped Communists take power in North Korea, and the U.S. supported the democratic government in SOUTH KOREA.

On June 25, 1950, North Korean troops crossed the border to try to take over South Korea and unite Korea under one Communist government. Figuring that the Soviet Union was involved, Truman sent military assistance to South Korea and asked for assistance from the United Nations. He didn't declare a Korean war.

The KOREAN WAR

The United Nations put together soldiers from 16 different nations, but the majority were American. The forces were led by U.S. General Douglas MacArthur. MacArthur forced the North Korean troops to retreat, and the UN forces pushed them back toward China. MacArthur assumed that China and the USSR wouldn't intervene, so he got permission from Truman to invade North Korea. But on November 25, 1950, the Chinese army entered North Korea.

By 1951, the two sides reached a stalemate at the 38th parallel. General MacArthur wanted to go nuclear against China, but Truman refused. MacArthur publicly criticized Truman, and Truman fired him. Peace talks began in July 1951, but progress was slow.



"I LIKE IKE"

Americans were angry about what seemed like pointless fighting in Korea. The Republican nominee, **DWIGHT D. EISENHOWER** (known as "Ike"), promised to end the war and easily defeated Democrat **ADLAI STEVENSON**.

He was the first Republican to defeat a Democrat in a presidential election since 1928.



It took more than a year, but a cease-fire finally ended fighting on July 27, 1953. A

DE FACTO
in effect

DEMILITARIZED ZONE (DMZ) was established not far from the 38th parallel as a no-man's-land and **DE FACTO** border. There was still a North Korea. Thirty-three thousand Americans and nearly 2 million Koreans and Chinese died to show that neither side was afraid to use force. Still, it is often referred to as the "Forgotten War."

WE STILL DON'T HAVE A PEACE TREATY WITH NORTH KOREA.

McCARTHYISM

Fear of Communism was strong in the U.S., setting off another Red Scare. The

HOUSE UN-AMERICAN ACTIVITIES COMMITTEE (HUAC) was established in 1938 to investigate "un-American activity"—meaning any behavior that seemed Communist-like.

BLACKLIST
a list of people who are not welcome

President Truman investigated accusations of **ESPIONAGE** among government workers.

The HUAC targeted the movie industry; people who were charged were **BLACKLISTED** by movie studios if they refused to reveal information.

Communist groups were required to register with the government.

In 1951, a State Department employee named **ALGER HISS** was jailed for perjury in connection with giving information to the Soviets.

JULIUS and **ETHEL ROSENBERG** were executed in 1953 for selling atomic secrets to the Soviet Union.

In 1950, **JOSEPH McCARTHY**, a Republican senator, took charge of the hunt for Communists. He made reckless accusations (mostly against leftists) and claimed to have a list of

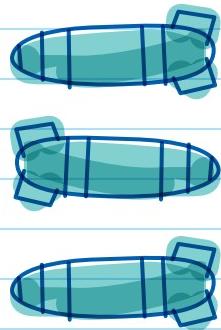
Communists working for the State Department, even though he never showed it. **MCCARTHYISM** now refers to the practice of making unfounded accusations of treason and the use of accusations to prevent criticism. During televised hearings in 1954, McCarthy couldn't back up his accusations and lost all his credibility. As a result, he was censured by the Senate for distorting facts and violating senatorial ethics.

YOU CAN WATCH
THESE ONLINE NOW.

There were some Soviet spies living among Americans, but McCarthy lumped everyone together: spies, Communists, people who believed in the theories of Communism but didn't act on them, people who had nothing to do with anything. Other than the spies, a lot of these people were patriotic Americans.

ARMS RACE

Using stolen technology, the Soviet Union built an atomic bomb in 1949. In 1950, the U.S. began working on a **HYDROGEN BOMB**, which was many times more powerful. The H-Bomb was tested successfully in 1952; by 1955, the Soviets had developed their own H-bomb. Both sides raced to stockpile the most weapons—way more nuclear weapons than needed to annihilate both sides.



The U.S. and USSR were developing missile technology and became locked in a **SPACE RACE**, starting when the Soviet Union launched the first artificial satellite, **SPUTNIK**, in 1957.



The next year, the U.S. launched a satellite and founded the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA).

The technological advances were meant to be used for both war and peace, and the Space Race led to a focus on math and science in American schools.

BRINKMANSHIP

Eisenhower was a moderate Republican who balanced the budget and supported the 1956 **FEDERAL HIGHWAY ACT**, which created the first interstate highways. He believed that containment wasn't strong enough for the Cold War. His secretary of state, **JOHN FOSTER DULLES**, coined a new term for their strategy: "**BRINKMANSHIP**," meaning that the U.S. would issue warnings with increasing pressure (to go to the **BRINK** of a crisis). The greatest way to prevent nuclear war was knowing that there would be no winner; both sides would be destroyed. The **MUTUAL ASSURED DESTRUCTION (MAD)** doctrine under brinkmanship was a cornerstone of U.S. and Soviet foreign policy during the Cold War.

Soviet leader **NIKITA KHRUSHCHEV** and Eisenhower considered peace talks until Eisenhower sent a U-2 spy plane over Russia, denied its purpose, and then refused to apologize even when the pilot was captured. Relations between the U.S. and the USSR deteriorated.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Which of the two Chinas did the U.S. officially recognize?
2. Why did North Korean troops cross the 38th parallel?
3. When did Congress declare war on North Korea?
4. Where was the DMZ established in Korea?
5. What was an "un-American activity"?
6. How did McCarthy lose his credibility?
7. How much of Russia could the U.S. have destroyed with its Cold War nuclear arsenal?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Taiwan
2. They wanted to unite Korea under one Communist government.
3. Trick question! Never.
4. Along the 38th parallel, where the line had been at the beginning of the conflict
5. Anything suspected of Communist leanings
6. He couldn't back up his accusations.
7. All of it and more

★ Chapter 40 ★

AMERICAN AFFLUENCE

and the BABY BOOM

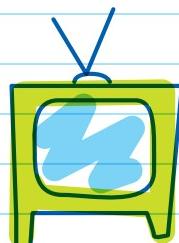
AMERICAN AFFLUENCE

America prospered under Eisenhower. Although he wanted to decrease the size of government, he decided not to reverse the social reforms that Truman had put in place. He even expanded Social Security, increased the minimum wage, and established the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.

The economy boomed. Americans bought home appliances, cars, clothes, and televisions.

They watched programs like *I LOVE LUCY* and *THE LONE RANGER*, where they saw advertisements for more products to buy.

The "AMERICAN DREAM" was linked to owning the same things as the families on television.



The G.I. BILL and the BABY BOOM

One reason people could afford to buy so much was the **G.I. BILL**

(or the **G.I. BILL OF RIGHTS** or the

SERVICEMEN'S READJUSTMENT ACT), which President

Roosevelt had signed into law in 1944. The G.I. Bill provided veterans with loans to get an education and buy homes.

Home sales helped the economy. Many veterans were also ready to start families, leading to a sudden spike in the national birthrate. The **BABY BOOM** was a prosperous time.

However, women often stopped working when the boomer babies were born. (Women were also asked to leave the workplace after World War II ended because returning veterans needed jobs.)

G.I.

an American soldier, from the acronym for "Government Issue" that appeared on their uniforms

WHITE FLIGHT

The Highway Act created new highways, enabling more people to travel and commute. Families moved to the **SUBURBS**. Builders were eager to keep up with demand and keep homes affordable, so they began creating complexes where every house looked exactly the same. Built in 1951, **LEVITTOWN**, on Long Island, New York, became the first mass-produced suburb. Families moved from the cities to the suburbs, and also from the North and East to the South and West, to the region called the **SUNBELT** because of its warm climate and cheap land. People who couldn't afford to move



The Latin word root “urbs” means city. Something “urban” is a city, and “suburb” is “sub-” (under, or almost) a city.

had to stay in the cities. Because of **WHITE FLIGHT**—the process of affluent, mostly white families moving out of the cities—many **INNER CITY** areas became ghettos. Taxes went to suburban infrastructures, causing a decline in the quality of public services in areas where only the poor remained. Conditions deteriorated so much that the federal government had to create **URBAN RENEWAL** initiatives. It wasn't just city people who missed out on the prosperity. Small farmers were hurt by the growth of **AGRIBUSINESS**.

AGRIBUSINESS
large-scale corporate farming

POP CULTURE and the GENERATION GAP

In the 1950s, a new kind of American music emerged when African American rhythm and blues (R&B) was picked up by white teenagers. The result was **ROCK AND ROLL** music.

In 1956, teenagers fell in love with **ELVIS PRESLEY** and his music. Rock influenced culture, style, and what it meant to be a young American. For the first time, young people were being targeted as a generation with advertisements and fads. No surprise, many adults didn't understand the attraction.

BACKLASH and BEATNIKS

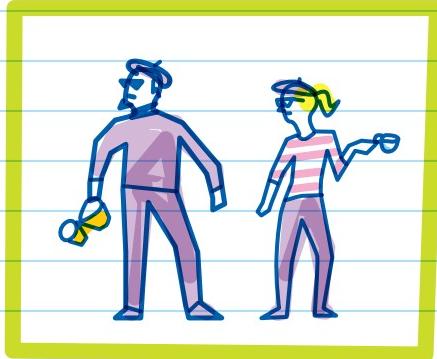
While teens rebelled with something wild like, say, staying out late at a drive-in movie, other Americans rebelled against consumerism and **CONFORMITY** by spending their time in coffeehouses and at poetry readings. They were called **BEATNIKS**, because they were followers of the **BEAT** literature movement led by writers like Allen Ginsberg and Jack Kerouac.

ROCK-AND-ROLL
FASHION



BEATNIKS

"VERY COOL."





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How did Eisenhower's social beliefs differ from Truman's?

How did that translate into his domestic policies?

2. How did television influence consumerism?

3. What did the G.I. Bill provide for veterans?

4. How did the baby boom help the American economy?

5. Why were homes mass-produced for some suburbs?

Which suburb was most famous for this?

6. Why did many people move to the Sun Belt during the 1950s?

7. What were the effects of white flight on urban areas
in the 1950s?

8. How did changes in technology affect farmers?

9. What were the roots of rock and roll music?

10. What were the beatniks rebelling against?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Eisenhower believed in smaller government, but he didn't actually reverse Truman's policies. He even expanded some welfare programs.
2. Television presented a vision of an ideal American life, and many people wanted to buy things to match it.
3. Home loans and subsidized education
4. As many people began families, they also spent a lot of money on family-related products and houses.
5. They were produced, notably in Levittown, to meet demand.
6. For the climate and cheap land
7. Inner city areas lost valuable tax dollars and became ghettos.
8. Technology allowed for large-scale corporate farming, which hurt small farmers' businesses.
9. rhythm and blues, or R&B
10. Conformity and consumerism



Chapter 41

The CIVIL RIGHTS MOVEMENT

The MOVEMENT BEGINS

The CIVIL RIGHTS MOVEMENT was a period of **GRASSROOTS** efforts to put an end to racial discrimination, especially in the 1950s and '60s. Protests against segregation had begun decades earlier, but World War II helped raise more awareness—particularly among African American veterans—of the hypocrisy in fighting for freedom abroad while inequality persisted at home.

GRASSROOTS
from the people,
as opposed to the
government

GRASS HAS ROOTS THAT GO WIDE AND DEEP,
EVEN THOUGH GRASS ISN'T VERY TALL.



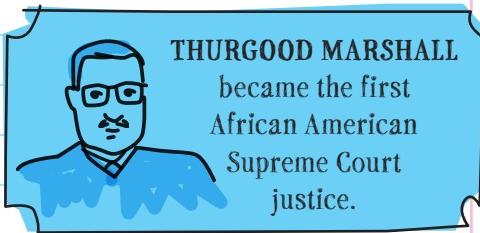
BROWN v. BOARD of EDUCATION

One of the first targets was segregation. The NAACP challenged this law in the early 1950s, on the basis that many "separate but equal" public schools for black kids were inferior

to all-white schools in the same district. That was a violation of the Fourteenth Amendment, which states that all U.S. citizens are entitled to the **EQUAL PROTECTION OF THE LAW**.

The parents of a girl named Linda Brown sued her school district when she wasn't allowed to attend the (all-white) school near her house in Topeka, Kansas. The Supreme Court heard the arguments in the case of **BROWN V. BOARD OF EDUCATION OF TOPEKA, KANSAS** in 1952.

THURGOOD MARSHALL, a lawyer for the NAACP, presented arguments for the Brown family. He convinced



THURGOOD MARSHALL
became the first
African American
Supreme Court
justice.

the court to make a landmark ruling on May 17, 1954, that placing African Americans in "separate but equal" schools was unconstitutional because things that are separate are never actually equal. In a case the next year (Brown II), the Supreme Court required that all segregated public schools integrate **"WITH ALL DELIBERATE SPEED."** The court did not give a deadline, so some schools delayed integration for years.

The LITTLE ROCK NINE

In September of 1957, an Arkansas high school was ordered by a judge to admit nine black students. Arkansas Governor **ORVAL FAUBUS** was a segregationist, and he sent the Arkansas National Guard to stop the students from going in. One of

the **LITTLE ROCK NINE**, **ELIZABETH ECKFORD**, was threatened with lynching. For three weeks, the students were kept out. President Eisenhower ordered Faubus to allow the students in, and when Faubus continued to ignore these orders, Eisenhower sent paratroopers to escort the students and enforce the law.

ROSA PARKS and the MONTGOMERY BUS BOYCOTT

City buses were segregated too. Black riders were required to give up their seats if white riders wanted them. On December 1, 1955, in Montgomery, Alabama, a woman named **ROSA PARKS** refused. She was arrested and fined. In response, African Americans organized the **MONTGOMERY BUS BOYCOTT**, which lasted for more than a year.

Most people who rode the buses were black, so the boycott cost the city a lot of money, and also cost it its reputation when the national media picked up the story. Boycotters organized carpools or walked, even when faced with violent segregationists and the KKK. On November 13, 1956, the

During the Civil Rights era, Southern states resisted the Supreme Court decisions and vowed not to enforce them, in a strategy called MASSIVE RESISTANCE. Furthermore, various governors proposed to interject the state government between the federal government and its citizens in a tactic called STATE INTERPOSITION. Eisenhower, however, stood fast and used federal troops to enforce the law.

Supreme Court ruled that the bus segregation law had been unconstitutional in the first place. The boycott had worked.

MARTIN LUTHER KING JR.

A young reverend named DR. MARTIN LUTHER KING JR. (MLK Jr.) rose to prominence during the Montgomery Bus Boycott. His talent for speechmaking made him popular. In 1957, he helped found the SOUTHERN CHRISTIAN LEADERSHIP CONFERENCE (SCLC), a key organization in the civil rights movement. MLK Jr. was influenced by A. PHILIP RANDOLPH and by MOHANDAS GANDHI, who had led protests in India against British foreign rule, using nonviolent tactics of civil disobedience.

MOHANDAS GANDHI was also known as Mahatma, or "Great Soul." He used nonviolent protest to advocate self-rule in India against British colonizers.

SIT-INS

One of the most efficient forms of nonviolent protest was the SIT-IN—sitting in protest. On February 1, 1960, four black students sat at a whites-only lunch counter in Greensboro, North Carolina. Although the lunch counter staff refused to serve them, the students returned each day with more and more people. Eventually, store owners desegregated to prevent further disruption of their business.

An organization called the STUDENT NONVIOLENT COORDINATING COMMITTEE (SNCC) formed to help people launch sit-ins across the South. The grassroots civil rights movement—which consisted of large numbers of young people—was growing and making its mark.

JOHN F. KENNEDY

In the election of 1960, JOHN F. KENNEDY (JFK), a young Democratic senator from Massachusetts, challenged incumbent Republican vice president RICHARD NIXON. JFK came from a prominent political family and was a WWII navy war hero. The Kennedy-Nixon debates were the first televised presidential debates. Americans saw that Kennedy was more youthful and appealing than Nixon. Although some people thought a Catholic like Kennedy would be more loyal to the pope than to the American people, Kennedy reassured them, and he promised supporters a "NEW FRONTIER" on domestic reforms, a call for public service, vigorous federal government, and strong anti-Communist foreign policy.

The election was close, but Kennedy won. He and his wife, JACQUELINE, were exciting, stylish, and popular.



Kennedy didn't immediately pursue the reforms he had promised, in order to avoid upsetting Southern Democrats. Civil rights leaders criticized him for not bringing about change fast enough.

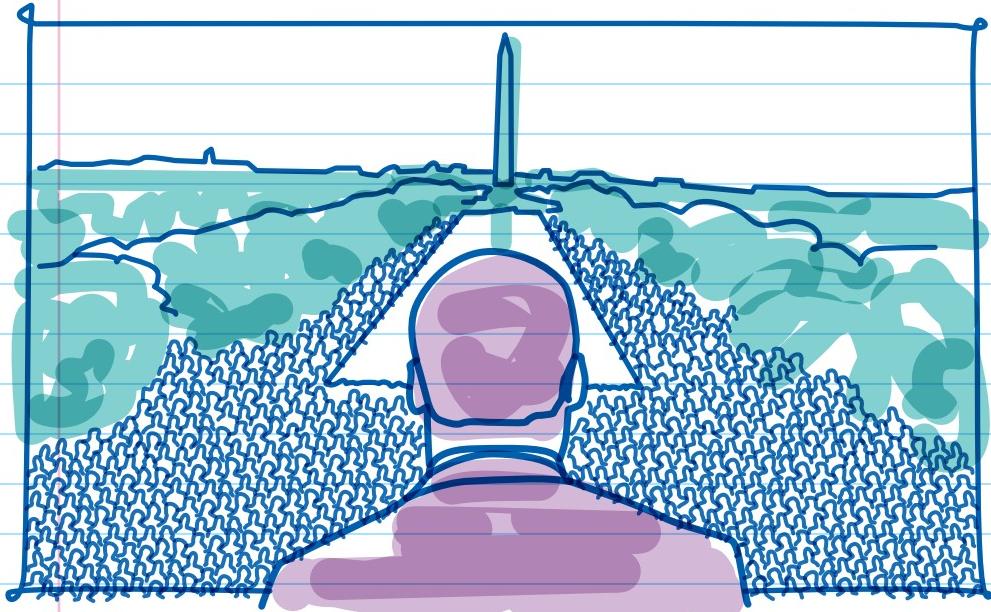
FREEDOM RIDERS

In May 1961, the **CONGRESS OF RACIAL EQUALITY (CORE)** sent blacks and whites to ride together as **FREEDOM RIDERS** on interstate buses to segregated bus stations in the South. They planned to refuse to obey racial restrictions. The Freedom Riders faced some violent attacks, but they continued riding. That autumn, the Interstate Commerce Commission began enforcing desegregation in bus depots. Another nonviolent protest had worked.

OUTRAGE in BIRMINGHAM

In spring 1963, the SCLC staged a major nonviolent protest in Birmingham, Alabama. Its members urged business leaders to end segregation in restaurants, stores, and facilities. Birmingham police attacked nonviolent protestors, including children, with high-pressure water jets and police dogs. When the national news media captured images of the violence, the public (outside of the South) was outraged.

During these protests, in April 1963, MLK Jr. was arrested and spent over a week in jail. He wrote his famous **"LETTER FROM BIRMINGHAM JAIL,"** in which he eloquently laid out the causes for protest and the philosophy of nonviolence. He wrote, "Injustice anywhere is a threat to justice everywhere."



The MARCH on WASHINGTON

JFK spoke on national television about the need for civil rights and introduced a bill on the issue. In support of this bill, MLK Jr. led a quarter of a million people in the **MARCH ON WASHINGTON** on August 28, 1963. The march was the scene of his "**I HAVE A DREAM**" speech.

The KENNEDY ASSASSINATION and the CIVIL RIGHTS ACT of 1964

On November 22, 1963, while campaigning in Dallas, President Kennedy was shot and killed. His assassin, **LEE HARVEY OSWALD**, was killed by nightclub owner Jack Ruby shortly after. A commission later confirmed that Oswald acted alone.

A COMMUNIST SYMPATHIZER

Kennedy's vice president, LYNDON B. JOHNSON, was sworn in as president, and he prioritized the civil rights bill in order to honor the late president's memory.

The CIVIL RIGHTS ACT OF 1964 passed quickly. It:

outlawed discriminatory voter registration practices

ended segregation in establishments that affected interstate commerce, which was broadly defined as "any place of public accommodation"

SUCH AS HOTELS,
RESTAURANTS,
GAS STATIONS,
ETC.

ended segregation in public places and public schools

established the EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY COMMISSION

allowed the government to enforce the law

FREEDOM SUMMER

Once desegregation became law, the civil rights movement tackled voting rights. In the summer of 1964, after the Twenty-Fourth Amendment (which banned poll taxes) was ratified, the SNCC organized FREEDOM SUMMER, during which students from the North came to the South to conduct VOTER REGISTRATION drives. Three volunteers were murdered by the KKK.

In early 1965, the SCLC and MLK Jr. led a protest in SELMA, ALABAMA, including a march to Montgomery, during which

protestors were attacked by state troopers. Americans watched the event in horror on national television. President Johnson signed the **VOTING RIGHTS ACT OF 1965**, allowing the federal government to protect all people's right to vote. It significantly increased the number of registered African American voters.

The **GREAT SOCIETY**

President Johnson proposed a sweeping plan to address economic inequality, called the **GREAT SOCIETY**, because that was the goal. Great Society programs, many of which still exist, included:

The "WAR ON POVERTY"

The establishment of **MEDICARE** and **MEDICAID**

Funding for public schools

Funding for environmental protection

The establishment of the
DEPARTMENT OF HOUSING AND URBAN DEVELOPMENT
and the **DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION**

MEDICARE

government-run and
government-subsidized health
insurance for the elderly

MEDICAID

government health insurance
for the needy

ALTERNATIVE CIVIL RIGHTS TACTICS

Some leaders—such as **MALCOLM X**, a member of the black Muslim group **NATION OF ISLAM**—blamed the slow pace of reform on nonviolence. He proposed that blacks should embrace violence for self-defense and separate to form their own society. (He later changed his mind, instead advocating peaceful coexistence.)

Malcolm X was assassinated in 1965, but he inspired the **BLACK POWER** movement,

BLACK POWER

a movement led by some African Americans for political and economic power, as well as cultural pride, to promote racial equality and justice

which SNCC leader **STOKELY CARMICHAEL** popularized. **HUEY NEWTON** and **BOBBY SEALE** founded the radical **BLACK PANTHER PARTY**, which carried arms and demanded equality in housing, education, and employment.

The MLK ASSASSINATION

As protests against discrimination continued and frustration about the slow pace of change mounted, race riots increased. They took place in major urban areas like Watts (in Los Angeles), Harlem, and Detroit every summer from 1965 to 1967. By the spring of 1968, however, the riots had another cause when Dr. Reverend Martin Luther King Jr. was assassinated on April 4, 1968, in Memphis, Tennessee.

“Long hot summer” refers to the summer of 1967, when there were many race riots.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How did World War II help raise awareness about civil rights issues among African American veterans?
2. Why were "separate but equal schools" a violation of the Fourteenth Amendment?
3. Under what circumstances were the Little Rock Nine finally able to attend school?
4. How did Mohandas Gandhi influence MLK Jr.?
5. How did television help Kennedy get elected?
6. What were the Freedom Riders riding? Why?
7. What were Northern volunteers doing in the South during Freedom Summer?
8. Name the programs of the Great Society.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. World War II raised awareness of the hypocrisy in fighting for freedom abroad while inequality persisted at home.
2. The schools for African American children were far inferior to those for white children.
3. The president sent paratroopers to escort them.
4. Gandhi used nonviolent tactics to advocate for self-rule in India.
5. In the first televised presidential debates, Kennedy appeared youthful compared to Nixon.
6. They were riding interstate public buses to protest illegally segregated bus depots in the South.
7. They were registering voters.
8. The War on Poverty, Medicare, Medicaid, education funding, environmentalism, the Department of Transportation, and the Department of Housing and Urban Development

★ Chapter 42 ★

CIVIL RIGHTS GROWS

The CIVIL RIGHTS MOVEMENT GROWS

As African Americans made civil rights gains, other minority groups and people who suffered from injustices began to work harder than ever for similar strides.

CIVIL RIGHTS for HISPANIC AMERICANS

The **HISPANIC** population in the U.S. had grown during the first part of the twentieth century. The largest group of Hispanic immigrants was from Mexico, but the Spanish-speaking population of the U.S. also included immigrants from Puerto Rico, Cuba, and elsewhere. Many immigrants worked as **MIGRANT** or **SEASONAL** farmworkers, particularly in California.

HISPANIC
of or relating to the heritage, people, culture, and language of Spain, Portugal, and Latin America

The UNITED FARM WORKERS union (UFW), founded in 1962 by CESAR CHAVEZ and DOLORES HUERTA, used nonviolent strategies to get rights for migrant workers. The best-known example was the GRAPE BOYCOTT of 1965–1970. The UFW convinced consumers to stop buying California grapes until the farms recognized the union.

Students in Los Angeles led a strike in 1968 for education reform, resulting in more bilingual education programs in public schools. In 1970, the organization LA RAZA UNIDA was founded to find better housing and job opportunities for Mexican Americans and help them get elected to public office.

CIVIL RIGHTS for NATIVE AMERICANS

During the 1950s, the federal government still operated on the policy that it was best to assimilate Native Americans into mainstream culture. The Bureau of Indian Affairs worked to remove Native Americans from their reservations so they could give that land to the states. Native Americans were one of the most poverty-stricken populations in the country.

The mid-twentieth century was a turning point for Native American rights. In 1944, the NATIONAL CONGRESS OF AMERICAN INDIANS (NCAI) was founded to advocate for national autonomy, preservation of languages and cultures, control of ancestral lands, and other civil and legal rights. The INDIAN CIVIL RIGHTS ACT OF 1968 ensured Native Americans of the rights shared by all American citizens, as well as tribal autonomy.

Some Native Americans wanted greater change. In 1968, they founded the AMERICAN INDIAN MOVEMENT (AIM). In 1972, AIM physically seized the Bureau of Indian Affairs headquarters, and in 1973, 300 Native Americans staged a violent occupation of the town of Wounded Knee, South Dakota. They were surrounded by U.S. Marshals and the National Guard. Both sides fired on one another and the standoff lasted 71 days. Native Americans convinced the government to discuss their demands and drew focus on the terrible conditions in which so many of them lived.



CIVIL RIGHTS for AMERICAN WOMEN

Women were in a similar position to African American veterans after World War II: When the war ended, they were expected to return to their roles in the home.

Many realized they wanted more—they were unhappy only fulfilling traditional roles as wives and mothers. This was expressed in **BETTY FRIEDAN**'s 1963 book **THE FEMININE MYSTIQUE**, one of the most significant books of the **FEMINIST** movement.

FEMINISM

the belief that men and women should have equal rights and opportunities

The 1963 **EQUAL PAY ACT** was a victory for equal rights in employment, and the Civil Rights Act of 1964 addressed some gender discrimination.

In 1966, feminists founded the **NATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR WOMEN (NOW)** and campaigned for a complete ban on discrimination on the grounds of sex and gender. NOW's demands would have gone into effect if its 1972 campaign for an **EQUAL RIGHTS AMENDMENT (ERA)** had been ratified by the states.

THE ERA DATES BACK TO 1923 AND THE PROGRESSIVES.

WOMEN
DEMAND
EQUALITY

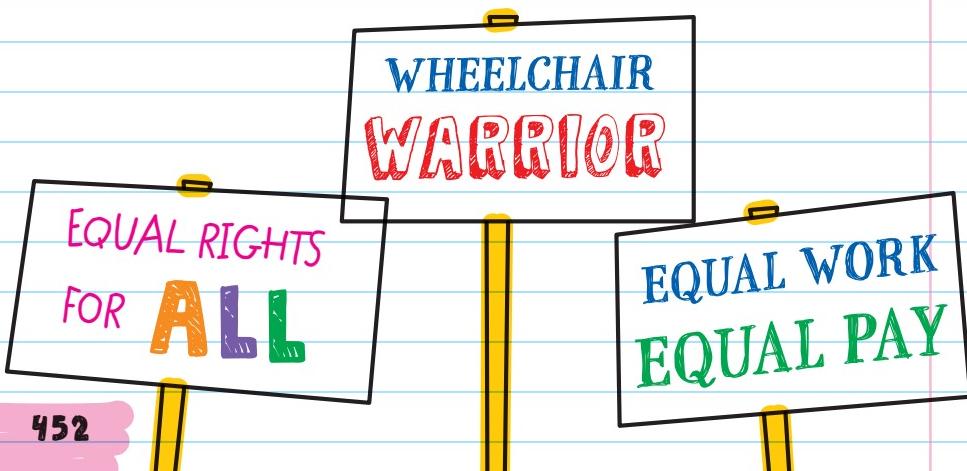
Opponents, led by **PHYLLIS SCHLAFLY**, convinced people that an equal rights amendment would disrupt the structure of American families. The amendment was passed by Congress but was never ratified by enough states for it to become a part of the Constitution.

Feminism made some advances: **THE HIGHER EDUCATION ACT** of 1972, also called **TITLE IX**, made it illegal to deny anyone the right to participate in federally funded educational programs or activities on the basis of sex or gender, creating funding for girls' and women's athletic programs in public schools and colleges.

CIVIL RIGHTS for EVERYONE

The '70s saw the establishment of legal defense funds and cultural foundations for all kinds of ethnic heritages in the U.S. population. Before, in the 1950s and 1960s, the first lesbian and gay rights organizations were established. The **STONEWALL INN RIOTS** of 1969 in New York City's Greenwich Village ignited the **LESBIAN, GAY, BISEXUAL, AND TRANSGENDER (LGBT)** rights movement. In 1979, an estimated 75,000 people marched on Washington to demand equal civil rights for LGBT individuals.

DISABLED IN ACTION was founded in 1970 to raise awareness about the issues faced by Americans with disabilities. It wasn't until 1990, with the passage of the **AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT**, that it became illegal to practice discrimination against people with disabilities.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. In the middle of the twentieth century, where did most Hispanic Americans come from?
2. At that time, what was the most common job for immigrants from Latin America?
3. Why was there a grape boycott in the late '60s?
4. What did the Bureau of Indian Affairs want to do with the reservations in the 1950s?
5. What was the difference between the NCAI and AIM?
6. To which movement was the book *THE FEMININE MYSTIQUE* connected?
7. How did Title IX help female athletes?
8. What event ignited the LGBT movement?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Mexico
2. Migrant farmworker
3. The grape farms would not recognize the United Farm Workers union.
4. They wanted to give the land to the states.
5. NCAI advocated for change, while AIM forced change with a violent occupation.
6. Feminism
7. Title IX required schools to fund women's and men's athletics equally.
8. The Stonewall Inn riots

★ Chapter 43 ★

The VIETNAM WAR

COLD WAR CRISES

Like Eisenhower, Kennedy invested money to help fight Communism abroad. This caused "cold" conflicts—threats and competitions, not all-out war.

The Bay of Pigs Invasion: In 1959, after Communist dictator Fidel Castro's rise to power, Eisenhower developed a plan to train Cuban **DISSIDENTS** to overthrow him. Kennedy launched the invasion on April 17, 1961, but it failed.



DISSIDENT

a person who disagrees with or dissents from the belief in question

The Berlin Wall: In August of 1961, East Germany built a wall across the center of Berlin to close the border. The Berlin Wall symbolized the "Iron Curtain" between Western Europe and Communist Europe.

The Cuban Missile Crisis: In October of 1962, an American **U-2 SPY PLANE** saw potential Soviet nuclear missile sites in Cuba. JFK ordered a naval blockade to prevent Soviet ships from reaching the island. Nuclear war was avoided when the USSR agreed to remove the missiles and the U.S. agreed not to invade Cuba.

The Space Race: **YURI GAGARIN** of the USSR became the first person to orbit the earth, in April of 1961. JFK set a goal of placing a man on the moon by the end of the decade. It took three sets of missions—Mercury, Gemini, and Apollo—but, on July 20, 1969, the U.S.'s **NEIL ARMSTRONG** and **EDWIN "BUZZ" ALDRIN** were the first people to walk on the moon.

THE APOLLO PROJECT

On the OTHER HAND...

To try to promote world peace, in 1961, Kennedy created the **PEACE CORPS**, which sends volunteers to developing countries around the world. In 1963, he helped set up a direct hotline between D.C. and Moscow so leaders could communicate quickly in a crisis. Also in 1963, the U.S., the USSR, and the

U.K. signed the **LIMITED NUCLEAR TEST BAN TREATY**, which banned nuclear tests except underground.

CONFLICT in VIETNAM: A COLD WAR CRISIS

Vietnam was part of **FRENCH INDOCHINA** (the present-day nations of Cambodia, Laos, and Vietnam). Leader **HO CHI MINH** and his **INDOCHINESE COMMUNIST PARTY (ICP)** joined other nationalists to create the **VIET MINH**, a coalition to take military action for independence.

Geneva Accords: In May 1954, the French suffered a major defeat at the **BATTLE OF DIEN BIEN PHU**. Afterward, the French and the Vietnamese met in Geneva, where it was decided that Vietnam would temporarily be divided along the 17th parallel (a similar tactic to what had been tried in Korea); the 1956 elections would decide who would run the whole country. In the meantime, Ho Chi Minh would control the Communist north and **NGO DINH DIEM** would control the anti-Communist south.



VIETNAM DIVIDED

Eisenhower sent a ton of money and weapons to support Diem's army.

Diem thought he'd lose the national elections, so he refused to participate.

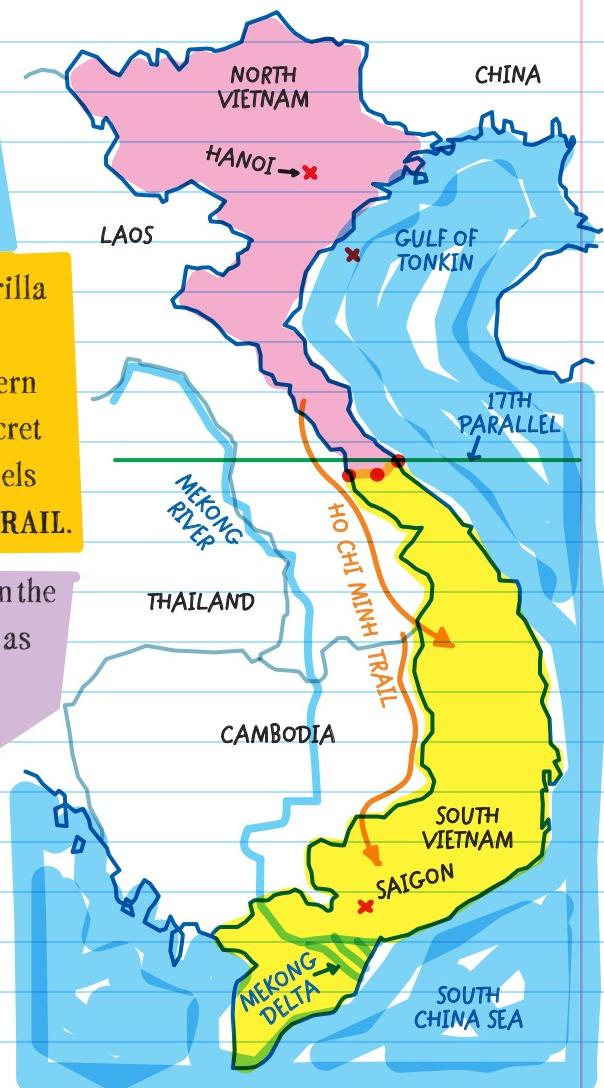
Communists in the south formed the **NATIONAL LIBERATION FRONT**, a group also known as the **VIET CONG**.

The Viet Cong waged guerrilla war in South Vietnam and got assistance from northern Communists through a secret network of paths and tunnels called the **HO CHI MINH TRAIL**.

Kennedy sent soldiers from the **SPECIAL FORCES** (known as Green Berets) to help the south.

In November of 1963, Diem's army staged a coup and killed him.

South Vietnam was losing control...



Eisenhower and the U.S. government believed in the **DOMINO THEORY** about the spread of Communism: If one country “fell,” then its neighbors would fall too.



The GULF of TONKIN RESOLUTION

When Lyndon Johnson became president, Secretary of Defense **ROBERT McNAMARA** told him that he needed to either send more troops to Vietnam or give up the war. In 1964, North Vietnamese patrol boats attacked two U.S. destroyers in international waters. This led Congress to issue the **GULF OF TONKIN RESOLUTION**, giving the president the power to take military action without declaring war. In March 1965, the U.S. committed combat forces to South Vietnam. U.S. offensive operations in Vietnam **ESCALATED**, led on the ground by **WILLIAM WESTMORELAND**.

The USSR was involved in the Vietnam War, but indirectly. The Soviets fought a **PROXY WAR**—they contributed supplies and used a **PROXY**, or stand-in, to do the fighting.

The proxies were North Vietnamese Communists. Direct conflict between the U.S. and the USSR would have been too dangerous.

ESCALATION

The U.S. used **SEARCH-AND-DESTROY** missions to find Viet Cong bases. There was a high rate of civilian casualties because soldiers took refuge in villages.

The U.S. launched a bombing campaign called **OPERATION ROLLING THUNDER**—which lasted three years and involved dropping hundreds of thousands of bombs.

The fast-burning chemical **NAPALM** was used to wipe out forests and villages that lined the Ho Chi Minh Trail.

The herbicide **AGENT ORANGE** was used to kill the jungle where Vietnamese guerillas took cover. Agent Orange was later shown to cause serious illnesses, including cancer.

Most U.S. soldiers were inexperienced draftees unprepared to fight guerrillas in an unfamiliar tropical climate. The Viet Cong seemed to have an endless reserve of highly motivated soldiers, who infiltrated the south by going through Laos and Cambodia.

The TET OFFENSIVE

On January 31, 1968, during a cease-fire in honor of the Vietnamese New Year celebration of **TET**, the Viet Cong and North Vietnam forces ambushed American bases and South Vietnamese villages in attacks called the **TET OFFENSIVE**. They didn't make any gains, but the Vietnam War was getting costly.

THESE ATTACKS RAN ALL ALONG THE HO CHI MINH TRAIL.

The COUNTERCULTURE

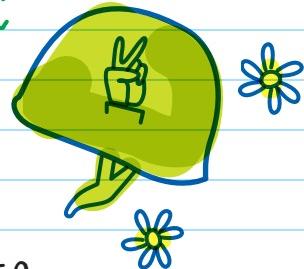
Many people thought the U.S. didn't belong in another country's civil war. The **DRAFT** was controversial: Wealthy individuals and college students could **DEFER**, so poor or undereducated minorities were drafted at a larger proportion. Young people turned to the **COUNTERCULTURE**: movements led by **HIPPIES** and dedicated to peace.

The **MY LAI MASSACRE** of March 16, 1968—during which American soldiers murdered hundreds of Vietnamese civilians—drove more people to the antiwar movement.

Some young men declared themselves **CONSCIENTIOUS OBJECTORS**; others burned their **DRAFT CARDS** or went to Canada to avoid fighting. **STUDENTS FOR A DEMOCRATIC SOCIETY** led protests on college campuses. They were all accused of being unpatriotic.



Half a million people attended a counterculture event called the Woodstock Music and Arts Fair, better known as the **WOODSTOCK FESTIVAL**. The August 1969 concert was advertised as "3 Days of Peace & Music."



DEFER
to put off

COUNTERCULTURE

a culture that is in opposition to (counter to) the mainstream culture

CONSCIENTIOUS OBJECTOR

someone excluded from military service on the grounds of a moral opposition to war



The ELECTION of 1968

President Johnson announced he wouldn't run for president again because of the stalemate in Vietnam. Three people were in the running for the Democratic nomination: incumbent vice president **HUBERT HUMPHREY**; antiwar Minnesota senator **EUGENE McCARTHY**; and JFK's brother **ROBERT F. KENNEDY**, a senator from New York. RFK made a strong start, but on June 6, 1968, he was assassinated by a Palestinian, Sirhan Sirhan, because of his support for Israel. Hubert Humphrey won the nomination.

The Republican nominee, **RICHARD M. NIXON**, won the presidency by appealing to a "SILENT MAJORITY" of patriotic Americans who wanted the war to end but didn't like the counterculture. Nixon promised he'd lead the country out of Vietnam without a shameful retreat. Nixon pledged "Peace with Honor."

Alabama governor **GEORGE C. WALLACE** ran on a segregationist third-party platform and won over 13 percent of the popular vote. In 1963, Wallace had tried to block desegregation at the University of Alabama. (In his old age, he apologized for his former beliefs.)

NIXON'S VIETNAM

On the advice of National Security Adviser **HENRY KISSINGER**, Nixon began to withdraw soldiers from Asia and promised to end the draft. Gradually turning over the fighting to the

ARMY OF THE REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM (ARVN) was called the "VIETNAMIZATION" of the war. But at the same time, Nixon secretly bombed Cambodia and sent troops there to cut off the Ho Chi Minh Trail. When Americans found out, there were protests, most of them peaceful. But at KENT STATE UNIVERSITY in Ohio, four students were killed by the National Guard; another protest turned violent at Jackson State University.

NOW CALLED
THE "KENT STATE SHOOTINGS" OR
THE "KENT STATE MASSACRE"

In 1971, secret documents known as the PENTAGON PAPERS were leaked to the NEW YORK TIMES. They revealed what people suspected: The country had been lied to about how much the U.S. was involved in the war. They also revealed that the U.S. had no idea how to bring about victory in Vietnam.

In the presidential election of 1972, Democrat GEORGE McGOVERN ran on an antiwar platform. But Nixon still won in a landslide of 49 out of 50 states. Nixon had withdrawn almost all American combat troops and drastically reduced American casualties—progress at that point was based on "body counts" and not military objectives.

THE TWENTY-SIXTH AMENDMENT (1971)

Why was the voting age lowered to 18? Because a guy could be drafted at 18. The slogan was "Old enough to fight, old enough to vote."

OUT of VIETNAM

In the **PARIS PEACE ACCORDS** of January 27, 1973, the U.S. agreed to withdraw from Vietnam, and North Vietnam agreed to return American prisoners of war. But fighting continued between the North and South Vietnamese. In January 1975, the North launched a full-scale invasion of the South under the belief that the U.S. would not return. Hundreds of thousands of South Vietnamese fled the country; these refugees were called "BOAT PEOPLE" because many escaped by boat. The war finally ended on April 30, 1975, when the Communists captured Saigon, the capital of South Vietnam, and renamed it **HO CHI MINH CITY**. The nation was united as the **SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM**.

VIETNAM AFTERSHOCKS

The war cost 58,000 American lives. Hundreds of thousands were wounded, and others were classified as MIA (missing in action) and were never found. Some soldiers suffered from **POST-TRAUMATIC STRESS DISORDER (PTSD)**. Civilian confidence in the government was low.

Dissatisfaction influenced Congress to pass the **WAR POWERS ACT** in 1973, limiting how the president could use military force without a declaration of war by Congress.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How was the Cuban Missile Crisis resolved?
2. What is the domino theory?
3. What were the terms of the Geneva Accords?
4. What were President Johnson's two choices for how to proceed in Vietnam?
5. Why was the Tet Offensive such a surprise?
6. Why was the draft a subject of protests against the Vietnam War?
7. Under what name was Vietnam reunited?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Kennedy instituted a blockade, the USSR agreed to remove the missiles, and the U.S. agreed not to invade Cuba.
2. The theory that if one nation becomes Communist, its neighbors will quickly fall to Communism
3. Vietnam would be divided along the 17th parallel until the 1956 elections.
4. He could either pull out or invest fully—he could not continue on a middle path.
5. It came during a cease-fire in honor of the holiday of Tet.
6. Deferments meant that most people who were drafted were poor or minorities.
7. Socialist Republic of Vietnam

★ Chapter 44 ★

NIXON'S POLITICS

INFLATION

Nixon was elected in 1968 as a socially conservative candidate who promised to end the protest culture of the 1960s. He appointed conservative Supreme Court justices and believed in **NEW FEDERALISM**, or transferring power from the federal government to the states. *AND MONEY!*
He also didn't want to increase taxes.

"DEFICIT SPENDING"

Because of the Vietnam War and the Great Society, the U.S. was spending more money than it brought in. Nixon's solution was to end inflation by keeping interest rates high (to discourage borrowing) and freezing wages and prices. None of his policies fixed the problem.

The OPEC EMBARGO

The economy was also crippled by the price of oil. The price was so high that some businesses could scarcely function.

In 1973, during the Jewish holiday of Yom Kippur, Egypt and Syria instigated hostilities against Israel in the **YOM KIPPUR WAR**. The U.S. sent weapons to help Israel. In response, the **ORGANIZATION OF PETROLEUM EXPORTING COUNTRIES (OPEC)**—a **SYNDICATE** of the Middle Eastern nations that provide most of the world's oil—refused to sell to the U.S. This led to soaring gas prices and massive shortages throughout the U.S. The embargo didn't end until March of 1974, when Kissinger helped negotiate a cease-fire between Israel and Egypt.

SYNDICATE

a group of people or organizations that come together to carry out a specific project, duty, or business

REALPOLITIK

Nixon and Kissinger were believers in **REALPOLITIK**, the theory that a country should pursue policies that are in its best interest regardless of political or moral ideals. For example:

In China: Nixon decided that a policy of not recognizing the Communist government just kept the U.S. from doing business with an important world player. In the early 1970s, when he saw tensions rising between China and the Soviet Union, he used the opportunity to communicate with China.

China invited the U.S. Ping-Pong team to visit in April 1971. That "PING-PONG DIPLOMACY"

led to stronger ties between Nixon and Chinese Premier **ZHOU ENLAI**. In February

1972, Nixon became the first president to make a state visit to China. Nixon's support of China went against the U.S.'s longstanding policy of containment.

In Chile: When **MARXIST**

Salvador Allende was elected president in 1970, Nixon feared that Chile would become "another

Cuba" and ended economic aid. He helped Allende's political enemies instead. In 1973, when Allende was overthrown by **GENERAL AUGUSTO PINOCHET**, the U.S. supported Pinochet even though he was a **DESPOT**.

MARXISM

the economic theory of Karl Marx, who originated the ideas of modern Socialism and Communism

DÉTENTE

Nixon went to Moscow to meet with Soviet premier

LEONID BREZHNEV. The Soviets were eager to reduce

hostilities and keep the U.S. from becoming too close an ally of China. The two nations signed the **STRATEGIC ARMS**

LIMITATION TREATY OF 1972 (SALT I), which called for a reduction of nuclear arsenals and intended to reduce the fear of nuclear disaster. This led to a **DÉTENTE**, or a relaxation of international hostilities.

DESPOT

a dictator

SOCIAL ISSUES

Many major upheavals took place during the Nixon presidency; for example:

In 1973, the Supreme Court ruled in *ROE V. WADE* that, on the issue of abortion, women have the right to choose.

The first EARTH DAY was celebrated on April 22, 1970, and the ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) was formed amid rising concerns over pollution and environmental conservation.

Initially mentioned in executive orders issued by President Kennedy and President Johnson, **AFFIRMATIVE ACTION** policies were promoted by the Nixon administration in an effort to create opportunities for minorities.

AFFIRMATIVE ACTION

policies that take factors such as race, religion, sex, and national origin into consideration to create equality

WATERGATE

Although Nixon won the 1972 presidential election in a landslide, he hadn't expected an easy victory. After all, he hadn't managed to end the Vietnam War, and the U.S. economy was in poor shape. He asked some of his aides (notably **JOHN EHRLICHMAN**, **H. R. HALDEMAN**, and **JOHN MITCHELL**) to help him. His first goal was to make a list of enemies (basically, anybody who didn't support him) and get the FBI and IRS to investigate the people on it.

On June 17, 1972, five people working for the **COMMITTEE TO REELECT THE PRESIDENT** broke into a Democratic National Committee office in a Washington, D.C., office-apartment-hotel complex called the **WATERGATE** to steal campaign secrets; they were caught. Nixon denied any involvement and used his presidential powers to prevent investigations of the burglary.

BOB WOODWARD and **CARL BERNSTEIN**, two reporters for the *Washington Post*, investigated the break-in with the help of a secret inside source called "Deep Throat."

FORMER FBI OFFICIAL MARK FELT
FINALLY REVEALED HIMSELF AS
DEEP THROAT IN 2005.

In February of 1973, a Senate investigation began. JOHN DEAN, one of the president's lawyers, testified that Nixon was involved in a cover-up. The Senate committee found out that Nixon had secretly recorded his conversations with members of the White House staff. Impeachment proceedings began in the House. Knowing the tapes would prove he had committed a criminal abuse of power, on August 9, 1974, Richard Nixon became the first U.S. president in history to resign.

Americans lost confidence in the honesty of the government.

BUT

The fact that Nixon was caught and charged showed that the government's system of checks and balances worked.

In a later interview, Nixon defended some of his actions by claiming, "When the president does it, that means that it is not illegal."



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What are the tenets of "New Federalism"?
2. Why did OPEC stop selling oil to the U.S. in 1973?
3. Which sports team visited China as a sign of goodwill between the U.S. and China?
4. What is the theory of realpolitik and how did it influence Nixon's decisions about Chile?
5. What major treaty did Nixon and Brezhnev sign in 1972, and what did it do?
6. What is détente?
7. What was the Watergate?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. States would get more power and money, thus reducing the size of the federal government.
2. To protest U.S. support for Israel during the Yom Kippur War
3. The Ping-Pong team
4. Realpolitik is a theory that a country should pursue policies that are in its best interest regardless of political or moral ideals. Nixon supported the dictator Pinochet in his revolt against the Marxist president.
5. SALT I shrank nuclear arsenals and led to a détente.
6. A relaxing of tensions
7. An office-apartment-hotel complex in Washington where the Democratic National Convention had an office

★ Chapter 45 ★

CARTER

in the 1970s

GERALD FORD and the NIXON PARDON

Nixon's original VP, **SPIRO AGNEW**, had resigned in 1973 because of a bribery and tax scandal. **GERALD FORD** was the first—and ONLY—VP to be appointed with the consent of Congress. When Nixon resigned, Ford became president. Ford's early decisions made him seem a little suspicious as well:

Ford **PARDONED** Nixon for any crimes he may have committed during his presidency. Ford reasoned that it would help the country move on, but Americans couldn't understand why Nixon shouldn't be punished.

PARDON
release from liability of an offense

AMNESTY
an official pardon
for an offense or
group of offenders

Ford stirred up more controversy by offering **AMNESTY** to people who dodged the draft during Vietnam.

Ford was unsuccessful at fixing the poor economy he inherited, even after he froze prices, called on Americans to save money, and cut taxes.

On the plus side, Ford signed the **HELSINKI ACCORDS**, a step toward détente in the Cold War.

A LIST OF RULES TO FOLLOW
TO HELP COMMUNICATION
BETWEEN THE COMMUNIST
BLOC AND THE WEST

ELECTION of 1976

The Democratic Party nominated **JIMMY CARTER**, former governor of Georgia. He had an appealing image as an ordinary and honest man. These qualities helped him win but also made it difficult for him to put his plans into action once he arrived in Washington. For example:

Carter announced a **NATIONAL ENERGY PLAN** in 1977 to help solve the energy crisis, but some people say he wasn't tough enough to get the support of Congress.

Carter cut and later raised taxes, coming across as indecisive.

The economy suffered from **STAGFLATION**—high inflation, interest rates, and unemployment—which led to little to no economic growth.

Carter supported **ALTERNATIVE ENERGY SOURCES** but was politically hurt by an incident at the **THREE MILE ISLAND** nuclear power plant in March 1979, when an overheated reactor released radiation into the environment. Amid protests, the president continued to support nuclear power to reduce the U.S.'s reliance on oil.

ALTERNATIVE ENERGY
any energy source that is not a fossil fuel

JIMMY CARTER and HUMAN RIGHTS

President Carter achieved success in his foreign policy. He rejected realpolitik, saying that he couldn't compromise his ideals regarding equality and human rights.

Carter curtailed U.S. relations with South Africa to protest their **APARTHEID** regime.

APARTHEID
the rigid policy of segregation in South Africa from 1948 to 1994

He signed a treaty with Panama in 1977 to allow the country to gain control of the Panama Canal by the end of 1999 as long as it remained a neutral waterway.

He condemned the USSR's violations of human rights, even though that hurt the Cold War détente.

On the plus side, Brezhnev and Carter signed the **SALT II** treaty in June 1979 (but it was never formally ratified by the U.S.).

In December 1979, the USSR invaded Afghanistan. In protest, Carter made the controversial decision not to send teams to the 1980 Olympic Games in Moscow.

The CAMP DAVID ACCORDS

Carter's greatest achievement was in 1978, when he invited Muhammad Anwar el-Sadat, the president of Egypt, and Menachem Begin, the prime minister of Israel, to **CAMP DAVID**, the president's retreat in Maryland. They agreed on the **CAMP DAVID ACCORDS**, which led to a peace treaty between the two nations—the first-ever Israeli-Arab treaty.

IRAN HOSTAGE CRISIS

A revolution was brewing in **IRAN**, the U.S.'s other major Middle Eastern ally. The ruler of Iran was **SHAH MOHAMMAD REZA PAHLAVI**, a pro-American leader who was thought to be corrupt. In early 1979, supporters of **AYATOLLAH KHOMEINI**, a religious leader, overthrew the shah and instituted fundamentalist religious rules. In November, with the new government's support, students in **TEHRAN** took over the city's U.S. embassy. Embassy workers were held hostage for more than a year. Carter's inability to resolve the crisis gave him a reputation as an ineffective leader.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why did Ford pardon Nixon?
2. What did American voters find appealing about Jimmy Carter's image?
3. What incident hurt the U.S.'s chances of relying on nuclear power for alternative energy?
4. What is apartheid?
5. What was the effect of Carter's stance on human rights issues on the Cold War?
6. Which two nations were signers of the Camp David Accords and why was the treaty significant?
7. How did the Iran Hostage Crisis affect Carter's image?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

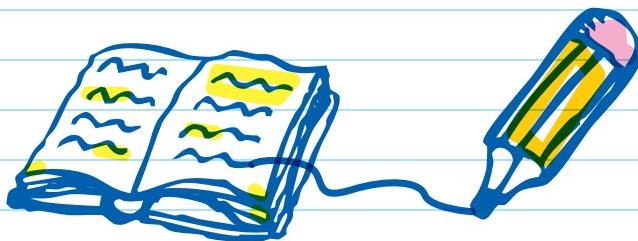


1. He thought it would help the country move on.
2. Americans thought he was an ordinary and honest guy.
3. The Three Mile Island incident
4. The policy of segregation in South Africa from 1948 to 1994
5. He called attention to Soviet human rights violations, which hurt relations between the two powers.
6. Egypt and Israel. It was significant because it was the first Israeli-Arab treaty ever.
7. He seemed ineffectual because he could not get the hostages freed.

Unit 10

American History...
and Current-ish Events!

It's history in the making, and the end is still being written....





Chapter 46



RONALD

REAGAN

RONALD REAGAN

In the 1980 presidential elections, the Republicans nominated **RONALD REAGAN**, an actor and the former governor of California. Reagan was a hard-line conservative who believed in:



TAX CUTS

SMALL GOVERNMENT

DEREGULATION OF BUSINESS

He won by a landslide. Carter spent the remainder of his **LAME-DUCK** presidency working to free the hostages in Iran, who were released on the day of Reagan's inauguration.

LAME DUCK

refers to a politician in between the time he has been voted out of office and the time he actually leaves office



In March 1981, Reagan was wounded in an assassination attempt by John Hinckley, but returned to the Oval Office within a month. He instituted conservative reforms. By dealing harshly with striking air traffic controllers, he established himself as a more decisive president than Carter.



Reagan appointed the first female Supreme Court justice, Sandra Day O'Connor, in 1981.

REAGANOMICS

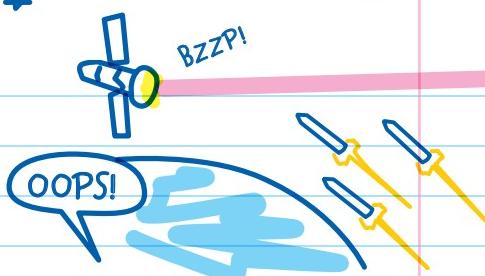
Reagan's conservatism was clear in his economic agenda—dubbed **REAGANOMICS**. It was based on the idea of **SUPPLY-SIDE ECONOMICS**: Tax cuts and lenient business regulations would increase investments and business growth, which was supposed to **TRICKLE DOWN** by providing jobs and then come back to the government in tax revenue.

Reagan cut taxes and social service programs to spur growth in the private sector, but he also increased military spending. More military spending with lower tax revenues created a big deficit, and the country went into a recession in the early 1980s. In 1983, the economy turned back around as consumers began to spend more and unemployment started to decline.

The EVIL EMPIRE

Reagan's military spending was based on his belief that the Soviet Union was an "**EVIL EMPIRE**." He wanted to beat them by outspending them in the arms race. In March 1983, Reagan

created an antimissile defense program called the **STRATEGIC DEFENSE INITIATIVE (SDI)**, or its nickname: "Star Wars." It was supposed to shoot missiles out of the sky. It seemed far-fetched, and scientists had difficulty developing the technology.



OOPS!

The ELECTION of 1984



WON 49 OUT OF
50 STATES

As the economy remained strong and Reagan continued to project an image of confidence and optimism, Reagan and the Republicans easily won the election of 1984. The Democratic ticket included **WALTER MONDALE** (who was vice president under Carter) alongside vice presidential candidate **GERALDINE FERRARO**, the first woman to be included on a major-party ballot for national office.

The IRAN-CONTRA AFFAIR

Reagan supported revolutions against Communism in Central and South America with money or supplies. When a revolutionary Socialist group called the **SANDINISTAS** came to power in **NICARAGUA** in 1979, Reagan supported their opposition, called the **CONTRAS** (because they were AGAINST the rulers). Congress worried that Reagan was leading the country into another pointless foreign conflict. In 1984, it passed a law banning the president from assisting the Contras.

To get around the ban, members of the White House **NATIONAL SECURITY COUNCIL (NSC)**, notably **OLIVER NORTH**, sold weapons to Iran in exchange for helping to free hostages in Lebanon and then gave those proceeds to the Contras. By creating alternative funding through arms sales, the NSC bypassed Congress's role in appropriating funds. The **IRAN-CONTRA AFFAIR** was exposed in 1986. Reagan said he wasn't aware of it, so he wasn't found to have broken any laws.

The COLD WAR THAWS

MIKHAIL GORBACHEV became the Soviet Communist Party's leader in 1985. Gorbachev instituted two policies:

perestroika ("reorganization," or economic reforms)

glasnost ("openness" to freedom of political opinion)

Reagan was encouraged by these moves, and in 1987, Reagan and Gorbachev negotiated and signed the **INTERMEDIATE-RANGE NUCLEAR FORCES (INF) TREATY**, reducing the size of their nuclear arsenals.

ELECTION of 1988

In 1988, on the strength of Reagan's popularity, his vice president, **GEORGE H. W. BUSH**, became president. (The Democratic candidate was **MICHAEL DUKAKIS**, the governor of Massachusetts.) In 1991, the U.S. and the USSR signed the

STRATEGIC ARMS REDUCTION TREATY (START), in which they agreed to destroy many of their nuclear weapons.

The COLD WAR ENDS

Gorbachev meant for his reforms to strengthen and modernize the Soviet Union. Letting people express their dissatisfaction but not fixing the economy led to something he didn't expect: The Soviet bloc began to advocate independence. In October 1989, protests forced the leader of East Germany to resign, and the new government agreed to open the border with West Germany. At midnight on November 9, 1989, the gates were opened and people began to tear down the Berlin Wall, the symbol of the Cold War. Soon, Germany was reunited into a single, democratic nation.

On July 1, 1991, the Warsaw Pact was disbanded and the Czech Republic, Hungary, Poland, and more declared independence. Advocates of democracy led by **BORIS YELTSIN**, who had just been elected president of the Russian Federation, forced the defeat of the Communist Party in the Soviet Union. On December 1, 1991, Yeltsin, along with the presidents of Ukraine and Belarus, declared that the Soviet Union was finished. Gorbachev resigned on December 25. The USSR was dissolved on December 26. The Cold War was over.

Communism was still going strong in China. In 1989, soldiers opened fire on pro-democracy protesters in **TIANANMEN SQUARE**, killing hundreds.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How did Reagan think that tax cuts would help the economy?
2. When were the hostages in Tehran released?
3. Who were the Sandinistas?
4. How did the National Security Council get money to help the Contras in Nicaragua?
5. What is the difference between perestroika and glasnost?
6. How did perestroika and glasnost influence U.S.-USSR relations?
7. How did glasnost hurt Gorbachev's power?
8. When did the Cold War end?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. He believed the wealth would trickle down because it would give people jobs and more money to spend and spur the economy.
2. The day of Reagan's inauguration
3. A revolutionary Socialist group that came to power in Nicaragua. The U.S. supported their opposition.
4. They sold weapons to Iran.
5. Perestroika refers to economic reforms, and glasnost is a policy of openness.
6. Reagan was encouraged by Gorbachev's new policies and was willing to negotiate the INF treaty.
7. Once dissent was allowed, there were many protests and calls for democracy.
8. The Cold War ended when the USSR dissolved—on December 26, 1991.

★ Chapter 47 ★

To the PRESENT DAY

The PERSIAN GULF WAR

After the Cold War ended, President Bush turned to the Middle East. In August of 1990, **SADDAM HUSSEIN**, the dictatorial leader of Iraq, invaded Iraq's oil-rich neighbor **KUWAIT**, and then ignored UN demands that he withdraw.



Under GENERAL NORMAN SCHWARZKOPF JR. and GENERAL COLIN POWELL, the U.S. led a coalition force on a mission called OPERATION DESERT STORM. The PERSIAN GULF WAR began with troops on the ground on February 24, 1991, and, within days, halted with a cease-fire on February 28. Casualty rates for American troops were very low.

The ELECTION of 1992

President Bush should have been in a strong position for the next presidential election. He had successfully implemented the CLEAN AIR ACT and the AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT, and he had begun the "WAR ON DRUGS." But the economy was weak. The Democratic nominee, Arkansas governor WILLIAM (BILL) CLINTON, defeated Bush and third-party candidate ROSS PEROT, an Independent.

CLINTON:	43 PERCENT OF VOTES
BUSH:	37 PERCENT OF VOTES
PEROT:	19 PERCENT OF VOTES AND NO ELECTORAL VOTES

ACHIEVEMENTS of CLINTON'S PRESIDENCY

Clinton's two-term presidency included a number of achievements:

He persuaded Congress to balance the budget, and the U.S. government had a surplus for the first time in 30 years. During the Clinton presidency, one of the biggest economic expansions in recent memory took place: the BOOM of the 1990s.

The NORTH AMERICAN FREE TRADE AGREEMENT (NAFTA) opened up trade with Canada and Mexico without tariffs.

He appointed MADELEINE ALBRIGHT as the first female secretary of state.

He nominated JANET RENO as the first female attorney general.

He convinced YITZHAK RABIN, prime minister of Israel, and YASIR ARAFAT, head of the PALESTINE LIBERATION ORGANIZATION, to come to the White House in 1993 and agree to recognize each other's right to exist—a landmark moment in the Middle East.

He was part of the 1999 decision by NATO to intervene to end ETHNIC CLEANSING in KOSOVO, a region of the former YUGOSLAVIA where religious and territorial disputes had led to civil war.

ETHNIC CLEANSING
removal or killing of an ethnic group in a society

However, Clinton's two terms in office were marked by scandal:

the **WHITEWATER** controversy, in which the ethics of a real-estate deal he had been involved with in Arkansas came into question;

accusations of an inappropriate relationship with a White House intern, **MONICA LEWINSKY**, which he denied under oath; it later became clear that a relationship had existed.

In 1998, Clinton became the second president to be **impeached**, for **PERJURY** and **OBSTRUCTION OF JUSTICE**. The Senate, however, rejected the conviction on the grounds that lying about an affair was not a "high crime" (which would qualify for removal from office according to the Constitution).

PERJURY
lying under oath

Congressman **NEWT GINGRICH** led the Republican Party to regain control of Congress for the first time in forty years during the 1994 midterm elections. He did so by releasing their "Contract with America"—an outline of what they would do if they became the majority in the House of Representatives.

THE WORLD WIDE WEB

In 1989, a British software consultant named **TIM BERNERS-LEE** created an open computer network for research purposes, which would become the template for the **WORLD WIDE WEB**. Following this crucial step, Berners-Lee made key innovations that helped shape the web we know today:

HTTP (hypertext transfer protocol, which allows you to click on a link and be redirected to that page)

URLs (uniform resource locators, which are web addresses)

HTML (hypertext markup language, which allows you to put links in pages and documents so they connect)

Still, the larger public didn't begin using the internet until the mid-'90s, when companies like Netscape and AOL made browsers and mailed software to people so they could get on the web.

PERSONAL COMPUTERS (PCs) were first mass-marketed in the late 1970s. Prior to then, people assembled computers from parts themselves. STEVE JOBS and STEVE WOZNIAK sold the first fully assembled Apple computers (Macs) in 1976.

BUSH v. GORE

In 2000, Clinton's vice president, **AL GORE**, ran for president against Republican candidate **GEORGE W. BUSH**, the governor of Texas and the son of the first President Bush.

The election was a close one. In fact, it was so close that it had no result: Gore won the popular vote, but the electoral result was in question due to disputed vote counts in Florida. Gore requested that a recount be done in two counties by hand. Bush sued to prevent a recount, and the case went to the Supreme Court.

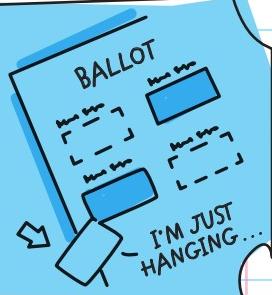
On December 12, 2000, in the case of **BUSH v. GORE**, the Supreme Court ruled that hand recounts would not be

uniform and would thus be a denial of equal protection of the law. The court also ruled that an alternative recount method could not

be established in the time remaining set by Florida law. The original vote count in Florida became official, and Bush became president. The close election led to **PARTISAN** bitterness, made worse by a 50–50 split by party in the Senate.

RALPH NADER also ran for president in 2000 as a candidate of the Green Party, which advocates grassroots democracy, social justice, and environmentalism.

A CHAD is the tiny portion of paper on a ballot that voters punch out to indicate their candidate. However, it is difficult to read them accurately.



PARTISAN
having to do with party politics

STILL CONTINUES TODAY

The RISE of TERRORISM

President Bush followed through on a campaign promise to cut taxes. He also instituted a public education policy, called **NO CHILD LEFT BEHIND**, to create national testing standards, and he appointed a diverse cabinet. However, his presidency was eclipsed by the issue of **TERRORISM**—violent and intimidating actions that have a political or ideological purpose but are not backed by a state.

During Clinton's presidency, terrorism was on the rise:

the 1993 World Trade Center bombing

the 1995 Oklahoma City bombing

a series of embassy bombings in Africa in 1998

the 2000 bombing of a U.S. Navy ship in Yemen

The Oklahoma City bombing was perpetrated by an American named **TIMOTHY McVEIGH**. The others were the work of **FUNDAMENTALIST** Islamist groups including **AL-QAEDA**, which had been founded to fight Soviets in Afghanistan and then expanded to oppose the policies of the Western world. Because terrorists lack traditional armies or diplomats, it proved difficult to fight them.

FUNDAMENTALISM
the strict adherence to a set of basic ideas or principles

9/11



On the morning of **SEPTEMBER 11, 2001**, terrorists hijacked four airplanes in the U.S. Two were flown into the **WORLD TRADE CENTER** in New York City, toppling the **TWIN TOWERS**, symbols of American economic world power. A third crashed into the **PENTAGON**, and a fourth that was headed toward Washington, D.C., was brought down by the passengers in a Pennsylvania field.

Thousands of people were killed. The nation experienced a surge of patriotism and was supported by allies all over the world.

The **PENTAGON** is the headquarters of the Department of Defense and is located in Arlington, Virginia.

WAR on TERROR

The attacks had been orchestrated by al-Qaeda and its leader, **OSAMA BIN LADEN**. The terrorists were being protected by the **TALIBAN**, the fundamentalist party in power in Afghanistan. On October 7, 2001, the U.S. and its allies attacked, beginning the **WAR IN AFGHANISTAN**. The Taliban was quickly removed from power.

President Bush switched the focus to Iraq. He expressed concern that Saddam Hussein had chemical or nuclear **WEAPONS OF MASS DESTRUCTION (WMD)**. Although many allies asked the U.S. to allow UN weapons inspectors more time to look for WMDs, the U.S. (with the help of Britain) began the **WAR IN IRAQ** in March 2003. Baghdad was occupied, and Saddam was ousted.

← HE WAS TRIED AND EXECUTED.



NO ONE KNOWS THE HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE
OF THIS—HISTORY IS STILL BEING WRITTEN.

Still, the U.S. continued to occupy both Iraq and Afghanistan. Its process of **NATION BUILDING** involved maintaining a presence until there was stability in each region—but stability did not come. **INSURGENTS** continued to fight against the U.S. military, and different Muslim sects (notably the **SUNNI** and **SHIA**) fought for power. In October 2001, Bush signed the **USA PATRIOT ACT**, which broadened

INSURGENT
a rebel or a revolutionary

the discretion of law enforcement officials' investigations of people suspected of terrorism-related acts. Many Americans believed this infringed on their civil liberties. With no end in sight for the wars, domestic dissatisfaction grew.

Bush won a second presidential term, but confidence in him declined as the wars in Iraq and Afghanistan continued:

During Bush's second term, CONDOLEEZZA RICE became the first female African American secretary of state.

The Bush administration was tried and convicted in several cases regarding its detainment and torture of **ENEMY COMBATANTS** at **GUANTÁNAMO BAY**, a U.S. military compound in Cuba.

It was revealed that the government was illegally tapping Americans' phone lines.

The government was criticized for failing to prepare for or respond promptly to the August 2005 devastation from **HURRICANE KATRINA**, which destroyed much of New Orleans.

In December 2005, Bush faced controversy over his decision to launch a program that allowed the National Security Council to monitor the phone calls and emails of Americans suspected of having links to al-Qaeda.

BONUS SECTION: REALLY RECENT HISTORY

PROBABLY TOO SOON TO
STUDY OBJECTIVELY

In the 2006 midterm elections, Democrats took both houses of Congress, and **NANCY PELOSI** became the first female speaker of the house. Then, in the 2008 presidential race, the Democratic candidate—a young senator from Illinois, **BARACK OBAMA**—made an even more historic achievement when he defeated Senator **JOHN McCAIN** and was elected the first African American president of the U.S.

President Obama ran on a platform of "hope" and "change," focusing on:

The ECONOMY: After the tech boom of the 1990s ended and a banking crisis in 2008 led to a major recession, Obama promised to boost the weak economy.

HEALTH CARE: Obama called for universal health care for all Americans, signing a bill (the ACA, or Obamacare) into law in March 2010.

ENDING the WAR: Ending the war in Iraq was another priority of the Obama campaign.

The ENVIRONMENT: Problems like **CLIMATE CHANGE** (also called "global warming") have been acknowledged—but not fixed.

CLIMATE CHANGE

an increase in the overall average temperature of the earth's atmosphere, partially due to manmade causes

WHAT NEXT?

America has made big strides in recent history, from helping to sequence the human genome to innovating the World Wide Web. Recent major events include:

President Obama made history by nominating SONIA SOTOMAYOR to the Supreme Court. She is not only the first person of Hispanic heritage on the Supreme Court but also the third female.

After more than 50 years of no diplomatic relations, the U.S. and Cuba began restoring ties in 2015.

On June 26, 2015, the Supreme Court ruled in favor of MARRIAGE EQUALITY in OBERGEFELL v. HODGES, which challenged whether state gay marriage bans were constitutional. The ruling requires every state to allow same-sex couples to marry.

As America (and the rest of the world) moves further into the 21st century, it will continue to face issues that divide, enrich, and redefine the country.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What event sparked the Persian Gulf War?
2. What did Bill Clinton focus on during his first campaign for the presidency?
3. Why was Bill Clinton impeached?
4. What was the Supreme Court's reasoning in *BUSH v. GORE*?
5. What is terrorism?
6. Why was al-Qaeda originally established?
7. How did Hurricane Katrina hurt the reputation of the Bush administration?
8. What was the effect of the Supreme Court ruling in *OBERGEFELL v. HODGES*?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The Iraqi invasion of Kuwait
2. The economy
3. Perjury and obstruction of justice
4. Hand recounts could not be uniform and were thus a denial of equal protection of the law.
5. Violent and intimidating actions that have a political or ideological purpose but are not backed by a state
6. To fight Soviets in Afghanistan
7. The Bush administration was criticized for lack of preparation and a slow response time.
8. Every state was mandated to allow same-sex couples to marry.

INDEX

A

abolish, 223
abolitionism, 223–225, 230–240
 “bleeding Kansas,” 233–234
 “bleeding Sumner,” 234
Compromise of 1850, 231
and Confederate States of America, 239
Dred Scott decision, 235–236
and election of 1848, 230–231
and election of 1856, 234–235
and election of 1860, 237–238
Fugitive Slave Act, 232
Harpers Ferry raid, 237
Kansas–Nebraska Act, 232–233
Lincoln–Douglas debates, 236–237
and Lincoln’s inaugural address, 239–240
and secession of southern states, 238–239
Wilmot Proviso, 230
Acoma, 12, 13
Act of Toleration, 56
Adams, John, 90–91, 101, 117, 143, 150–152, 156, 158
Adams, John Quincy, 184–186
Adams, Samuel, 89, 96
Adams–Onís Treaty, 197
Addams, Jane, 300
Adena, 11
adjourn, 136
affirmative action, 470
Afrika Korps, 393
Agent Orange, 460
age of exploration, 17
Age of Reform (1820s–1860s), 222
Agnew, Spiro, 475
Agricultural Adjustment Administration, 370
Aguinaldo, Emilio, 321
the Alamo, 205
Albany Plan of Union (Albany Plan), 81
Albright, Madeleine, 491
Aldrin, Edwin “Buzz,” 456
Aleuts, 12, 13
Algonquin, 13
Alien and Sedition Acts (1798), 151–152, 341
Allen, Ethan, 100
alliances, in World War I, 338–340

Allied Powers (Allies), 340, 393, 397
allotment, 282
Al-Qaeda, 495
Álvarez Cabral, Pedro, 21
amend, 127
amendments to the Constitution, 139–141
American Anti-Slavery Society, 223–224
American Colonization Society, 223
American Dream, 429
American Expeditionary Forces (AEF), 345
American Federation of Labor (AFL), 291
American Indian Movement (AIM), 449
Americanization, 297
American Red Cross, 250
American Revolution, 107–120
Americans with Disabilities Act (1990), 452, 490
American System, 180–181
amnesty, 476
anarchist, 292
Anasazi, 9–10, 12, 13
Angel Island, 296
annex, 206
Anthony, Susan B., 226, 308
anti-alcohol reform, 307
Anti-Defamation League, 309
antidiscrimination movements, 309–310
Antifederalists, 131
Anti-Imperialist League, 323
anti-Semitism, 397
Apaches, 12, 13
apartheid, 477
appeasement at Munich, 383
Appomattox Court House, 256
Arafat, Yásir, 491
arbitration, 330
armistice, 322
arms race, 425–426
Armstrong, Neil, 456
Army of the Potomac, 246
Army of the Republic of Vietnam (ARVN), 463
Arnold, Benedict, 100
Arthur, Chester A., 274, 305
Articles of Confederation, 123–124
Aryan, 381
assembly line, 287
assimilate, 297

Astor, John Jacob, 191
Atahualpa, 26
Atlanta Compromise, 309
Atlantic Charter, 386
atomic bomb (A-bomb), 405–406
Attucks, Crispus, 90
Austin, Stephen F., 203
Axis Powers, 379, 383
Aztecs, 4, 25

B ~~~~~

baby boom, 430–432
Bacon's Rebellion, 50
Balboa, Vasco Núñez de, 24
barrios, 309
Barton, Clara, 250
Bataan Death March, 402
Battle of Bunker Hill, 98–99
Battle of Gettysburg, 252–254
Battle of Lexington and Concord, 97–98
Battle of San Jacinto, 205
Battle of the Bulge, 396
Battle of the Little Bighorn, 280–281
Battle of Tippecanoe, 167–168
Bay of Pigs invasion, 455
beatniks, 432
Beecher, Catherine, 222
Bell, Alexander Graham, 286
Bell, John, 238
Belleau Wood, 350
Bering Land Bridge (Beringia), 3, 5
Berkeley, Lord John, 63
Berlin airlift and blockade, 415–416
Berlin Wall, 456
Berners-Lee, Tim, 493
Bernstein, Carl, 471
bicameral legislatures, 69, 128
Big Four, 351
Big Three, 410–411
bill, 136
bill of attainder, 137
Bill of Rights, 132, 140–141
bin Laden, Osama, 496
biological warfare, 84
Birmingham, Alabama, protest, 440
Black Cabinet, 375
Black Codes, 260–261
Black Kettle, Chief, 280
Black nationalism, 360
Black Panther Party, 444

Black Tuesday, 366
"bleeding Kansas," 233–234
blitzkrieg, 383
blockade, 415
Bolívar, Simon, 184
Bolsheviks, 349
Bonaparte, Napoleon, 160
bonds, 345, 346
Bonus Army, 369
boomtowns, 215–216
Boone, Daniel, 114
Booth, John Wilkes, 260
bootleggers, 362
border ruffians, 233
Boston Massacre, 90–91
Boston Tea Party, 91
Bowie, James, 205
Boxer Rebellion, 316
boycotts, 88
Braddock, Edward, 82
Bradford, William, 59
Brain Trust, 369
Brant, Joseph, 114
Breckinridge, John, 237–238
Breed's Hill, 98–99
Brezhnev, Leonid, 469, 477
brinksmanship strategy, 426
Brooks, Preston, 234
Brown, John, 233–234
Brown v. Board of Education, 435–436
Bruce, Blanche K., 263
Bryan, William Jennings, 275, 331, 362
Buchanan, James, 234, 235
Burgoyne, John, 110–112
Bull Moose Party, 331
Bull Run Creek, 245
Bureau of Indian Affairs, 194
burgess, 49
Burnside, Ambrose, 251
Burr, Aaron, 150, 156, 161
Bush, George H. W., 485, 489, 490
Bush, George W., 494–498

C ~~~~~

Cabinet, 143
Cabot, John, 29
Calhoun, John C., 186
Camp David Accords, 478
Cape of Good Hope, 20
capitation, 137

- Capone, Al, 362
Carlisle School, 282
Carmichael, Stokely, 444
Carnegie Steel Company, 289
carpetbaggers, 264
Carter, Jimmy, 416–418
Carteret, Sir George, 63
Cartier, Jacques, 30
Carver, George Washington, 310
cash crops, 29
caucus, 150
Cayuga, 14
cede, 147
Cemetery Ridge, 252
Central Powers (World War I), 340
cession, 213
chad, 494
Champlain, Samuel de, 33
Charles I, king of England, 50
Charles II, king of England, 56
charter, 32
Château-Thierry, 350
Chavez, Cesar, 448
checks and balances, 130
Cherokee, 12, 13
Chiang Kai-Shek, 421
Chickasaw, 12, 13
child labor, 307
Chinese Exclusion Act 1882, 297
Chinook, 12, 13
Churchill, Winston, 385, 386, 393, 410–411, 414
Church of England, 57–58
circuit courts of appeal, 144
civil disobedience, 232
civil right, 260
Civil Rights Act of 1866, 261
Civil Rights Act of 1964, 442
civil rights movement, 435–452
Civil War, 229–240, 243–256
Clark, George Rogers, 114
Clark, William, 163–164
Clay, Henry, 180, 182, 185, 186, 188, 209, 231
Clayton Antitrust Act (1914), 332
Clean Air Act, 490
Cleveland, Grover, 274, 275, 292, 315, 319
climate change, 499–500
Clinton, Henry, 115
Clinton, William (Bill), 490–492, 495
Coercive Acts (1774), 92
Cold War, 414, 485, 486
collective bargaining, 291
colonial America (1607–1780s), 31–42, 45–50,
 53–64, 67–76, 79–84, 87–92, 95–104
colonies, 53–64
Columbian Exchange, 24
Columbus, Christopher, 21–22
Comanche, 12, 13
commander-in-chief, 138
commissions, 158
Committee on Public Information, 347
Committee to Reelect the President, 471
Communism, 349, 421, 459
Compromise of 1850, 231
Compromise of 1877, 265
confederacy, 47
Confederate States of America, 239, 243–256
Confederation Congress, 123
congregation, 61
Congress of Industrial Organizations (CIO),
 374
Congress of Racial Equality (CORE), 440
Connecticut Compromise, 128
conquistadores, 25–27
Constitutional Convention (1787), 126–127
Constitutional Union Party, 238
Constitution of the United States, 129–132,
 135–141, 145
consumerism, 303–304
containment, 414
Continental army, 98, 100
Continental Congresses, 95–96, 98, 127
contras, 484
Convention of 1800, 152
Coolidge, Calvin, 351
Cooper, Peter, 176
Cornwallis, Charles, 110, 115
Coronado, Francisco Vásquez, 27
corps of discovery, 163
Cortés, Hernán, 25–26
Council of the Indies, 27
counterculture, 461
Crawford, William, 185
Crazy Horse, 278
creationism, 361
Creek, 12, 13, 169
Creoles, 28
crimes against humanity, 413
Crockett, Davy, 205
Crusades, 19
Cuban missile crisis, 456

Culp's Hill, 252
Cumberland Road, 180
Custer, George Armstrong, 280
Custer's Last Stand, 280–281

D

da Gama, Vasco, 20
Dakota, 12, 13
Dare, Virginia, 32
Darrow, Clarence, 362
Daughters of Liberty, 89
Davis, Jefferson, 239
Dawes General Allotment Act (1887), 281–282
D-Day, 395–396
Dean, John, 472
Debs, Eugene, 292
Declaration of Independence, 101–104
Declaration of Sentiments and Resolutions, 226
Declaratory Act, 88
de facto, 423
default, 366
defer, 461
deficit, 376
de Gaulle, Charles, 385
de las Casas, Bartolomé, 29
de la Warr, Lord, 47
demilitarized zone (DMZ, Korea), 423
Democratic-Republican Party, 149–150
Democrats, 188
Department of Housing and Urban Development, 443
Department of Transportation, 443
Deseret, 200
de Soto, Hernando, 27
despot, 469
détente, 469
Dewey, George, 321
Dewey, John, 306
Dewey, Thomas, 418
Dias, Bartolomeu, 20
diaspora, 41, 42
diplomatic recognition, 334
Disabled in Action, 452
discrimination, 375, 388–389
dissidents, 455
district courts, 144
division of power, 130
Dix, Dorothea, 222
Dixiecrats, 418

doctrine, 233
dollar diplomacy, 331
Dominion of New England, 74
Domino Theory, 459
Donner Party, 214
Douglas, Stephen A., 232–233, 236–237
Douglass, Frederick, 223–225
draft, 108, 345, 386, 461
Drake, Sir Francis, 31
Dred Scott v. Sanford, 235–236
du Bois, W.E.B., 309
due process, 261
Dukakis, Michael, 485
Dulles, John Foster, 426
Dunkirk, 384
Dust Bowl, 373
The Dutch East India Company, 34
The Dutch West India Company, 34

E

Earhart, Amelia, 359
Earp, Wyatt, 272
Earth Day, 470
Eckford, Elizabeth, 437
economy
 of early republic, 125–126, 144–147
 following World War I, 355
 Great Depression, 365–375
 of middle colonies, 71
 of northern colonies, 70
 Panic of 1837, 188–189
 Reaganomics, 483
 recent, 499
 of southern colonies, 69
Edison, Thomas, 286
education reform, 222, 306–307
Edwards, Jonathan, 75
Ehrlichman, John, 471
Eisenhower, Dwight D., 394, 423, 426, 429, 431
elastic clause, 145
electoral college, 142–143
Elizabeth I, queen of England, 31
Ellington, Duke, 361
Ellis Island, 295–296
Emancipation Proclamation, 249
Embargo Act (1807), 164
Emergency Banking Relief Act, 370
Emergency Quota Act (1921), 361
empresarios, 203
encomiendas, 28

- enemy combatants, 498
enfranchise, 263
English Bill of Rights, 74
the Enlightenment, 75
entente, 338
Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), 470
Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, 442
Equal Pay Act (1963), 450
equal protection of the law, 436
Equal Rights Amendment (ERA), 450
Equiano, Olaudah, 41
era of good feeling, 179
Erie Canal, 180–181
Eriksson, Leif, 21
Erik the Red, 21
escapism, 375–376
ethnic cleansing, 491
Evil Empire, 483–484
executive branch (federal), 138, 142–152
Executive Order 8802, 389
Executive Order 9066, 390
expansionism (1850–1917), 269–272, 276, 313–316
expansionism of totalitarianism (1930s), 382
expatriates, 362
ex post facto laws, 137
- F**
- factions, 149
Fair Deal, 417
Fair Employment Act (Executive Order 8802), 389
Farragut, David, 246
fascism, 380
Faubus, Orval, 436–437
Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC), 371
Federal Emergency Relief Administration (FERA), 370
Federal Highway Act (1956), 426
federalism, 130
Federalist Papers, 131, 139
Federalist Party, 150
Federal Judiciary Act of 1789, 144
Federal Reserve Act of 1913, 332
Federal Reserve Board (the Fed), 332
Federal Trade Commission, 332
feminism, 450
Ferdinand, Archduke Franz, 339
Ferdinand, King of Portugal, 21
Ferguson, Miriam A., 357
Ferraro, Geraldine, 484
54th Massachusetts Volunteers, 249
Fillmore, Millard, 231, 234
film industry, 359
Final Solution, 397
Fireside Chats, 370
First Battle of Bull Run, 245–246
First Continental Congress, 95–96
First New Deal, 370–371
First Rhode Island Regiment, 120
First Seminole War, 184
First U.S. Volunteer Cavalry, 321
Fitzgerald, F. Scott, 362
Five Civilized Tribes, 194
Five Nations, 14
Flappers, 359
Food Administration, 346
Force Acts, 264
Force Bill, 187–188
Ford, Gerald, 475–476
Ford, Henry, 287, 358
Foreign Miners Tax, 216
“40 Acres and a Mule,” 263
forty-niners, 215–216
49th parallel, 183
founding fathers, 127
Fourteen Points, 348
Franklin, Benjamin, 75, 80, 81, 101, 113, 117
Freedmen’s Bureau, 259
freedom of the press, 76
Freedom Riders, 440
Freedom Summer, 442–443
Freeport Doctrine, 237
Free Silver movement, 274
Free-Soil Party, 230
French and Indian War (1754–1763), 82
French Indochina, 457
Friedan, Betty, 450
Fuel Administration, 346
Fugitive Slave Act, 232
führer, 381
Fulton, Robert, 176
fundamentalism, 361, 495
Fundamental Orders of Connecticut, 61
- G**
- Gadsden, James, 214
Gadsden Purchase, 214

- Gagarin, Yuri, 456
Gallaudet, Thomas, 222
Gálvez, Bernardo de, 113
Gandhi, Mohandas, 438
Garfield, James, 274, 304
Garrison, William Lloyd, 223
Garvey, Marcus, 360
Gates, Horatio, 112, 115
general court, 60
Geneva Accords, 457
genocide, 397
George III, King of England, 84
Geronimo, 281
Gettysburg Address, 254
ghettos, 397
Ghost Dance, 282
G.I. Bill of Rights, 430
gilded age, 290
Gingrich, Newt, 492
Glidden, Joseph, 274
Glorious Revolution, 74
Golden Spike, 271
Gold Rush, 215–216
Goliad Massacre, 205
Gompers, Samuel, 291
Gorbachev, Mikhail, 485
Gore, Al, 494
government (federal)
bicameral legislature, 128
branches of, 130
Constitution of the United States, 135–141
establishment of, 123–132
executive branch, 138
judiciary branch, 138
legislative branch, 136–137
government (in general)
bicameral legislatures, 69
laissez-faire, 157
in middle colonies, 71
representative, 49, 50
in southern colonies, 69
government (states), 139, 143
Grand Council (Iroquois League), 14
grandfather clauses, 266
Grant, Ulysses S., 246, 247, 254–256, 259, 262–264
grape boycott, 448
grassroots, 435
Great Awakening, 75
Great Biological Exchange, 24
Great Compromise, 128
Great Depression, 365–375
Great Law of Peace, 14
Great Migration, 60, 360
Great Society, 443
greenback money, 250
Greene, Nathanael, 115
Green Mountain Boys, 100
Griffith, D. W., 360
Grimké, Angelina, 223
Grimké, Sarah, 223
Guadalcanal, 403
Guantánamo Bay, 323, 498
guerrilla warfare, 115–116
Gulf of Tonkin Resolution, 459
- H**
- Hag-Buanu-Varilla Treaty, 328
Haida, 12, 13
Haldeman, H. R., 471
Hale, Nathan, 116
Hamilton, Alexander, 131, 143, 144–147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 156, 161
Hancock, John, 96, 104
Harding, Warren G., 356–357
Harlem Renaissance, 260–261
Harpers Ferry raid, 237
Harrison, Benjamin, 275, 315
Harrison, William Henry, 167–169, 189–190
Hartford Convention, 112
Hayes, Rutherford B., 265
Haymarket Affair, 292
health care, 499
Helsinki Accords, 476
Hemingway, Ernest, 362
Henry, Patrick, 37, 89, 96
Henry the Navigator, prince, 19
Hessians, 109
Hidalgo y Costilla, Miguel, 184
The Higher Education Act (1972), 451
hippies, 461
Hiroshima, Japan, 406
Hiss, Alger, 424
Hitler, Adolf, 381
Ho Chi Minh, 457
Ho Chi Minh City, 464
Ho Chi Minh Trail, 458
Hohokam, 10
Holocaust, 397
Homestead Act and homesteaders, 273

Homestead Strike, 292
Hooker, Joseph, 251
Hooker, Thomas, 61
Hoover, Herbert, 368–369
Hoover Dam, 368
Hoovervilles, 368
Hopewell, 11
Hopi, 12, 13
horizontal integration, 289, 290
House of Burgesses, 49
House of Representatives, 128
House Un-American Activities Committee (HUAC), 424
Houston, Sam, 205
Howard, O. O., 259
Howe, Samuel Gridley, 222
Howe, William, 100, 109
Hudson, Henry, 30
Huerta, Dolores, 448
Hughes, Langston, 361
Hull House, 300
Humphrey, Hubert, 462
Hurricane Katrina, 498
Hurston, Zora Neale, 361
Hussein, Saddam, 489
Hutchinson, Anne, 61
hydrogen bomb, 425

I
immigration, 219–220, 295–300, 361
impeach, 138
imperialism, 313–316, 338
impressionment of seamen, 148–149
inaugural, 239
Incas, 4, 6, 26
indentured servitude, 48–49
Indian Citizenship Act, 361
Indian Civil Rights Act of 1968, 449
Indian Removal Act (1830), 193–194, 196
Indian Territory, 194
Indochinese Communist Party (ICP), 457
Industrial Revolution
 first, 175–177
 second, 285–292
Industrial Workers of the World, 307
inflation, 125, 467
insurgents, 497
interchangeable parts, 176
Intermediate-Range Nuclear Forces (INF) Treaty (1987), 485

International Ladies' Garment Workers Union, 308
internment camps, 390
Interstate Commerce Act (1887), 274
Intolerable Acts (1774), 91
Inuits, 12, 13
Iran-Contra Affair, 484–485
Iran hostage crisis (1979), 478
Irish Potato Famine, 219
ironclad ships, 246
Iron Curtain, 414
Iroquois League, 13, 14
Isabella, queen of Spain, 21
island hopping strategy, 403
isolationism, 352, 386
Israel, 412, 478
Iwo Jima, 405

J

Jackson, Andrew "Old Hickory," 169, 171, 184, 185, 186–189, 193, 195, 206, 215
Jackson, Thomas "Stonewall," 245–246, 251
Jacksonian democracy, 186
James I, King of England, 45
James II, King of England, 74
James River, 45
Jamestown, 45–50
Jay, John, 117, 131, 144, 149
Jay Cooke and Company, 264
Jay's Treaty, 149
Jazz Age, 359
Jefferson, Thomas, 37, 75, 101, 131, 143, 145–146, 148, 149–151, 152, 156–164
Jesuits, 80
Jim Crow Laws, 266
Johnson, Andrew, 260–262
Johnson, Lyndon B., 442, 443, 459, 462
Jones, John Paul, 113
Joseph, Chief, 281
judicial review, 159
Judiciary Act of 1789, 158
Judiciary Act of 1801, 158
judiciary branch (federal), 138, 144
justices, 144

K

Kamikazes, 405
Kansas-Nebraska Act, 232–233
Kearny, Stephen, 212
Keating-Owen Act (1916), 332

- Kellogg-Briand Pact (1928), 357
Kennedy, Jacqueline, 439
Kennedy, John F., 439, 441–442, 455, 456, 470
Kennedy, Robert F., 462
Kent State University, 463
Kentucky Resolution, 152
Key, Francis Scott, 170
Khomeini, Ayatollah, 478
Khrushchev, Nikita, 426
King, Martin Luther, Jr., 438, 440, 441, 444
King Philip's War, 62
Kissinger, Henry, 462, 468
Kitchen Cabinet, 187
Knights of Labor, 291
Know-Nothing Party, 220
Knox, Henry, 100, 143
Korean War, 422–423
Korematsu v. United States, 390
Kosovo, 491
Kristallnacht, 397
Ku Klux Klan (KKK), 264, 360
Kuwait, 489
- L**
- labor reform (1850–1917), 307–308
Lafayette, Marquis de, 113
laissez-faire government, 157
lame-duck, 482
Land Bridge Theory, 3
land claims, 79–83, 183–184
Land Ordinance of 1785, 124
La Raza Unida, 448
la Salle, René-Robert Cavelier, sieur de, 33
Lazarus, Emma, 296
League of Nations, 348
League of United Latin American Citizens (LULAC), 361
Lee, Robert E., 248–252, 255, 256
Lee Resolution, 101
legislative, 49
legislative branch (federal), 136–137
Lend-Lease Act (1941), 386
"Letter from Birmingham Jail," 440
Levittown, 430
Lewinsky, Monica, 492
Lewis, Meriwether, 163–164
Lewis and Clark Expedition, 163–164
LGBT (lesbian, gay, bisexual, and transgender) rights movement, 451
libel, 76
- Liberty Bonds, 345
Liliuokalani, queen, 315
Limited Nuclear Test Ban Treaty, 457
Lincoln, Abraham, 236–237, 238, 239–240, 243, 246, 249–251, 254, 256, 259–260
Lindbergh, Charles, 359
Line of Demarcation, 23
literacy tests, 265–266
Little Rock Nine, 436–437
Livingston, Robert R., 160–161
Locke, John, 75, 101
log cabin campaign, 189
Lone Star Republic, 206
"Long Walk," 280
Lost Colony, 32
Lost Generation, 362
Louisiana Purchase, 160–162
Lowell, Massachusetts, 175, 223
Loyalists, 98
Luftwaffe, 385
Lusitania sinking, 343–344
- M**
- MacArthur, Douglas, 369, 402, 403, 422–423
Madison, James, 131, 132, 139, 145, 148, 149, 152, 158–159, 164, 169, 170
Magellan, Ferdinand, 24
Maginot Line, 384
Magna Carta, 74
Maine, U.S.S., 320
maize, 5
Malcolm X, 444
Malintzin, 25
Marassas, 245
Manchuria, 382
Manhates, 34
Manhattan Project, 405
Manifest Destiny, 198
Mao Zedong, 421
Marbury, William, 158–159
Marbury v. Madison (1803), 158–159
March on Washington, 441
March to the Sea, 255
Marion, Francis "Swamp Fox," 115–116
Marion's Brigade, 116
maroons, 41
marriage equality, 500
Marshall, George, 414
Marshall, John, 158
Marshall, Thurgood, 436

Marshall Plan, 414
Martí, José, 319
Marxism, 469
Mary, queen of England, 74
Mason-Dixon Line, 64
Massachusetts Bay Company, 60
Massasoit, 59
mass production, 176
Maya, 4–6
Mayflower Compact, 59
McCain, John, 499
McCarthy, Eugene, 462
McCarthy, Joseph, 424–425
McCarthyism, 424–425
McCauley, Mary Ludwig Hayes "Molly Pitcher," 120
McClellan, George, 246
McCormick Reaper, 177
McGovern, George, 463
McKinley, William, 275, 315, 319, 320, 327
McNamara, Robert, 459
McVeigh, Timothy, 495
Meade, George, 251
Medicaid and Medicare, 443
melting pot, 297
mercantilism, 31
Mesoamerica, 4, 5
mestizos, 28
Metacomet, 62
Meuse-Argonne Offensive, 350
Mexican-American War, 209–214
Mexican cession, 213
Mexican Revolution, 333
Middle Passage, 41
Midnight Judges, 158
Midway Islands, 314
migrant workers, 373, 447
migration, 2–4, 41, 60, 360
militia, 81
Minutemen, 97
missionaries, 198
Mississippians, 11
Missouri Compromise, 182–183
Mitchell, John, 471
Model T Ford, 358
Mohawks, 14
Mondale, Walter, 484
monopolies, 91, 288, 289
Monroe, James, 160–161, 179, 184–185, 329
Monroe Doctrine, 184–185

Montezuma, 25, 26
Montgomery Bus Boycott, 437
Mormon Trail, 199–200
Morse, Samuel F. B., 176
Morse Code, 176
Mother Jones, 308
Mott, Lucretia, 225
Mound Builders, 11
mountain men, 196
muckrakers, 305
Mussolini, Benito, 380
mutualistas, 309
My Lai Massacre, 461

N

NAACP (National Association for the Advancement of Colored People), 310
Nader, Ralph, 494
NAFTA (North American Free Trade Agreement), 491
Nagasaki, Japan, 406
Nanjing Massacre, 382
napalm, 460
National American Woman Suffrage Association (NAWSA), 308
National Congress of American Indians (NCAI), 449
National Energy Plan (1977), 476
National Industrial Recovery Act (NIRA), 371
nationalism, 179–181, 338
Nationalists (China), 421
National Labor Relations Act, 374
National Liberation Front (Viet Cong), 458
National Organization for Women (NOW), 450
National Origins Act (1924), 361
National Security Council (NSC), 485
National Socialist German Workers' Party (Nazis), 381
National War Labor Board, 346, 388
nation building, 497
Nation of Islam, 444
Native Americans, 9–14
 Battle of Tippecanoe, 167–168
 civil rights for, 448–449
 colonists' alliances with, 80
 early peoples, 9–11
 Indian Citizenship Act, 361
 Iroquois League, 14
 and land claim challenges, 79–83

in North America, 9–14
by region, 12–13
reservations for, 279–282
in World War II, 389
nativism, 220, 297, 355, 361
NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organization), 416–417
Nat Turner's Rebellion, 178
naturalization, 220
Navajo, 12, 13
Navajo code talkers, 389, 403
Navigation Act of 1651, 72
Ndongo, 20
Neighborhood Guild, 300
Neutrality Acts (1935–1937), 386
Neutrality Proclamation (1793), 148
New Deal, 369–372, 374
New Federalism, 467
New France, 33
"New Frontier," 439
New Hampshire, 54–55, 62
"new immigrants," 295–296
New Jersey Plan, 128
Newton, Huey, 444
Ngo Dinh Diem, 457
Nicaragua, 484
Nicholas II, Czar of Russia, 349
Nimitz, Chester, 403
Nixon, Richard, 439, 462, 463, 467–472, 475
La Noche Triste, 25–26
No Child Left Behind, 495
no-man's-land, 341
Non-Aggression Pact, 383
Normandy, France, 396
North, Oliver, 485
North Atlantic Current, 18
Northwest Ordinance of 1787, 124
Northwest Passage, 29–30
Northwest Territory, 124–125
nuclear weapons, 406
Nueces River, 210
Núñez Cabeza de Vaca, Álvar, 27
Nullification Act of 1832, 187–188
nullify, 152
Nuremberg Laws and Trials, 397, 413

● Obergefell v. Hodges, 500
Oberlin College, 222

obstruction of justice, 492
Office of Price Administration, 388
Oglethorpe, James, 57
Okies, 373
Okinawa, 405
"Old Three Hundred," 203–204
Olive Branch Petition, 99
Olmechs, 4, 5
Olmsted, Frederick Law, 299
Oneida, 14
Onondaga, 14
Open Door Policy, 316
Operation Desert Storm, 490
Operation Overlord, 395–396
Operation Rolling Thunder, 460
Oppenheimer, J. Robert, 405
Oregon Country, 195–197
Oregon Territory, 210
Oregon Trail, 198, 199
The Oregon Treaty, 210
Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC), 468
original jurisdiction, 138
Osceola, 196
Osgood, Samuel, 143
Oswald, Lee Harvey, 441
Otis, Elisha, 298
Otis, James, 88

P

Pacific Railway Acts, 270
Pahlavi, Shah Mohammad Reza, 478
Paine, Thomas, 100, 109
Palestine Liberation Organization, 491
Palmer, A. Mitchell, 356
Palmer Raids, 356
Panama Canal, 328
pandemic (term), 351
Panic of 1837, 188–189
Panic of 1873, 275
Panic of 1893, 264, 275
pardon, 138, 475
Paris Peace Accords (1973), 464
Parks, Rosa, 436
Parliamentary acts, 87–92
partisan, 494
Patriots, 98
Patton, George S., 394
Peace Corps, 456
peace doves, 168

- Pearl Harbor, 386–387
Pelosi, Nancy, 499
Pendleton Civil Service Act (1883), 305
Peninsula Campaign, 247–248
peninsulares, 28
Penn, William, 64
Pennsylvania, 53–55, 64
Pentagon Papers, 463, 496
People's Republic of China, 421
perjury, 492
Perkins, Frances, 375
Perot, Ross, 490
Perry, Matthew, 314
Perry, Oliver Hazard, 168
persecution, 56
Pershing, John, 334, 345
Persian Gulf War, 489–490
Pickawillany, 80
Pickett, George, 253
Pickett's Charge, 253
Pierce, Franklin, 232, 233
Pilgrims, 57–59
Ping-Pong Diplomacy, 469
Pinochet, Augusto, 469
Pitt, William, 82
Pizarro, Francisco, 26
plantations, 29, 38–39, 48, 69
Platt Amendment, 323
Plessy v. Ferguson, 266
Plum Rock, 59
Pocahontas, 48
poison gas, 342
political machines, 304
political parties, 149–150, 188
political reform (1850–1917), 305–306
Polk, James K., 209–212
poll taxes, 265–266
Polo, Marco, 19
Ponce de Léon, Juan, 27
Pontiac, 84
Pontiac's Rebellion/War, 84
Pony Express, 210
pop culture, 431
popular sovereignty, 130, 231
popular vote, 185
populism, 274–275
Populist Party, 275
Portuguese expeditions, 20–21
Potsdam Conference, 411
Potsdam Declaration, 405
Pottawatomie Creek Massacre, 233–234
Powell, Colin, 490
Powhatan Confederacy, 47, 49
preamble, 102, 135
Prescott, William, 98–99
presidios, 28
Presley, Elvis, 431
primary elections, 306
Princip, Gavrilo, 339
prison-reform movement, 222
privateers, 113
Proclamation of 1763, 84
Progressive Party, 331, 418
progressivism, 303–310, 327–331, 332–334
Prohibition, 307, 362
Promontory, Utah, 271
protectorate, 323
Protestant Reformation, 31
proviso, 230
PTSD (post-traumatic stress disorder), 464
public works, 371
Public Works Administration (PWA), 371
pueblos, 9, 28
Pullman Strike, 292
Puritans, 57–58, 70
- Q**
- Quakers, 64
Quechua, 6
Quincy, Josiah, 90–91
Quipu, 6
quorum, 136
- R**
- Rabin, Yitzhak, 491
Radical Reconstruction, 261–262
Radical Republicans, 261
railroad barons, 285
railroads, 210–211
Raleigh, Sir Walter, 32
ranchers, 272
ranchos, 211–212
Randolph, A. Philip, 389, 438
Randolph, Edmund, 143
Rankin, Jeannette, 357
ratify, 124
rationing, 388
Reagan, Ronald, 482–485
Reaganomics, 483
Realpolitik, 468–469

recall of officials, 306
Reconstruction, 259–266
Reconstruction Acts (1867), 261
Red Cloud, 279
Redcoats, 82
redeem, 265
redress, 240
Red Scare, 356
referenda, 306
Religious Society of Friends, 64
“Remember the Alamo!” 205
“Remember the Maine!” 320
Renaissance, 18
rendezvous, 197
Reno, Janet, 491
reparations, 352
repealed, 88
representative government, 49, 50
republican form of government, 139
republicanism, 149–150
Republican Party, 234
Republic of California, 212
Republic of Texas, 206
reservations (Native American), 194, 279–282
resolution, 101
Revels, Hiram, 263
Revenue Act of 1935, 372
Revenue Act of 1942, 388
Revere, Paul, 96–97
revival, 75
Revolutionary War. *See* American Revolution
Rhinelander, 382
Rice, Condoleezza, 498
Riis, Jacob, 305
Rio Grande River, 210
Roanoke Island, 32
Roaring Twenties, 355–362
robber barons, 290
rock and roll, 431
Rockefeller, John D., 288–289
Roe v. Wade, 470
Rolfe, John, 48
Rommel, Erwin “Desert Fox,” 393
Roosevelt, Eleanor, 375
Roosevelt, Franklin Delano (FDR), 189, 369–372,
 374, 375, 376, 387, 390, 398, 430
Roosevelt, Theodore “Teddy,” 321, 327–331, 417
Roosevelt Corollary, 329
Roosevelt Recession, 376
Rosenberg, Ethel and Julius, 424

Rosie the Riveter, 388
Ross, Nellie T., 357
Rough Riders, 321
Royal Air Force (RAF), 385
Russian Revolution, 349
Russo-Japanese War, 316
Ruth, Babe, 359

S

Sacagawea, 164
Sacco, Nicola, 356
sack of Lawrence, 233
Saint-Mihiel battle, 350
Salem witch trials, 60
salutary neglect, 74
Samoa, 316
Samoset, 59
Sand Creek Massacre, 280
Sandinistas, 484
Santa Anna, Antonio López de, 204
Santa Fe Trail, 198–199
Sarajevo, 339
satellite governments, 413
scalawags, 264
Schenck v. United States, 347
Schlafly, Phyllis, 451
schooners, 198
Schwartzkopf, Norman, Jr., 490
SCLC (Southern Christian Leadership
 Conference), 438
Scopes, John, 362
scorched earth tactic, 385
Scott, Dred, 235–236
Scott, Winfield, 195, 212
Seale, Bobby, 444
search-and-destroy missions, 459
seasonal workers, 447
secede, 161
secession of southern states, 238–239
Second Battle of Bull Run, 248
Second Battle of the Marne, 350
Second Continental Congress, 98
Second Great Awakening, 221
Second Industrial Revolution, 285–292
Second New Deal, 372
Second Seminole War, 196
sectionalism, 181–183
Securities and Exchange Commission
 (SEC), 371
sedition, 151–152, 347

- Sedition Act, 347
segregation, 266
Selective Service Act, 345
Selective Training and Service Act (1940), 386
Selma, Alabama, 442–443
Seminole, 12, 13
Senate, 128
Seneca, 14
Seneca Falls Convention, 225–226
“separate but equal” facilities, 266
separation of powers, 130
Separatists, 58
September 11, 2001, 496
Servicemen’s Readjustment Act, 430
settlement houses, 300
Seven Years’ War (1756–1763), 82
Seward, William, 314
Seymour, Horatio, 262
Shakers, 222
shantytowns, 368
sharecropping, 263–264
shareholders, 288
Shays, Daniel, 126
Shays’ Rebellion, 126
Sherman, William Tecumseh, 255, 263
Sherman Antitrust Act (1890), 290
Shias, 497
Shiloh Church, 247
Shoshone, 12, 13
“The Shot Heard Round the World,” 97
Siege of Petersburg, 255
“silent majority,” 462
Silk Road, 17
Sinclair, Upton, 305
Singer, Isaac, 286
Sioux, 278
sit-down strikes, 374
sit-ins, 438
Sitting Bull, Chief, 280
Six Nations, 14
Slater, Samuel, 175
slave codes, 41
slavery. *See also* abolitionism
 abolishment of slave trade, 178
 in the Americas, 38–42
 defined, 38
 and life for former slaves, 263–264
 in middle colonies, 71
 Middle Passage, 41
Nat Turner’s Rebellion, 178
in northern colonies, 70
origin of African American culture, 42
plantations’ need for, 38–39
slave codes, 41
in southern colonies, 69
Three-Fifths Compromise, 128
and Triangular Trade, 39–40
West African slave trade, 19–20
Slave Trade Compromise, 129
slums, 299
Smith, John, 47, 48
Smith, Joseph, 199
SNCC (Student Nonviolent Coordinating Committee), 438
snowball, 366
social contract, 75
social Darwinism, 313
socialism, 356
Socialist Republic of Vietnam, 464
socialists, 304, 356
Social Security Act (1935), 372
society, 5
Society of American Indians, 309
Sons of Liberty, 89, 96–97
sooners (Oklahomans), 276
Sotomayor, Sonia, 500
South Atlantic Current, 18
sovereignty, 123
space race, 425, 456
Spanish–American War, 319–324
Spanish Armada, 31
Spanish Florida, 57
Spanish society in the Americas, 27–29
speakeasies, 362
special forces (Green Berets), 458
speculators, 145
spheres of influence, 316
spirituals, 42
spoils system, 187
Spring Offensive, 350
Sputnik, 425
Squanto, 59
Square Deal, 330
St. Leger, Barry, 110
stagflation, 476
stalemate, 341
Stalin, Joseph, 381
Stalingrad, 395
Stamp Act, 88

- Stamp Act Congress, 88
Standard Oil Company, 288–289
standing army, 87
Stanton, Elizabeth Cady, 225
The Starving Time, 47
state sovereignty, 187–188
Statue of Liberty, 296
steam power, 176
Steffens, Lincoln, 305
Steinbeck, John, 313
Stevenson, Adlai, 423
stock, 288
stock market crash (1929), 305–306
Stone, Lucy, 226
Stonewall Inn Riots, 451
Stono Rebellion, 41
Stowe, Harriet Beecher, 232
Strategic Arms Limitation Treaty of 1972 (SALT I), 469
Strategic Arms Limitation Treaty of 1979 (SALT II), 471
Strategic Arms Reduction Treaty (START), 486
Strategic Defense Initiative (SDI), 484
Strauss, Levi, 216
strikes, 292
Student for a Democratic Society, 461
subsidize, 270, 370
subsistence farming, 70
suburbs, 299, 430–431
Sudetenland, 383
Suez Canal, 394
Suffolk Resolves, 96
suffrage, 186, 265–266, 308, 443
Sugar Act of 1764, 87–88
Sumner, Charles, 234
Sunbelt, 430
Sunnis, 497
supply-side economics, 483
Supreme Court, 144
Sussex Pledge, 343
Sutter's Fort, 215
sweatshop, 297
syndicate, 468
- T**
- Taft, William Howard, 330–331
Taliban, 496
Talleyrand, Charles Maurice de, 151, 160–162
Tammany Hall, 304
Tarbell, Ida, 305
Tariff of Abominations, 187
tariffs, 125, 187, 332
taxation, 87–92, 137, 147, 216, 250, 265–266
Taylor, Zachary, 211, 231
Tea Act (1773), 91
Teapot Dome, 357
technology, 18, 176–177
Tecumseh, 167
Tehran, Iran, 478
tejanos, 203
Teller Amendment, 320
temperance movement, 222, 307
tenant farmers, 177
tenements, 220
Tennessee, 159
Tennessee Valley Authority (TVA), 371
Tenochtitlan, 6
tenure, 261
Tenure of Office Act, 262
territory, 125
terrorism, 495–498
TET Offensive, 460
Texas Rangers, 206
Texas War for Independence, 204
Thanksgiving, 59
theocracy, 6
theory of state sovereignty, 187
38th Parallel, 421–423
Three-Fifths Compromise, 128
Three Mile Island nuclear accident, 477
Tiananmen Square, China, 486
Tilden, Samuel, 265
"Tippecanoe and Tyler Too," 189
Title IX, 451
Tlingit, 12, 13
Tōjō, Hideki, 386, 387
totalitarianism, 380–382
total war, 254
Toussaint-Louverture, 161
Townshend Acts (1767), 89–90
townships, 124
trade deficit, 126
Trail of Tears, 194–195
transcontinental railroad, 270–271
treason, 89
Treaty of Brest-Litovsk, 349
Treaty of Fort Jackson, 169
Treaty of Ghent, 172
Treaty of Greenville, 147

Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, 213
Treaty of Medicine Lodge, 280
Treaty of Paris (1763), 83
Treaty of Paris (1783), 118–119
Treaty of Paris (1898), 322
Treaty of Portsmouth, 316
Treaty of Tordesillas, 23, 31
Treaty of Versailles, 351–352
trench warfare, 341–342
The Triangular Trade, 39–40
tribunal, 413
trickle down effects, 483
Triple Alliance, 338
Triple Entente, 338
Truman, Harry S., 398, 405, 411, 414, 415, 417, 418, 422, 424, 429
Truman Doctrine, 414
trusts, 289
Truth, Sojourner, 223
Tubman, Harriet, 224
Turner, Frederick Jackson, 276
Turner, Nat, 178
Tuscarora, 14
Tuskegee Airmen, 389
Tuskegee Institute, 310
Tweed, William Magear "Boss," 304
Twin Towers, 496
Tyler, John, 189, 190
tyranny, 103

U
U-boats, 343
Underground Railroad, 224
Underwood Tariff (1913), 332
unicameral legislatures, 128
Union army, 244
unions, 291, 292, 374
United Farm Workers (UFW), 448
United Mine Workers, 330
United Nations (UN), 412
United States Colored Troops (USCT), 249
Universal Negro Improvement Association (UNIA), 360
urbanization, 298
urban renewal, 431
USA PATRIOT Act, 497–498
USSR (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics), 381, 459, 478
Utah Territory, 200
Ute, 12, 13

utopian societies, 222
U-2 spy plane, 456

V
Valley Forge, winter at, 113
van Buren, Martin, 187
Vanzetti, Bartolomeo, 356
vaqueros, 212
V-E Day, 398
Verrazzano, Giovanni da, 30
vertical integration, 289
Vespucci, Amerigo, 23
veto, 136
viceroy, 27
victory gardens, 346
Viet Minh, 457
"Vietnamization," 463
Vietnam War, 457–464
vigilantes, 272
Vikings, 21
Villa, Francisco "Pancho," 334
Virginia campaign (Civil War), 254–255
Virginia Company of London, 45
Virginia Declaration of Rights, 96
Virginia Plan, 128
Virginia Resolution, 152
V-J Day, 406
voter initiatives, 306
Voting Rights Act of 1965, 443

W
Wagner Act, 372, 374
Wallace, George C., 462
Wampanoags, 59, 62
war bonds, 388
War Hawks, 168
War in Afghanistan, 496
War Industries Board, 346
War in Iraq, 496, 499
War of 1812, 168–172
War on Drugs, 490
War on Poverty, 443
War on Terror, 496–498
War Powers Act (1973), 464
War Production Board, 388
warrant, 140
Warren, Mercy Otis, 131
Warsaw Pact, 416–417
Washington, Booker T., 309
Washington, D.C., 146, 170

- Washington, George, 37
attacks on French by, 81
at Constitutional Convention, 127
crossing of the Delaware, 109–110
as first president, 142–149
on foreign entanglements, 337
on “Indian style” fighting, 82
in Revolutionary War, 98, 100, 108–110,
113, 116, 117
third presidential term refused by, 149
- Watergate, 471–472
- Watt, James, 176
- weapons of mass destruction (WMD), 496
- welfare, 372
- Western Front, 342
- Westinghouse, George, 287
- Westmoreland, William, 459
- Westward expansion, 193–200
Indian Removal Act (1830), 193–194, 196
Mormon Trail, 199–200
Oregon Country, 195–197
Oregon Trail, 198, 199
Santa Fe Trail, 198–199
Trail of Tears, 194–195
- Wheelwright, John, 62
- Whig Party, 188
- Whiskey Rebellion (1794), 147
- whistle-stop tour, 418
- White, John, 32
- Whitefield, George, 75
- white flight, 430–431
- Whitewater controversy, 492
- Whitney, Eli, 176
- Wilderness Road, 114
- Wild West, 272
- Wilhelm II, Kaiser of Germany, 351
- William of Orange, 74
- Williams, Roger, 61
- Wilmot Proviso, 230
- Wilson, Woodrow, 332–334, 341, 343, 344, 347,
348, 351, 352
- Winthrop, John, 60
- Women Appointed for Volunteer Emergency
Service (WAVES), 389
- Women’s Airforce Service Pilots (WASPs),
389
- Women’s Army Corps (WACs), 389
- women’s rights, 225–226, 308
- Woodstock Festival, 461
- Woodward, Bob, 471
- Worcester v. Georgia, 194, 195
- workers’ rights movements, 223
- Works Progress Administration (WPA), 372
- World Trade Center, 496
- World War I, 338–352
- World War II (1930s–1945), 379–390,
393–398, 401–406
- World Wide Web, 493
- Wounded Knee massacre, 282
- Wovoka, 282
- Wozniak, Steve, 493
- Wright, Orville and Wilbur, 287
- writ of habeas corpus, 137, 250
- writ of mandamus, 158
- Writs of Assistance, 90

X

XY2 Affair, 151

Y

Yalta Conference, 410–411

Yankees (Union), 244

yellow journalism, 320

Yeltsin, Boris, 486

yeomen, 177

Yom Kippur War (1973), 468

Young, Brigham, 200

Z

Zenger, John Peter, 76

Zhou Enlai, 469

Zimmermann Note, 344

“Zoot Suit Riots,” 389

Zuni, 12, 13